Oracle Banking Trade Finance

Islamic Letters of Credit

Release 14.8.0.0.0
G29285-02
April 2025

Oracle Banking Trade Finance Islamic Letters of Credit, Release 14.8.0.0.0

G29285-02

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software, software documentation, data (as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation), or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software," "commercial computer software documentation," or "limited rights data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle®, Java, MySQL, and NetSuite are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

Contents

Preface

Purpose i
Audience i
List of Topics i
Documentation Accessibility ii
Critical Patches iii
Diversity and Inclusion iii
Conventions iii
Related Documents iii
Screenshot Disclaimer iii
Symbols and Icons iii

1 Overview of Islamic Letters of Credit

1.1 Features 1
1.2 Operations supported on an Islamic LC 2
1.3 SWIFT Messages for an Import Islamic LC 3
1.4 SWIFT Messages for an Export Islamic LC 3
1.5 SWIFT Messages for a Standby Islamic LC 4
1.6 SWIFT Messages for a Clean Islamic LC 4
1.7 SWIFT Messages for a Guarantee 4
1.8 SWIFT Messages for a Shipping Guarantee 4
1.9 Process Commissions and Charges 5
1.10 Variations Supported for an Islamic LC 5
1.11 Red Clause Letter of Credit 5
1.12 Revocable and Irrevocable Islamic LCs 5
1.13 Transferable and Non Transferable Islamic LCs 5
1.14 Revolving and Non Revolving Islamic LCs 6
1.15 Sight and Usance Islamic LC 6
1.16 Open Ended Islamic LCs 6
1.17 Cash Collateral against an Islamic LC 6
1.18 Availment against an Islamic LC 6

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2 Islamic Letters of Credit - Maintenance

2.1 Documents and Clauses Details 1
2.1.1 Maintain Documents and Clauses 2
2.1.2 Specify Values for the User Defined Fields 3
2.1.3 Operations on Document Maintenance Record 4
2.2 Goods Details 5
2.2.1 Maintain Goods 5
2.2.2 Specify Values for UDF 6
2.2.3 Operations on a Goods/Commodity Maintenance Record 7
2.3 Free Format Text (FFT) Codes Details 7
2.3.1 Maintain Free Format Text (FFT) Codes 7
2.3.2 Specify Values for User Defined Fields 8
2.3.3 Operations on the FFT Maintenance Record 9
2.3.4 Maintain INCO Terms 9
2.4 Maintain Insurance Company Details 9
2.5 Maintain Customer Insurance Details 11
2.5.1 Capture Utilization History Details 13
2.6 Maintain Import License Expiry Date 13
2.7 Application of Exchange Rate Type based on Transaction Amount 14

3 Define Attributes specific to an Islamic Product

3.1 Create an Islamic LC Product 1
3.1.1 Specify Sanction Check Details 13
3.2 Generate Islamic LC Expiry/Closure Advices 13
3.2.1 Opting to Track Limits 14
3.2.2 Setting Criteria for Status Change 14
3.2.3 Specify Applicable Rules of a Guarantee 17
3.2.4 Generate Advices for the Insurance Company 18
3.2.5 Specify Event for Reissue of Guarantee 19
3.2.6 Generate Advice for Faxing Islamic LC Confirmation to Counterparty 19

4 Process an Islamic LC Contract

4.1 Introduction 1
4.2 Islamic LC Contract Details 2
4.2.1 Islamic LC Contract Details Screen 2
4.3 Islamic LC Contract Details Screen Description 7
4.3.1 Description of the Islamic LC Contract Details Screen 7
4.3.2 Specify the Main Details of an Islamic LC 10
4.3.3 Update Parties' Limits on Amendment of Islamic LC Contract 35

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4.3.4 Update Parties' Limits on Islamic LC Availments 36
4.3.5 Specify the Media Details for a Party 37
4.3.6 Specify Credit Administration Details 37
4.3.7 Specify Shipping for an Islamic LC 37
4.3.8 Specify Advices for an Islamic LC 45
4.3.9 Specify the Free Format Instructions that should accompany an Advice 47
4.4 Cancel an Islamic LC 48
4.5 Close, Reopen, and Black list an Islamic LC 48
4.5.1 Closing an Islamic LC 48
4.5.1.1 Close an Islamic LC automatically 49
4.5.1.2 Close an Islamic LC manually 49
4.5.2 Reopen an Islamic LC 49
4.5.2.1 Procedure to reopen an Islamic LC 50
4.5.3 Black Listing Islamic LCs 50
4.6 Reverse Islamic LC 51
4.6.1 Reverse an Islamic LC 51
4.6.2 Procedure for Reversing an Islamic LC 51
4.6.3 Contract Reversal 52
4.6.4 Event Reversal 52

5 Additional Details

5.1 Capture Additional Details 3
5.2 View Islamic LC Contract Summary Details 46
5.2.1 Operations on Islamic LC Contract 48
5.2.2 Create Contract 49
5.3 Authorize a Contract 50

6 Islamic LC Availment

6.1 Introduction 1
6.2 Islamic LC Availment Input 1
6.2.1 Islamic LC Contract Availment 1
6.2.2 Islamic LC Liability Reversal 26
6.2.3 View Islamic LC Availed 26
6.2.4 Reversal of an Availment 28

7 Amend Details of an Islamic LC

7.1 Introduction 1
7.2 Procedure to Amend an Islamic LC 1
7.2.1 Indicate a Change of Value for a Field 2

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7.2.2 Commission and Charges for the Amendment 3
7.2.3 Amendment of an Unauthorized Islamic LC 3
7.3 Islamic LC Amendment Details 4
7.3.1 Confirm the Islamic LC Amendment 5
7.3.2 Authorize Amendment Details 29
7.3.3 Confirm Amended Details 29
7.3.4 Amend details using the Contract screen 30
7.3.4.1 Authorize Confirmation 32
7.3.5 Reject Amended Details 32
7.3.5.1 Authorize Rejection 33
7.3.6 Islamic LC Amendment Details 33
7.4 Operations on Confirmation Record 34
7.5 Upload Islamic LC Amendment 35

8 Islamic Letter of Credit Registration

8.1 Introduction 1
8.2 Islamic Letters of Credit Registration 1
8.2.1 Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Details 1
8.2.2 Islamic LC Registration Input Summary 5
8.3 Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input 6

9 Islamic LC Transfer

9.1 Introduction 1
9.2 Transfer Islamic LC 1
9.2.1 Note on Transfers from Import and Export Islamic LCs 22
9.2.1.1 Process of Transfers from Import Islamic LCs 23
9.2.1.2 Process of Transfers from Export Islamic LCs 24
9.2.1.3 Amendment In Transferred LC 24
9.2.1.4 Transfer LC Cancel/Closure 25

10 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letter of Credit

10.1 Introduction 1
10.2 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input 1
10.2.1 Process Islamic Guarantees and Standby LC 2
10.2.2 View Guarantees and SBLC Contract Details 31
10.3 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment 32
10.3.1 Process Amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC 33
10.3.1.1 FFT Details 47
10.3.2 View Guarantees and SBLC Amendment Details 50

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

10.4 Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim 52
10.4.1 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging 52
10.4.2 View Islamic Guarantee Claim Details 69
10.5 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement 70
10.5.1 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement 70
10.5.2 View Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary 74
10.6 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input 76
10.6.1 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input 76
10.6.2 View Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Details 80

11 Liquidate Receivable Components

11.1 Introduction 1
11.2 Maintain Online Receivable/Payable Details 1
11.2.1 Liquidate the Receivable Components of an Islamic LC 2
11.2.2 Manual Liquidation of Receivable Components for the Islamic LC 3
11.2.2.1 Specify Payment Breakup Details 5
11.2.2.2 Waiver of Components during Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC Charges 5
11.2.3 Specify Details of the Advices for the Liquidation 5

12 Credit Limit Tracking for an Islamic LC

12.1 Introduction 1
12.2 Track Credit Limit 1
12.2.1 Specify whether Limit Tracking is Required 2
12.2.2 Indicate the Customer against whom the Islamic LC Liability Amount is Tracked 2
12.2.3 Specify the Limit Track Tenor 2
12.2.4 Indicate the Credit Line for Liability Amount 2

13 Automatic Processes

13.1 Introduction 1
13.2 Maintain Branch Parameters 2
13.3 Batch Process 5
13.3.1 Generating Tracers 12
13.3.2 Intra Day Accruals 12

14 Simulation

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15 Annexure A - Accounting Entries

15.1 Islamic LC Events 1
15.2 Amount Tags 2
15.3 Accounting Roles 3
15.4 Event-Accounting Entries 4
15.4.1 BISS: Booking of an import Islamic LC 5
15.4.1.1 Liability 5
15.4.1.2 Collateral 5
15.4.1.3 Charges 6
15.4.1.4 Commission 7
15.4.2 Accounting Roles for Transfer of Charge & Commission Components from Islamic LC to BC 9
15.4.3 Accounting Entries for Transfer of Charge & Commission Components from Islamic LC to BC 9
15.4.4 Collateral Bridge Accounting Role 9
15.4.5 AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC 10
15.4.6 CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC / Guarantee 10
15.4.7 REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC / Guarantee 11
15.4.8 BADV: Advising an Islamic LC 11
15.4.9 BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC 12
15.4.10 BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC 12
15.4.11 BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC 12
15.4.12 AMND: Amendment 13
15.4.13 AOCF: Amendment from Open to Open and Confirm 13
15.4.14 APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice 14
15.4.15 APAC: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice and Confirm 14
15.4.16 REVR: Reversal of an Islamic LC Contract 14
15.4.17 REVE: Reversal of an Islamic LC Event 14
15.4.18 ACCR: Accrual of Commission 14
15.4.19 CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date 14
15.4.20 CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission 14
15.4.21 ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC 14
15.4.22 CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC 15
15.4.23 TRGN: Generation of Tracers 16
15.4.24 AATC: Amendment from Advice to Confirm 16
15.4.25 RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC 16
15.4.26 RAVL: Reversal of Availment 16
15.4.27 MLIQ: Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC commission 16
15.4.28 WAIV: Waiver of Components during Manual Liquidation 16
15.4.29 GCLP: Guarantee Claim Settlement 17
15.4.30 AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation 17
15.4.31 TRAM: Transfer Amendment 19

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15.4.32 RTRA: Reinstatement of Transferred LC Amount 19

16 Annexure B – Events and Advices

16.1 Islamic LC Events 1
16.2 Islamic LC Messages 2
16.3 Generate Multiple Copies of the Islamic LC Instrument 4
16.4 Generate Fax 700/707 LC Confirmation Mail Message Copy to Counterparty 5
16.5 Islamic LC Event - Messages 6
16.5.1 BISS: Booking of an Import Islamic LC/ Islamic Shipping Guarantee 8
16.5.2 AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC 8
16.5.3 CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC/Guarantee 8
16.5.4 REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC/Guarantee 8
16.5.5 BADV: Advising an Islamic LC 9
16.5.6 BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC 9
16.5.7 BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC 9
16.5.8 BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC 9
16.5.9 REIS: Reissue of Guarantee 10
16.5.10 AMND: Islamic LC Amendment 10
16.5.11 REVR: Reversal of Contract 10
16.5.12 REVE: Reversal of Event 10
16.5.13 ACCR: Accrual of Commission 11
16.5.14 CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date 11
16.5.15 CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission 11
16.5.16 ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC 11
16.5.17 TRGN: End of Day Check for Tracers 11
16.5.18 CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC 11
16.5.19 APAC: Amendment from Pre-Advice to Advice and Confirm 12
16.5.20 APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice 12
16.5.21 GCEX: Guarantee Claim Extension 12
16.5.22 RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC 12
16.5.23 RAVL: Reversal of Availment 13
16.5.24 CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation 13
16.5.25 Advice Generated for the Insurance Company 13
16.5.26 Advice Generated for the Counterparty 14
16.5.27 AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation 14
16.5.28 AMNV: Invitation of Amendment Confirmation 15
16.5.29 AREJ: Rejection Of Amendment Confirmation 15

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Preface

- Purpose
- Audience
- List of Topics
- Documentation Accessibility
- Critical Patches
- Diversity and Inclusion
- Conventions
- Related Documents
- Screenshot Disclaimer
- Symbols and Icons

Purpose

This manual is intended as a guide to the Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) module, of Oracle Banking Trade Finance.

It is designed to help you maintain and process all types of documentary and clean Islamic LCs.

It also assists you in handling the necessary activities in the life cycle of an Islamic LC once it is booked.This includes the generation of messages and advices, the updation of account balances and the collection of various commissions and charges.

You can obtain information specific to a particular field by placing the cursor on the relevant field, and striking <F1> on the keyboard.

Audience

This manual is intended for the Customer Service Representatives (CSRs) and the staff responsible for the setting up of new products at your bank.

List of Topics

This manual is organized as follows:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 1 Topics

Topic	Description
Preface	This manual describes about the intended audience. It lists all the chapters included in this user manual.
Overview of Islamic Letters of Credit	Describes an Overview of the Islamic LC module and helps familiarize you with its features.
Maintain Islamic letters of Credit	Explains the basic details that needs to be maintained, before the Islamic LC module becomes fully operational.
Define Attributes Specific to an Islamic LC Product	Describes the procedure to define Islamic LC products for specific services that you offer your customers.
Process an Islamic Contract	Describes the procedure to process all types of Islamic LCs (import, export, invoice, clean, guarantees, shipping guarantees). Also explained is the method of associating an Islamic LC product with an Islamic LC contract. The advantage of defining products is highlighted in this chapter.
Capture Additional Details	Explains a number of functions vital to the processing of an Islamic LC Contract.
Islamic LC Availment	Explains how upon receipt of bills or notification from the negotiating bank, an availment is recorded under an Islamic LC.
Amend Details of an Islamic LC	Discusses the circumstances under which the details of an Islamic LC contract would need to be amended. It also details the procedure for amending the Islamic LC.
Transfer an Islamic LC	Explains how you can transfer an Islamic LC.
Liquidation of the Receivable Components of an Islamic LC	Deals with the liquidation of the receivable components of an Islamic LC.
Credit Limit Tracing for an Islamic LC	Describes the procedure to track the exposure against the applicant or against the issuing bank. It depends on whether you are issuing an import Islamic LC/advice or confirming an export Islamic LC.
Automatic Process	Describes the process that will be carried out automatically, in the life cycle of an Islamic LC.
Annexure A- Accounting Entries	Contains event-wise list of suggested accounting entries.
Annexure B - Events and Advices	Lists all the events that can take place and the messages that can be generated, during the life cycle of an Islamic LC.
Function ID	Function ID Glossary has alphabetical listing of Function/Screen ID's used in the module with page references for quick navigation.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customer access to and use of Oracle support services will be pursuant to the terms and conditions specified in their Oracle order for the applicable services.

Critical Patches

Oracle advises customers to get all their security vulnerability information from the Oracle Critical Patch Update Advisory, which is available at Critical Patches, Security Alerts and Bulletins. All critical patches should be applied in a timely manner to ensure effective security, as strongly recommended by Oracle Software Security Assurance.

Diversity and Inclusion

Oracle is fully committed to diversity and inclusion. Oracle respects and values having a diverse workforce that increases thought leadership and innovation. As part of our initiative to build a more inclusive culture that positively impacts our employees, customers, and partners, we are working to remove insensitive terms from our products and documentation. We are also mindful of the necessity to maintain compatibility with our customers' existing technologies and the need to ensure continuity of service as Oracle's offerings and industry standards evolve. Because of these technical constraints, our effort to remove insensitive terms is ongoing and will take time and external cooperation.

Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text.
italic	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

Related Documents

For more information on any related features, refer to the following document:

- Procedures User Guide

Screenshot Disclaimer

Personal information used in the interface or documents is dummy and does not exist in the real world. It is only for reference purposes.

Symbols and Icons

The list of symbols and icons available on the screens are as follows:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2 Symbols and Icons - Common

Symbol/Icon	Function
	Minimize
	Maximize
	Close
	Perform Search
	Open a list
	Date Range
	Add a new record
	Navigate to the first record
	Navigate to the last record
	Navigate to the previous record
	Navigate to the next record
	Grid view
	List view
	Refresh
	Click this icon to add a new row.
	Click this icon to delete a row, which is already added.
	Calendar
	Alerts

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2 (Cont.) Symbols and Icons - Common

Symbol/Icon	Function
	Unlock Option
	View Option
	Reopen Option

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1

Overview of Islamic Letters of Credit

A Letter of Credit as an instrument of international trade is one of the most secure methods for a seller to be paid. Besides credit risk considerations, LC are the customary business practice for long-distance trade and a particularly important commission earning service for any bank. The Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) module constitutes a part of Oracle Banking Trade Finance comprehensive trade financing system. Together with the Islamic Bills and Collections module, it automates the entire gamut of trade financing. The Islamic LC module supports the processing of all types of documentary and clean Islamic LC. It can handle all activities during the life-cycle of an Islamic LC. This includes the generation of messages and advice for all the applicable events and the update of account balances. The system also handles the collection of various commissions and charges defined for an Islamic LC.

- Features
- Operations supported on an Islamic LC
- SWIFT Messages for an Import Islamic LC
- SWIFT Messages for an Export Islamic LC
- SWIFT Messages for a Standby Islamic LC
- SWIFT Messages for a Clean Islamic LC
- SWIFT Messages for a Guarantee
- SWIFT Messages for a Shipping Guarantee
- Process Commissions and Charges
- Variations Supported for an Islamic LC
- Red Clause Letter of Credit
- Revocable and Irrevocable Islamic LCs
- Transferable and Non Transferable Islamic LCs
- Revolving and Non Revolving Islamic LCs
- Sight and Usance Islamic LC
- Open Ended Islamic LCs
- Cash Collateral against an Islamic LC
- Availment against an Islamic LC

1.1 Features

In an effort to sharpen the competitiveness of your trade-financing department and to empower your bank to handle a high volume of credit transactions Oracle Banking Trade Finance is designed with the following features:

- The Islamic Letters of Credit module supports the processing of all types of clean and documentary Islamic LCs.
  These include:
  - Import Islamic LCs

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

  - Export Islamic LCs
  - Guarantees
  - Shipping Guarantees
  - Clean Islamic LCs
  - Standby Guarantees
- The Islamic LC module is designed to handle all the events in the life cycle of an Islamic LC. The booking, subsequent amendments and an availment can be processed automatically. The messages and advices applicable for each event are also automatically generated. The messages are communicated done through SWIFT, TELEX, mail, or any other compatible medium.
- The product definition function enables you to create products for specific services you offer. This offers your customer flexibility as well as quick and efficient processing of contracts.
- The product definition covers all the key features of an Islamic LC. For example, details of documents that should accompany it, the free format messages that form part of the correspondence, the advices to be generated for various events, the accounting entries to be passed for an event, the commission and tax handling specifications.
- The details of documents, free format messages, and commodities are defined only once and can be retrieved whenever needed. This reduces the effort involved in the capture of Islamic LC details, thus rendering it faster and error free. The flexibility built into the system ensures that you can modify these details to suit the requirement of each Islamic LC.
- The copy feature further simplifies, the input processing, for contracts.
- The Central Liability sub-system automatically controls the booking of an Islamic LC against the credit lines assigned to the customer before the bookings are made.
- Oracle Banking Trade Finance supports the concept of ‘specialized services branch’ concept. If you have trade financing expertise at only one branch, say the Head Office (HO) and Islamic LCs for customers of any branch is processed only through the HO, Oracle Banking Trade Finance offers absolute ease of operations. The Islamic LC can be processed for a customer of any branch, in the same way as you would, for a customer of your own branch.
- The module supports automated follow-up for commission and charge payments, confirmation and acknowledgments.
- Graphic User Interface (GUI) facilitates ease of input. Pick-lists have been provided wherever possible. This makes the module both efficient and easy to use.
- The media supported include Mail, Telex and SWIFT
- The National Language Support (NLS) features are available.
- LCs are governed by the Uniform Customs and Practice (UCP) which is published by the International Chambers of Commerce (ICC) Paris, France. You can indicate that the Islamic LCs issued at your bank fall in line with the UCP, which is regarded as a rule book by virtually all banks in the world.

1.2 Operations supported on an Islamic LC

The following are the operations supported on an Islamic LC:

- Open an import Islamic LC or guarantee
- Open and confirm an import Islamic LC

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Pre-advice an export Islamic LC
- Advice an export Islamic LC
- Advice and confirm an export Islamic LC
- Confirm an export Islamic LC

Thus, your bank can perform one of the following roles:

- The issuing (opening) bank for an import Islamic LC or guarantee
- The advising bank or for an export Islamic LC
- The confirming bank for an export Islamic LC

In addition to amendment of the terms of an Islamic LC such as the expiry date, the amount, the latest shipment date, etc., you can amend the operation on an Islamic LC as follows:

- Open to open and confirm of an import Islamic LC
- Pre-advice to advice of an export Islamic LC
- Pre-advice to advice and confirm an export Islamic LC
- Advice to advice and confirm an export Islamic LC

Appropriate messages, advices, and covering letters are generated for these operations. These are listed in an annexure in this manual. The SWIFT messages generated for the different types of Islamic LC are listed in this chapter.

1.3 SWIFT Messages for an Import Islamic LC

The messages that are generated for an Import Islamic LC depends on the operation you perform on the Islamic LC.

The following are the SWIFT messages supported for an Import Islamic LC:

Table 1-1 Events Table

Event	SWIFT
Issue of a documentary credit	MT 700 and MT 701
Pre-Advice of a documentary credit instrument	MT 705
Authorization to documentary credit	MT 707
Authorization to reimburse	MT 740
Amendment to an authorization to reimburse	MT 747

1.4 SWIFT Messages for an Export Islamic LC

For an export Islamic LC, the Acknowledgment (MT 730) is the SWIFT message generated.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1.5 SWIFT Messages for a Standby Islamic LC

Table 1-2 Events table

Event	SWIFT
Issue of a documentary credit	MT 700 and MT 701
Pre-Advice of a documentary credit instrument	MT 705
Amendment to a documentary credit	MT 707
Authorization to reimburse	MT 740
Amendment to an authorization to reimburse	MT 747

1.6 SWIFT Messages for a Clean Islamic LC

The following are the SWIFT messages generated for a clean Islamic LC:

Table 1-3 Events Table

Event	SWIFT
Issue of a clean credit	MT 700 and MT 701
Pre-Advice of a clean credit instrument	MT 705
Amendment to a clean credit	MT 707
Authorization to reimburse	MT 740
Amendment to an authorization to reimburse	MT 747

1.7 SWIFT Messages for a Guarantee

The following are the SWIFT messages generated for a guarantee:

Table 1-4 Events Table

Event	SWIFT
Guarantee instrument	MT760
Guarantee amendment	MT767
Acknowledgment for a guarantee issued	MT 768

1.8 SWIFT Messages for a Shipping Guarantee

The following are the SWIFT messages generated for a shipping guarantee:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 1-5 Events table

Event	SWIFT
Issuance of Shipping Guarantee	MT700 and MT701
Amendment of Shipping Guarantee	MT707

1.9 Process Commissions and Charges

In the Islamic LC module, the method of collecting commissions and levying charges is flexible.

Commissions can be collected for the initiation and amendment events of an Islamic LC. The definition of commission rules facilitate the uniform and efficient application of commission across all Islamic LCs processed under a product.

Commissions can be collected in advance or in arrears, periodically or non-periodically. You can choose to accrue commissions at a regular frequency (daily, monthly, quarterly, half-yearly or annually). Similarly, the frequency of liquidation of periodic commission can be varied.

In Oracle Banking Trade Finance various charges such as handling charges, SWIFT charges, etc. can be processed.

The commissions and charges can be collected from any party, and if necessary, debited from a receivable account and liquidated subsequently.

1.10 Variations Supported for an Islamic LC

An Islamic LC being a very flexible payment mechanism can be made available to the customers of your bank in a number of popular variations.

1.11 Red Clause Letter of Credit

You can process a Red Clause Islamic LC wherein you can provide for anticipatory drawings. In such a case, the confirming bank or any other bank is authorized to make advance payments to the beneficiary, before the presentation of the documents.

1.12 Revocable and Irrevocable Islamic LCs

You can process both revocable and irrevocable Islamic LCs. However, irrevocable Islamic LCs are commonly used as they cannot be canceled without the consent of the buyer, the seller and the banks that are parties to the transaction.

A revocable Islamic LC can be canceled without any notice or consent from the parties involved in the Islamic LC.

1.13 Transferable and Non Transferable Islamic LCs

While capturing the details of an Islamic LC, you can indicate whether it is transferable. This information is part of the instrument generated for an Islamic LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1.14 Revolving and Non Revolving Islamic LCs

You can open an Islamic LC and choose to make it available again in its original amount after the goods have been shipped, documents presented and credit is settled. Such an Islamic LC is a revolving Islamic LC. Under a revolving Islamic LC the amount is reinstated or renewed without any specific amendments to the Islamic LC. A revolving Islamic LC may be revocable or non-revocable, and can revolve in relation to the following:

- Value
- Time

This facility can be utilized when a supplier wishes to make repetitive shipments over a period such as a year.

The Islamic LC can have an automatic reinstatement clause, which provides for continuing the renewal of availability. You also have the option to manually reinstate an Islamic LC. The credit may require approval of the opening party before it becomes available again.

1.15 Sight and Usance Islamic LC

Oracle Banking Trade Finance allows the processing of a sight or Usance payment against an Islamic LC.

- In case of a sight Islamic LC, the negotiating bank pays the seller immediately and is later reimbursed by the issuing bank
- In the case of a Usance Islamic LC, the drawee bank accepts the obligation to pay the seller at maturity. An Islamic LC with a time draft drawn on the opening party, calling for payment at a future date is called a time or Usance Islamic LC.

1.16 Open Ended Islamic LCs

Process an Islamic LC without an expiry date known as an open ended Islamic LC.

1.17 Cash Collateral against an Islamic LC

An Islamic LC can be processed against cash collateral. Oracle Banking Trade Finance provides you with the facility to calculate the cash collateral either as a percentage of the Islamic LC amount or as a fixed amount. Cash collateral advice will be generated for its collection.

When the Islamic LC amount is amended, you also have the option of adjusting the collateral amount accordingly.

1.18 Availment against an Islamic LC

You can process the availment against an Islamic LC either through the Islamic LC module or through the bills module of Oracle Banking Trade Finance. Availment charges can be levied and cash collateral adjusted, during an availment.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2

Islamic Letters of Credit - Maintenance

The Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) module requires the setting up of certain basic information before it becomes operational. The information that needs to be maintained includes:

- Document details
- Clause details
- Goods details
- Free Format Text details
- Insurance Company details
- Import License Expiry Date for a customer
- Exchange Rate Type maintenance for different transaction amount slabs

The procedure for maintaining these details is discussed in the subsequent sections.

- Documents and Clauses Details
- Goods Details
- Free Format Text (FFT) Codes Details
- Maintain Insurance Company Details
  This topic describes the systematic instructions to maintain insurance company details.
- Maintain Customer Insurance Details
  This topic describes the systematic instruction to Maintain Customer Insurance details.
- Maintain Import License Expiry Date
  This topic describes the systematic instructions to maintain Import License Expiry Date.
- Application of Exchange Rate Type based on Transaction Amount

2.1 Documents and Clauses Details

This topic contains the following sub-topics:

1. Maintain Documents and Clauses
2. Specify Values for the User Defined Fields
3. Operations on Document Maintenance Record

- Maintain Documents and Clauses
  This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain documents and clauses.
- Specify Values for the User Defined Fields
- Operations on Document Maintenance Record

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2.1.1 Maintain Documents and Clauses

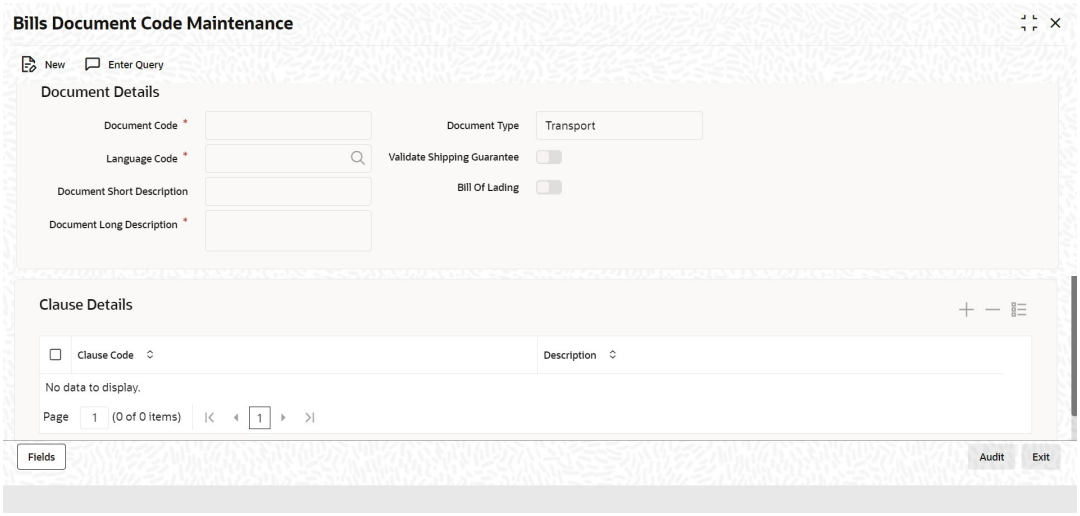
This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain documents and clauses.

There are certain standard documents that are required under a documentary Islamic LC. As these documents are standard and common in most countries, their details need not be specified every time you need to use it for an Islamic LC. Instead, you can maintain its details in the 'Bills & Collection Document Code Maintenance' screen and attach it to the Islamic LC you process.
The advantage of maintaining document details is that at the time of creating a product or at the time of entering the details of an Islamic LC, you only need to specify the code assigned to the document. All the details maintained for the document will be automatically picked up. This helps reduce repetitive work, as you do not need to enter the contents of the document each time you use it.

1. Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

   Bills and Collection Document Code Maintenance screen is displayed.

Figure 2-1 Bills and Collection Document Code Maintenance



2. On **Bills and Collection Document Code Maintenance** screen, specify the details.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 2-1 Bills and Collection Document Code Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Document Code	In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, each document maintained is identified by a twelve-character code, called a Document Code. You can follow your own convention for devising this code. However, one of the characters of the code should necessarily be a letter of the English alphabet. The code assigned to should be unique as it is used to identify the document. While creating a product or at the time of entering the details of an Islamic LC, you only need to specify the code assigned to the document. The document details will be automatically picked up and defaulted.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2-1 (Cont.) Bills and Collection Document Code Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Language Code	Specify the language code using which all the correspondences with the party should be carried out. Click the option list icon to view the list of available language codes.
Document Type	Select the document type from the drop-down list. The available options are Transport, Insurance, Invoice, and Others.
Document Short Description	The documents for an Islamic LC are at times large and hence difficult to identify. Therefore, you can specify a short description or a title that will enable you to identify the document quickly. The short description that you specify is for information purposes only and will not be printed on any customer correspondence.
Document Long Description	Specify the complete description of the document.
Validate Shipping Guarantee	Check this option to indicate that a shipping guarantee should be validated.
Bill of Landing	Check this box to validate the reference number used in the bill against the shipping guarantee Bill of lading reference number.
Clause Details	A clause is a statement that accompanies a document required under an Islamic LC. Instead of specifying the details of a clause every time, you can maintain a list of the standard clauses, which can accompany the documents, required for an Islamic LC, in the Clause Maintenance screen. The advantage of maintaining clause details is that at the time of creating a product or at the time of entering an Islamic LC, you only need to specify the code assigned to the clause. All the details maintained for the clause will be automatically picked up. In this section specify the following details:
Clause Code	Each clause that you maintain is identified by a twelve-character code called a Clause code. You can follow your own convention for devising the code. However, at least one of the characters of the clause code should be a letter of the English alphabet. This code should be unique as it is used to identify the clause. While creating a product or at the time of entering details of an Islamic LC where you need to specify the clauses that should accompany a document, you only need to specify the code assigned to the clause. The clause details will be automatically picked up and defaulted.
Clause Description	After specifying a code for the clause, you can proceed to maintain a detailed description of the clause. The description carries the contents of the clause, which will be printed on the customer correspondence that accompany an Islamic LC. The clause description can contain a maximum of two thousand characters.

2.1.2 Specify Values for the User Defined Fields

Link the User Defined Fields with Branch Parameters Maintenance screen using Function field mapping screen. It is processed by selecting User defined fields, and then Function field mapping. The value for these fields can be specified in the ‘Branch Parameters Maintenance’ screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> Value for UDF can be made mandatory or non mandatory as maintained in the Field description screen.

After you have entered the details of the document and clause you should save the record. After you have made the mandatory entries and saved the record, your User ID will be displayed in the Input By field at the bottom of the screen. The date and time at which you saved the record will be displayed in the Date/Time field.

A record that you have created should be authorized by a user, bearing a different login Id, before the EOD is run. Once the record is authorized, the ID of the user who authorized the record will be displayed in the Auth By field. The date and time at which the record has been authorized will be displayed in the Date/Time. The status of the record will be displayed in the check box marked Authorized. The field will remain unchecked until the record is authorized.

Click '**Exit**' to exit the return to the Application Browser.

2.1.3 Operations on Document Maintenance Record

On an existing Document Maintenance record, you can perform the following operations (if any function under the Application toolbar is disabled, it means that the function is not allowed for the record):

- Amend the details of a document
- Authorize a Document
- Copy the details of a document on to a new one
- Close the Document
- Reopen the document
- Print the details of a document
- Delete the details of a document

Please refer to the manual on Common Procedures for details of these operations.

On an existing Clause Maintenance record, you can perform the following operations (if any function under the Application toolbar is disabled, it means that the function is not allowed for the record):

- Amend the details of the record
- Authorize the record
- Copy the details of a Clause, on to a new record
- Close the record
- Reopen the closed record
- Print the details of a record
- Delete the record

Please refer to the manual on Common Procedures for details of these operations.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2.2 Goods Details

This topic contains the following sub-topics:

- Maintain Goods
  This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain Goods.
- Specify Values for UDF
- Operations on a Goods/Commodity Maintenance Record

2.2.1 Maintain Goods

This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain Goods.

An Islamic LC is used for trade payments. It therefore involves merchandise. There are certain standard goods or commodities, the trading of which is done, with Islamic LC cover. Instead of specifying the details of merchandise each time they are traded under an Islamic LC, you can maintain the details of the standard goods in the Commodity Codes Maintenance screen. The advantage of maintaining goods details is that at the time of entering the details of an Islamic LC, you only need to specify the code assigned to the goods. The description maintained for the goods/commodity code will be automatically picked up. Typically, the statutory body controlling international and domestic trade in a country assigns these codes.

Specify the **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. From Homescreen, specify **BCDCOMCD** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   Bills and Collections Commodity Maintenance Screen is displayed.

Figure 2-2 Bills and Collections Commodity Maintenance screen.

2. On Bills and Collections Commodity Maintenance screen, specify the fields.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2-2 Bills and Collection - Field Description

Field	Description
Goods Code	In Oracle Banking Trade Finance goods are identified by a twelve-character code called the Goods Code. You can follow your own convention for devising the code. However, at least one of the characters of the goods code should be a letter of the English alphabet. The code that you assign to a commodity should be unique as it is used to identify the commodity/goods. While processing an Islamic LC where you need to specify the goods transacted, you need to specify the code assigned to the goods. The goods description will automatically be picked up and defaulted.
Language Code	Specify the language code using which all the correspondences with the party should be carried out. Click the option list icon to view the list of available language codes.
Goods Description	After assigning a code to the goods, you can proceed to maintain a detailed description of the goods. The 'Goods Description' can contain a maximum of six thousand five hundred characters. While specifying the details of the goods transacted under an Islamic LC, you can edit the description that is defaulted, to suit the requirements of the Islamic LC you are processing. Specifications such as the quality and quantity of the merchandise can also be entered.
Banned Commodity	As part of maintaining the details of the goods that can be traded under an Islamic LC, you can also specify whether the commodity being defined is banned from import/export. If you are maintaining the details of a banned commodity, you can indicate the same by selecting this option in the screen. At the time of selecting the goods being traded under an Islamic LC, the system will display the commodities in the option-list. In addition, the list will also display whether a particular commodity is banned or not by indicating 'YES' (for a banned product) and 'NO' (for a product that is allowed for trade) against the product.

2.2.2 Specify Values for UDF

Link the User Defined Fields with 'Branch Parameters Maintenance' screen using Function field mapping screen which can be processed from the Application Browser by selecting User defined fields, and then Function field mapping.

The value for these fields are specified in the 'Branch Parameters Maintenance' screen.

> **Note**
>
> Value for UDF can be made mandatory or non mandatory as maintained in the Field description screen.

After making the mandatory entries, save the record.

On saving the record, your User ID is displayed in the Input By field at the bottom of the screen. The date and time at which you saved the record will be displayed in the Date/Time field.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

A record that you have created should be authorized by a user bearing a different login Id, before the EOD is run. Once the record is authorized, the Id of the user who authorized the record will be displayed in the Auth By field. The date and time at which the record has been authorized will be displayed in the Date/Time field positioned next to the Auth By field. The status of the record will be displayed in the check box marked Authorized. The field will remain unchecked until the record is authorized.

Click 'Exit' button to exit the screen. You will return to the Application Browser

2.2.3 Operations on a Goods/Commodity Maintenance Record

On an existing Goods Maintenance record, you can perform the following operations (if any function under the Application toolbar is disabled, it means that the function is not allowed for the record):

- Amend the details of a record
- Authorize a record
- Copy the details of a commodity, on to a new record
- Close a record
- Reopen a closed record
- Print the details of a record
- Delete a record

Please refer to the manual on Common Procedures for details of these operations.

2.3 Free Format Text (FFT) Codes Details

This topic describes about Free Format text (FTT) Codes Details.

- Maintain Free Format Text (FFT) Codes
  This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain Free Format Text (FTT) Codes.
- Specify Values for User Defined Fields
- Operations on the FFT Maintenance Record
- Maintain INCO Terms

2.3.1 Maintain Free Format Text (FFT) Codes

This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain Free Format Text (FTT) Codes.

Free Format Text (FFT) may be a set of instructions or statements that are applicable to the Islamic LCs that you process. There are certain standard statements that should appear in the correspondence and messages, sent to the parties involved in an Islamic LC. Instead of specifying the details of an FFT each time you need to use it, you can maintain them in the FFT Maintenance screen.
The advantage of maintaining FFT details is that at the time of creating a product or while entering the details of an Islamic LC, you only need to specify the code assigned to the FFT. All the details maintained for the FFT code will be automatically picked up. This reduces your effort, as you do not need to enter the description of an FFT each time you use it.

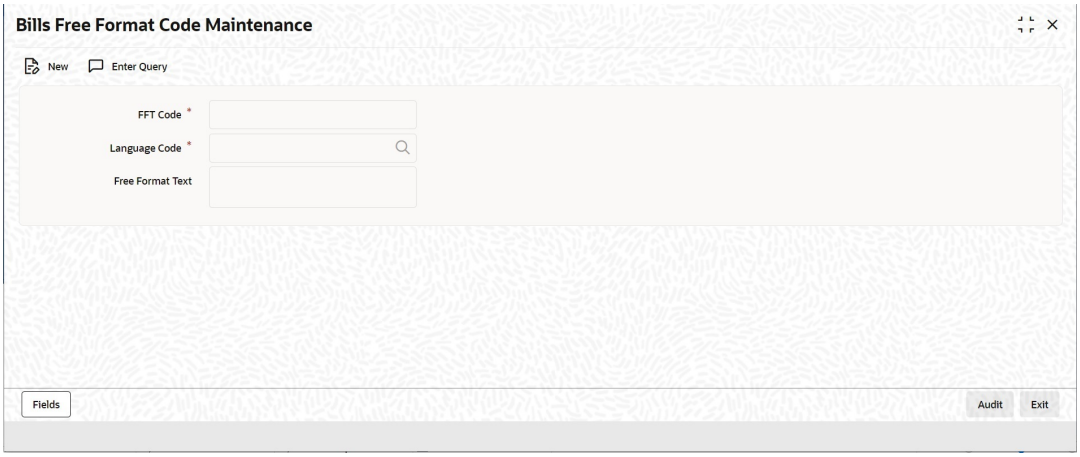
Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **BCDFFTCD** in the text box, and click next arrow.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Bills & Collections Free Format Code Maintenance screen is displayed.

Figure 2-3 Bills & Collections Free Format Code Maintenance



2. On **Bills and Collections free Format code**, specify the fields.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 2-3 Bills and Collection

Field	Description
Text Code	In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, each FFT that you maintain is identified by a twelve character code called an FFT Code. You can follow your own conventions for devising the code. However, at least one of the characters of the goods code should be a letter of the English alphabet. The code that you specify should be unique since it identifies the FFT. While creating a product, or at the time of entering the details of an Islamic LC you only need to specify the code assigned to the FFT. The FFT details will be automatically picked up and defaulted.
Language Code	Specify the language code using which all the correspondences with the party should be carried out. Click the option list icon to view the list of available language codes.
Free Format Text	After assigning a code to identify an FFT, you can proceed to maintain the description of the FFT. The description that you specify can contain text up to two thousand characters.

2.3.2 Specify Values for User Defined Fields

You can link the User Defined Fields with ‘Branch Parameters Maintenance’ screen using Function field mapping screen which can be invoked from the Application Browser by selecting User defined fields, and then Function field mapping. The value for these fields can be specified in the ‘Branch Parameters Maintenance’ screen.

> **Note**
>
> Value for UDF can be made mandatory or non mandatory as maintained in the Field description screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Click Exit button to exit the screen.

2.3.3 Operations on the FFT Maintenance Record

On an existing FFT Maintenance record, you can perform the following operations (if any function under the Application toolbar is disabled, it means that the function is not allowed for the record):

- Amend the details of the record
- Authorize the record
- Copy the details of an FFT on to a new record
- Close the record
- Reopen the closed record
- Print the details of a record
- Delete the record

Please refer to the manual on Common Procedures for details of these operations.

2.3.4 Maintain INCO Terms

Associate documents and clauses to INCO Terms as part of a one-time maintenance for your bank. The following are the INCO terms for which you can maintain documents and clauses:

- CIF
- C&F
- C&I
- FOB
- CFR
- EX-Works

You can associate any number of valid documents to an INCO term. To each document associated with a term, you can associate any number of clauses.

When creating an Islamic LC product, you can indicate the INCO term that should be associated with it. The documents and clauses associated with the term will automatically default to Islamic LCs processed under the product. When processing an Islamic LC, you can modify the default list of associated documents and clauses.

2.4 Maintain Insurance Company Details

This topic describes the systematic instructions to maintain insurance company details.

An Islamic LC, as an instrument of international trade involves the shipment of large merchandise over long distances. To cover the loss or damage of the goods during transition, most merchandise traded under an Islamic LC is covered with an insurance policy.
You can maintain the details of different Insurance Companies in Oracle Banking Trade Finance.

At the time of capturing the details of an Islamic LC contract in the system, you can associate the appropriate Insurance Company Code with the contract. Upon selection of the code, all the details maintained for the selected code will be automatically picked up by the system.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

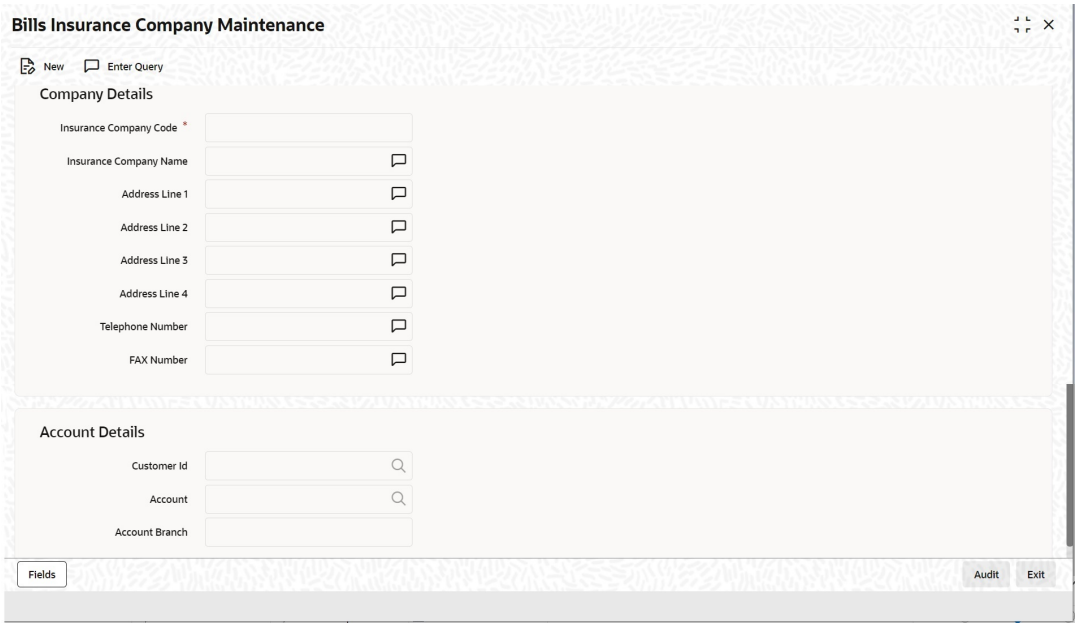
Subsequently, on receipt of the insurance policy from the company, the insurance policy number can also be captured in the relevant contract.

Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **BCDINSCO** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   Bills & Collections Insurance Company Maintenance screen is displayed.

Figure 2-4 Bills & Collections Insurance Company Maintenance



2. On **Bills & Collections Insurance Company Maintenance** screen, specify the details.

   For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 2-4 Bills & Collections Insurance Company Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Insurance Company Code	Specify a unique code for each insurance company being defined in the system. The insurance company will be identified by this code throughout the system. This is mandatory information and if not provided, you will not be allowed to save the details of the company. You can use a maximum of 9 alphanumeric characters to create the company code.
Insurance Company Name	After specifying a unique code for the company, you can also specify the full name of the insurance company.
Address	Specify the mailing address of the insurance company being defined. You can maintain a maximum of four lines of address. Each line of address can accommodate a maximum of 105 alphanumeric characters.
Telephone Number	Capture the telephone number of the insurance company.
Fax Number	Specify the Fax Number of the insurance company
Customer	Specify the customer identification number of the insurance company. The adjoining option list displays all valid, open and authorized customers maintained in the system. You can select the appropriate one.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2-4 (Cont.) Bills & Collections Insurance Company Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Account	Specify the customer account number of the insurance company. The adjoining option list displays all valid, open and authorized customer accounts attached to the chosen customer identification number. You can select the appropriate one. Based on the account specified, the branch in which the account resides is displayed alongside. **Note** The insurance company will be available for association with Islamic LC contracts only after you authorize the company details.

2.5 Maintain Customer Insurance Details

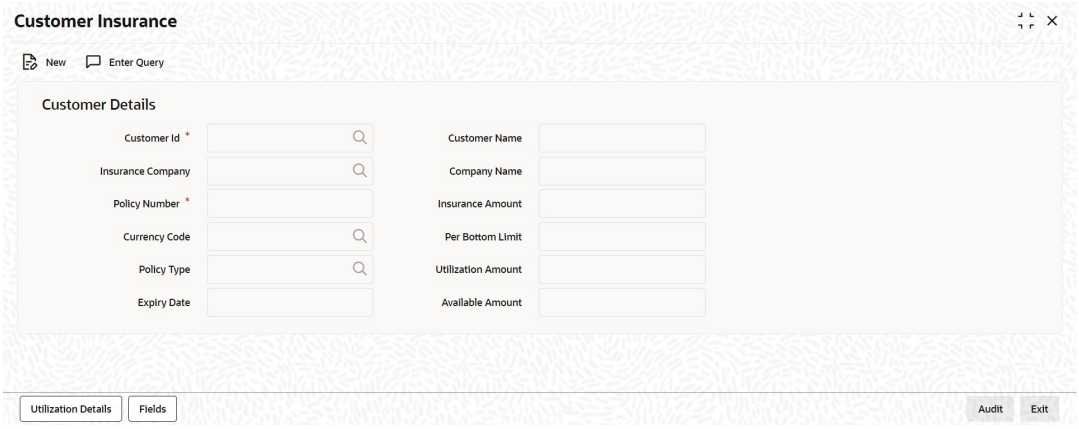
This topic describes the systematic instruction to Maintain Customer Insurance details.

Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **BCDCIFIN** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   Customer Insurance Screen is displayed.

Figure 2-5 Customer Insurance



2. On **Customer Insurance** screen, specify the fields.

   For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2-5 Customer Insurance - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer Id	Specify the customer for whom you are maintaining insurance details. The adjoining option list displays all the valid and open customer identification numbers (CIF) maintained in the system. You can select the appropriate one. The system displays the chosen customer's name in the 'Customer Name' field.
Insurance Company	Specify the company whose insurance policy the customer holds. The adjoining option list displays all the insurance companies maintained in the system through the 'Insurance Company Codes Maintenance' screen. You can select the appropriate one. The system displays the chosen company's name in the 'Company Name' field.
Policy Number	Specify the policy number of the insurance policy that the customer holds.
Currency Code	Specify the currency in which the insurance policy has been taken. The adjoining option list displays all the currency codes maintained in the system. You can select the appropriate one.
Policy Type	Select the type of insurance from the adjoining option list. This list displays all the values maintained for 'Insurance_Type' in the 'Types' screen.
Expiry Date	Specify the date on which the insurance policy expires. If you don't input a date, the system will consider the insurance policy to be open-ended.
Per Bottom Limit	Specify the maximum limit for which an Islamic LC contract linked to the policy can be covered. The amount will be considered in the currency of the insurance amount.
Insurance Amount	Specify the amount for which the customer is insured as per the specified policy.
Utilization Amount	The system displays the insurance amount that is utilized by an Islamic LC contract. Whenever an Islamic LC contract gets saved with some insurance amount linked to it, the system will update this value to extent of amount used. Similarly, if a linked Islamic LC gets closed, cancelled or reversed before the insurance expiry date, the system will re-instate the utilization amount ear-marked for that contract. This is true of Islamic LCs linked to open-ended policies too.
Available Amount	The system displays the available insurance amount that can be linked to an Islamic LC contract. The amount is computed as total insurance amount – utilized insurance amount. Whenever an Islamic LC contract gets saved with some insurance amount linked to it, the system will update this value to extent of amount available. Similarly, if a linked Islamic LC gets closed, cancelled or reversed before the insurance expiry date, the system will re-instate the utilization amount ear-marked for that contract and make it available for further utilization. This is true of Islamic LCs linked to open-ended policies too.

(Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

(Optional) Enter the result of the procedure here.

- Capture Utilization History Details

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2.5.1 Capture Utilization History Details

You can view the Islamic LC contracts for which the insurance amount has been utilized, in the 'Utilization Details' screen.

Click **Utilization Details** to process the screen.

Here you can view the following details of the Islamic LC contracts:

- Contract Reference Number
- Event
- Utilization date
- Expiry date
- Closure Date
- Contract Status

2.6 Maintain Import License Expiry Date

This topic describes the systematic instructions to maintain Import License Expiry Date.

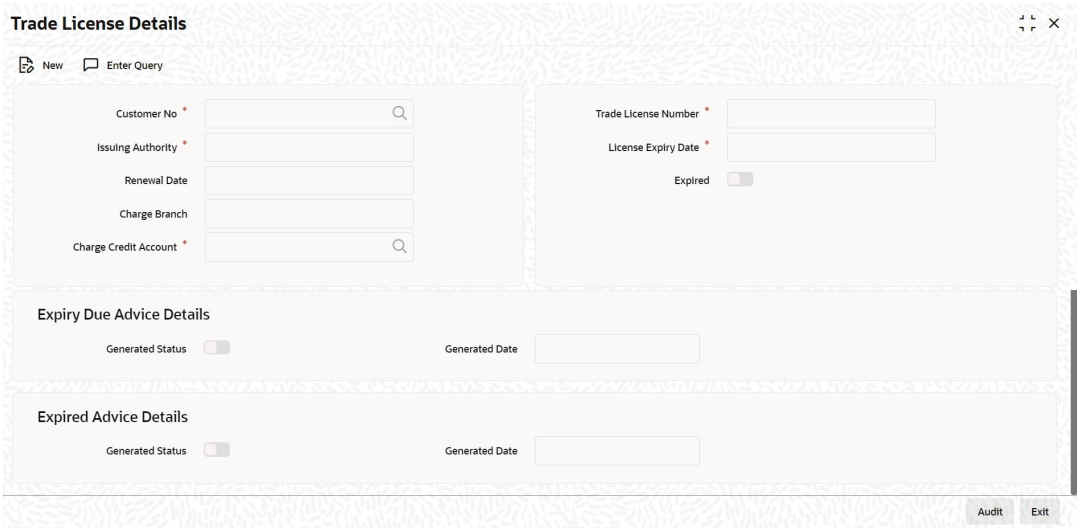
Oracle Banking Trade Finance allows you to maintain the Import License Expiry Date of all the customers of your bank. You can maintain only one License Expiry Date for a customer. On selection of the CIF ID of the customer at the time of processing an Islamic LC contract, the Import License Expiry Date maintained for the selected CIF ID is also displayed in the Islamic LC Contract screen. The system will not do any validations based on the expiry date. It is used only for information purpose.
The Import License Expiry Date is captured through the License Expiry Date Maintenance screen.

Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **LCDEXPDT** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   The **Trade License Details** is displayed.

Figure 2-6 Trade License Details



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. On **Letters of Credit License Expiry Date Maintenance** screen, specify the fields.

   For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 2-6 Letters of Credit License Expiry Date Maintenance

Field	Description
Customer No	Every customer of your bank is identified by a unique CIF ID. All authorized and active CIF IDs will be displayed in the option-list. You can select the appropriate CIF ID from the list.
Issuing Authority	Specify the government authority which issued the trade license to the customer.
Trade License No.	Specify the trade license number. This must be unique for each customer.
License Expiry Date	After you select the CIF ID, you can specify the Import License Expiry Date for the customer. The expiry date maintained here would be associated with all Islamic LC contracts processed for the customer.
Expired	The system marks the trade license of the customer as expired during EOD if the system date happens to be greater than or equal to trade license expiry date.
Renewal Date	Specify the date on which the trade was renewed.
Charge Account	Specify a valid account to be used to collect the charges for trade license expiry. The adjoining option list displays all open and authorized accounts belonging to the customer. You can select the appropriate one.
Charge Branch	The system displays the Branch Code where the Charge Account is held.
Expiry Due Advice Details	During EOD, advices are generated for customers whose trade license is impending expiry.
Generated Status	The success or failure of message generation through the above process is indicated by the true and false status of the field ‘Generated Status’.
Generated Date	The system displays the date on which the message was generated, if any.
Expired Advice Details	During EOD, advices are generated for customers whose trade license has expired.
Generated Status	The success or failure of message generation through the above process is indicated by ‘True’ or ‘False’ status of this field.
Generated Date	The success or failure of message generation through the above process is indicated by the true and false status of the field ‘Generated Status’.

2.7 Application of Exchange Rate Type based on Transaction Amount

Oracle Banking Trade Finance allows you to apply different exchange rates based on the amount involved in the transaction. The cut-off amount slabs are maintained in the local currency of your bank.

If the transaction currency is not the local currency, the system will first convert the transaction amount into the local currency equivalent using the Standard Mid Rate. This is necessary as the cut-off amount slabs are maintained in the local currency. The system will then validate the converted amount against the different amount slabs to determine the appropriate rate type.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This is the rate type that will be used for the actual conversion of the transaction currency into the local currency equivalent.

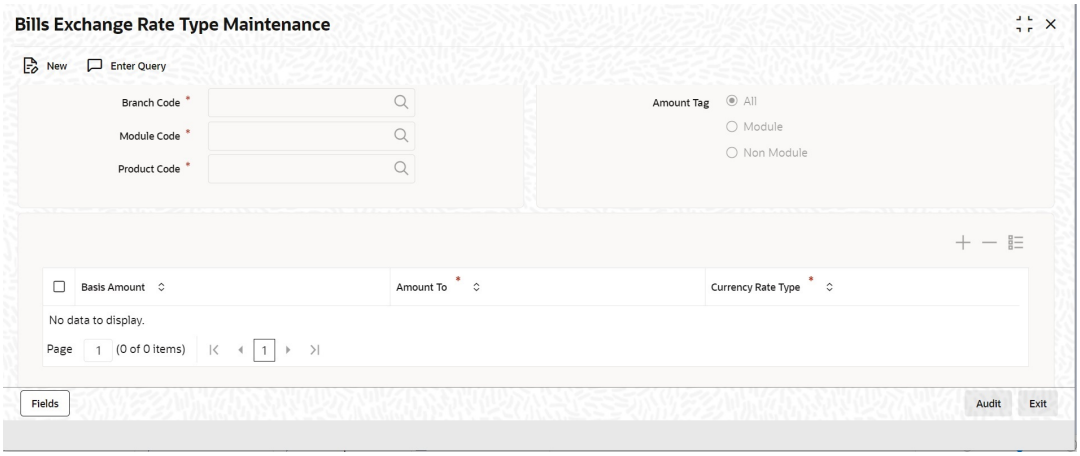
The Document Master Maintenance screen is common for both Islamic Bills & Collections and Islamic LC modules. You can process Bills & Collections Document Code Maintenance' screen by typing BCDDOCCD in the field at the top right corner of the Application tool bar and clicking the adjoining arrow button. If you are maintaining details of a new document, or 3-2 click 'New' icon from the application tool bar. The 'Bills & Collections Document Code Maintenance' screen is displayed without any details

Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, specify **BCDAMTEX** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   Exchange Rate screen is displayed.

Figure 2-7 Exchange rate



2. On **Exchange Rate** screen, specify the fields.

   For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 2-7 Exchange rate - Field Description

Field	Description
Branch Code, Module Code, Product Code	Each branch of your bank is identified by a unique code. All authorized and active branch codes are available in the option-list. You can select the appropriate branch code from the list. Like wise, all the modules (like Finances & Deposits, Letters of Credit, Bills & Collections etc) available in your bank are also displayed in an option-list. All active and authorized records are available for selection. You can select the appropriate module code from the list. The various products/services offered by your bank are also available in an option-list. Select the product code from the list. Alternatively, you can also maintain the cut-off amounts that will be applicable for all the branches, modules, and products of your bank. You can make the following selections to do this: • Branch Code – AL (all branches) • Module Code – ALL (all modules) • Product Code – ZALL (all products)

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 2-7 (Cont.) Exchange rate - Field Description

Field	Description
Amount	Amount tags identify the various components (eg Bill Amount, Finance Principal, Islamic LC Amount etc.) involved in a contract. You can maintain the cut-off amount slabs for: • All Amount Tags: – The maintenance will be applicable to all the amount tags available in the system (Module tags and Non-module tags). • Module Tags: – The amount tags that are specific to a particular module are known as Module Tags. For eg the amount tag PRINCIPAL is specific to the Finances module, BILL_AMOUNT is defined for the Bills module and so on.
Non-Module Tags:	The amount tags that are internally created by the system are referred to as Non-Module tags. The system will automatically create the amount tags for the Profit, Tax, Charge, and Commission components that you define for a product.
Basis Amount	You can maintain the different amount slabs in this field. Specify the lower limit of the amount slab here. **Note** For the first slab, the floor basis amount will always be maintained as zero.
Amount	Specify the upper limit of the slab. The upper limit of the precious amount slab gets defaulted as the Floor Basis Amount. Click on option list to capture each subsequent amount slab.
Currency Rate Type	You can associate a different exchange rate type with each cut-off amount slab that you have maintained. All authorized and active rate types defined in your system are available in the option-list. Select the appropriate rate type for each amount slab.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3

Define Attributes specific to an Islamic Product

In this chapter, we shall discuss the manner in which you can define attributes specific to a Letters of Credit product. You can create a Letter of Credit product in the Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) Product Definition screen, invoked from the Application Browser.

- Create an Islamic LC Product
  This topic describes the systematic instruction to create an Islamic LC Product.
- Generate Islamic LC Expiry/Closure Advices

3.1 Create an Islamic LC Product

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create an Islamic LC Product.

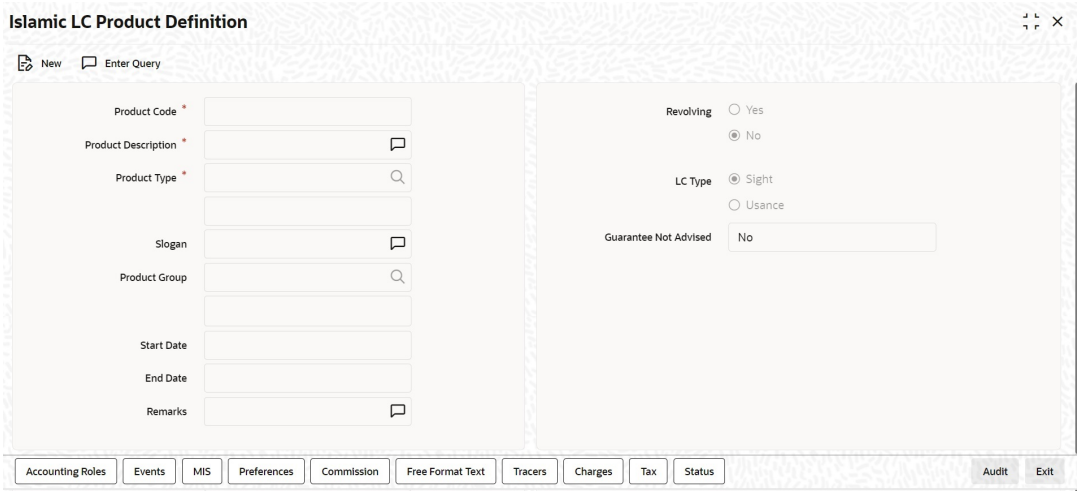
The basic information about the product such as the Product Code and its description is captured through the Islamic LC Product Definition screen. Information related to specific attributes of a product can be defined in subsequent screens that can be invoked from the product definition screen.

Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, type **LIDPRMNT** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   The **Islamic LC - Product Definition** screen is displayed.

Figure 3-1 Islamic LC Product Definition



2. On **Islamic LC Product Definition** screen, specify the fields.

   Define the attributes specific to a letters of credit product in the '**Islamic LC Product Definition**' screen and the 'Islamic LC Product Preferences' screen. In these screens, you can specify the product type and set the product preferences respectively.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-1 Button - Description

Field	Description
Accounting Roles	Click this button to define the accounting role to accounting head mapping.
Events	Click this button to select the events for the product and then maintain event-wise accounting entries and advices.
Preference	Click this button to define preferences like tenor, Prepayment option etc.
MIS	Click this button to capture MIS related parameters.
Commission	Click this button to define the Commission details.
Charges	Click this button to define charge components, rules, events and other associated details.
Tax	Click this button to associate tax rules and select tax currencies.
Free Format Text	Click this button to attach the Documents and Free format text required for the Product
Tracers	Click this button to enter details of the tracers that should be generated for all Islamic LCs under this product

For any product you create in Oracle Trade Finance Banking, you can define generic attributes, such as branch, currency, and customer restrictions, Profit details, tax details, etc., by clicking on the appropriate icon in the horizontal array of icons on this screen. You can define product restrictions for branch, currency, customer category and customer in Product Restrictions (CSDTFPDR) screen. For details on the product, restrictions refer to the Product Restriction Maintenance chapter in the Core Service User Manual. You can define User Defined Fields in the ‘Product UDF Mapping’ screen (CSDTFUDF). For details on User Defined Fields screen refer Other Maintenances chapter in Core Service User Manual. For letters of credit product, in addition to these generic attributes, you can specifically define other attributes. These attributes are discussed in detail in this chapter.

Table 3-2 Islamic LC Product Definition - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	The code you assign to a product will identify the product throughout the module. The code should contain four characters. You can follow your own convention for devising the code. However, at least one of the characters should be a letter of the English alphabet. Since the code that you define is used to identify the product, it should be unique across the modules of Oracle Trade Fince. For instance, if you have assigned the code ‘Islamic LC01’ to a particular product in this module, you cannot use it as a code in any other module.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-2 (Cont.) Islamic LC Product Definition - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Description	Enter a brief description of the product, which will be associated with the product for information retrieval purposes. Product Type The product type identifies the basic nature of a product. An Islamic LC product that you create in Oracle Trade Fince can be of the following types: • Import Islamic LC • Export Islamic LC • Guarantee • Standby Guarantee • Shipping Guarantee • Shipping Guarantee • Clean Islamic LC • Advice of Guarantee The entries that are passed, the messages that are generated and the processing of contracts involving the product, is determined by your input to this field.
Slogan	Specify a marketing punch-line to be associated with the product. This slogan will be printed on all the advices that are sent to the customer, for an Islamic LC involving this product.
Product Group	Each product is classified under a specific group. The different groups are defined in the Product Group Definition table.
Start Date and End Date	A product can be set up for use over a specific period, by defining a start and an end date. The Issue Date of an Islamic LC involving a product should be: • The same as or later than the Start Date • The same as or earlier than the End Date The start and end dates of a product come in handy when you are defining a product for a scheme, which is open for a specific period.
Remarks	You can enter information about the product, intended for the internal reference of your bank. The remarks are displayed when the details of the LC are displayed or printed. However, this information will not be printed on any correspondence with the customer. To maintain the allowed and disallowed customer and customer categories, you have to click the button and invoke the ‘Customer and Customer Restrictions’ screen.
Module	All the modules (like Loans & Deposits, Letters of Credit, Bills & Collections etc.) in Oracle Trade Fince are represented by a code. This code is displayed in the module field. The product code that you assign to a product will identify the product throughout this module.
Resolving	Islamic LC products can be revolving or non-revolving. If you indicate that the product is revolving, you can associate the product with only revolving Islamic LCs. While actually processing revolving you can indicate whether the Islamic LC should revolve in time or in value. Similarly if you indicate that the product is non-revolving, you can associate the product to only non-revolving Islamic LCs. **Note** All Islamic LCs will be of irrevocable nature.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-2 (Cont.) Islamic LC Product Definition - Field Description

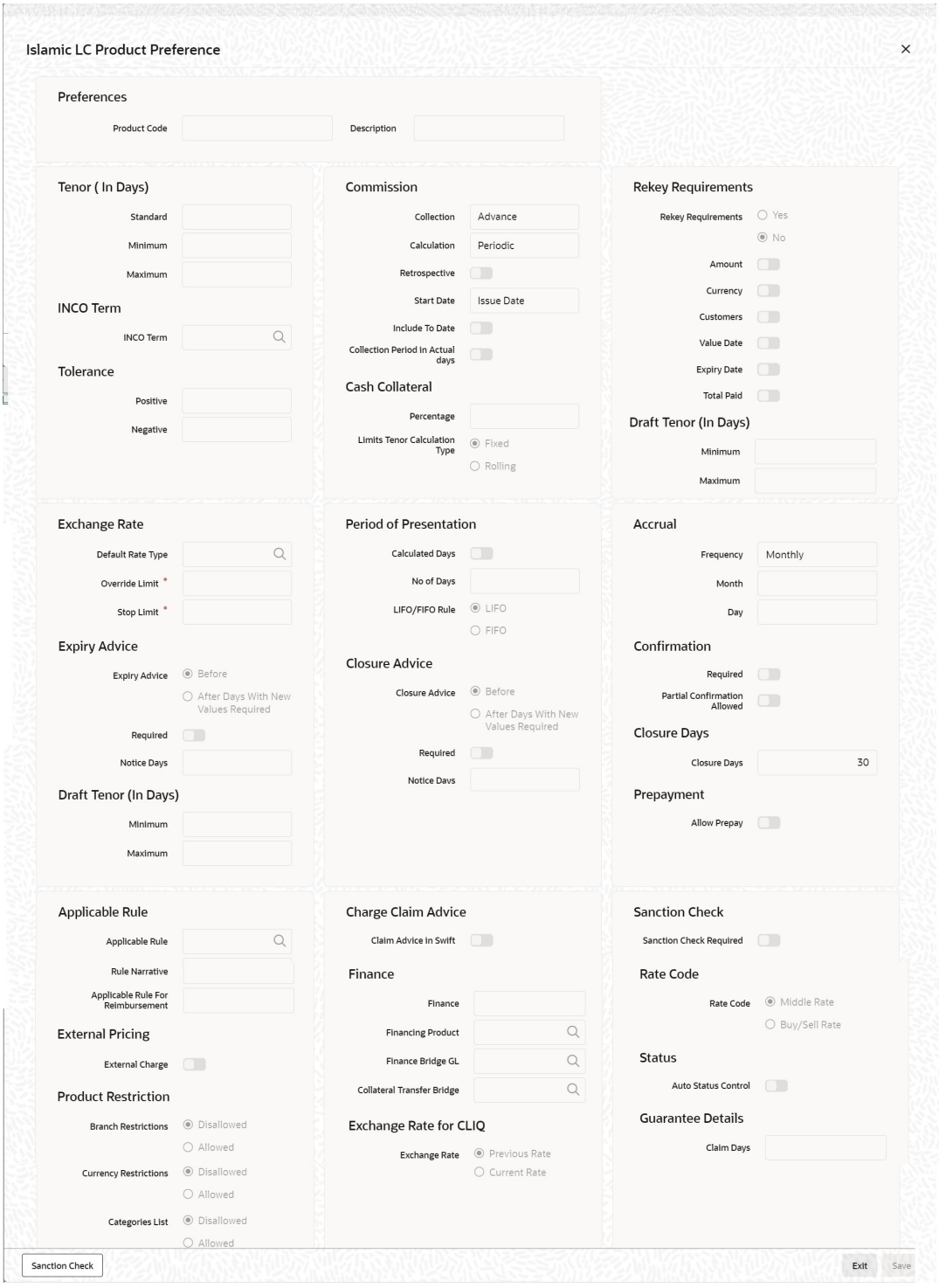
Field	Description
LC Type	LC products can be sight or usance. If you indicate that the LC type is sight, then you can select the credit mode as: • Sight Payment • Negotiation If you indicate that the LC type is Usance, then you can choose the credit mode as • Acceptance • Deferred Payment • Mixed Payment • Negotiation The system displays an override message if the credit mode is not applicable for LC product.

3. On **Islamic Product Definition** screen, click **Preference**.

   The Letters of Credit **Preference** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 3-2 Preference screen



4. On **Preference** screen, specify the fields.

   The preferences that you define for a product will be applied to all the Islamic LC contracts involving the product.

   For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
Tenor (In Days)	You can set the Standard, Minimum and the Maximum limits for tenor based Islamic LCs. The tenor details that you specify for an Islamic LC product is always expressed in days.
Standard	The standard tenor is the tenor that is normally associated with an Islamic LC involving a product. The standard tenor of an Islamic LC is expressed in days and will apply to all Islamic LCs involving the product. If you do not specify any specific tenor while processing an Islamic LC, the standard tenor will by default apply to it. The default standard tenor applied on an Islamic LC can be changed during Islamic LC processing. An expiry date will be calculated based on the tenor, as follows: Expiry Date = Effective Date + Tenor
Minimum	The minimum tenor of a product can be fixed. The tenor of the Islamic LCs that involves the product should be greater than or equal to the minimum tenor that you specify. If not, an override will be required before the Islamic LC is stored.
Maximum	You can fix the maximum tenor of a product. The tenor of the Islamic LCs that involves the product should be less than or equal to the Maximum tenor specified. If not, an override will be required before the Islamic LC is stored.
Cash Collateral Details	In this section specify the following details:
Percentage	For a product, specify the percentage of the Islamic LC amount that should be taken as cash collateral. This percentage will be applied by default and can be changed when the Islamic LC is processed. In addition, the currency in which the collateral is to be collected can be specified in the Islamic LC Contract Collateral screen, while processing an Islamic LC.
Limits Tenor Calculation Type	Specify the calculation type for the limits tenor. You can select one of the following options. • Fixed • Rolling
Collateral Transfer Bridge	Specify the GL/account to be used for transfer of collateral between Islamic LC and the Bill upon availment of the Bill against the Islamic LC. The GL/account specified here will be used as the bridge during the transfer accounting.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
Rekey Requirements	All operations on an Islamic LC (input, modification, reversal, etc.) have to be authorized by a user other than the one who carried out the operation. Authorization is a method of cross checking the inputs made by a user. All operations on an Islamic LC, except placing it on hold, should be authorized before beginning the End of Day operations. You have the option to specify whether certain important details of an Islamic LC need to be rekeyed, at the time of authorization. If you indicate positively, you should also specify the fields that will have to be rekeyed at the time of contract authorization. You can specify any or all of the following as rekey fields: • Amount • Currency • Customer • Value Date • Expiry Date • Total Paid When you process an Islamic LC for authorization; - as a cross-checking mechanism to ensure that you are calling the right Islamic LC, you can specify that the values of certain fields should be entered before the other details are displayed. The complete details of the Islamic LC will be displayed only after the values to these fields are entered.
	This is called the ‘rekey’ option. The fields for which the values have to be given are called the ‘rekey’ fields. If no rekey fields have been defined, the details of the Islamic LC will be displayed immediately once the authorizer calls the Islamic LC for authorization. The rekey option also serves as a means of ensuring the accuracy of inputs.
Draft Tenor in Days	Specify the fields.
Minimum	Specify the minimum draft tenor for an Islamic LC product.The value you enter must be non-decimal numeric value > = 0 and < Maximum Draft Tenor.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
Maximum	Specify the maximum draft tenor for an Islamic LC product. The value you enter must be non-decimal numeric value > 0 and > = Minimum Draft Tenor. **Note** If the LC Type of an LC product is selected as 'Sight': • On save of LC product definition, system will validate that the value defined for minimum and maximum Draft Tenor fields in preferences sub-system is either 0 or null. If the validation fails, system will display a configurable override message. • During LC contract creation, on save, system will validate that the value entered for Draft Tenor field in Drafts sub-system is either 0 or null. If the validation fails, system will display a configurable override message. The said validation is also performed on save of LC amendment using LC contract online function **Note** If the LC Type of an LC product is selected as 'Usance': • On save of LC product definition, system will validate that value defined for minimum Draft Tenor is either null or 0 or any positive non-decimal • numeric value > 0 but < = maximum draft tenor and the value defined for maximum Draft Tenor is a positive non-decimal numeric value > 0 and >= minimum draft tenor. If the validation fails, system will display an error message. • During LC contract creation, on save, system will validate that the values entered for draft tenor field in drafts sub-system is between minimum & maximum draft tenor values defined for the product. If the validation is not successful, system will display a configurable override message. The said validation is also performed on save of LC amendment using LC contract online function. • In instances where multiple drafts are captured for a LC contract, system will validate that the 'Draft Tenor' entered for each individual draft is within the minimum and maximum range defined for the product. • If minimum and maximum Draft tenor value is not defined for a LC product then on save of a LC contract, system will not perform the validation stated in point (ii) as no range is defined at the product level. • When only one of the values i.e. either 'Minimum Draft Tenor' or 'Maximum Draft Tenor' is defined for the LC product, then on save of both LC contract creation and amendment, then the value defined i.e. the 'Draft Tenor' of LC contract will be validated against the 'Minimum Draft Tenor' if 'Minimum Draft Tenor' is defined or will be validated against 'Maximum Draft Tenor' if 'Maximum Draft Tenor' is defined. If the validation fails, system will display a configurable override message.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
	• The validations described for Draft Tenor field of an LC contract are applicable only if drafts information is captured in the Drafts sub-system. If drafts are not applicable / captured for an LC contract, the said validations are not applicable. The validations stated above are applicable for both Import and Export LC products.
Commission	Commission related preferences have been discussed in the Commissions User Manual.
Tolerance	Tolerance denotes the variance that has to be built around the Islamic LC amount, to arrive at the Maximum Islamic LC amount.
Positive	Specify the percentage that should be added to the LC amount to arrive at the Maximum Islamic LC amount. When an Islamic LC is issued or advised, the Maximum Islamic LC amount will be the outstanding Islamic LC amount. This will be the maximum amount available for availment.
Negative	Specify the percentage that should be subtracted from the Islamic LC amount. The minimum tolerance is captured for information purposes only. **Note** The tolerance percentage can be changed when an Islamic LC is processed under a product. The positive and negative tolerance amounts will be a part of the Islamic LC instrument and the subsequent amendment instruments. You should use the positive tolerance to indicate the amount that is uncovered, in the Islamic LC amount. Instances could be of the freight or insurance not being paid.
Closure Days	In this section specify the following details:
Closure Days	Specify the number of days after which all Islamic LCs processed under the product being defined, will be closed. The number of days specified here and the expiry date of the Islamic LC is used to arrive at the closure date, as follows: Islamic LC Closure Date = Islamic LC Expiry Date + Closure Days By default, the system will display 30 days as the closure days. You are allowed to change this value. At the time of capturing the details of an Islamic LC contract, the system will calculate the closure date, based on the closure days that you have maintained for the product involved in the contract. However, you can change the date to any other date after the expiry date.
Exchange Rate	In this section specify the following details:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
Default Rate Type	Specify the exchange rates to be picked up and used, when an Islamic LC in a foreign currency, is processed. You can indicate that the standard rate prevailing, as of the issue date of the LC should be used. You can also specify an exchange rate of your choice. The possible values for the rate pickup are: • As per Standard Rate • As input in the Contract If you specify as input in the contract, then the system computes the components of the LC, based on your input in the Exchange rate field, in the 'LC Contract Main 'screen. If you choose 'As per standard rate' the system computes the applicable components, by picking up the exchange rates as of the transaction date, from the Currency table maintained in the Core Services module of Oracle Trade Fince.
Override Limit	If the variance between the rate defaulted and the rate input is a percentage that lies between the Rate Override Limit and the Rate Stop Limit, the Islamic LC can be saved by giving an override.
Stop Limit	If the variance between the rate defaulted and the rate input is a percentage value greater than or equal to the Rate Stop Limit, the Islamic LC cannot be saved.
Period of Presentation	As part of the preferences you define for a product, you can specify the manner in which the Period of Presentation should be calculated for the documents that accompany Islamic LCs processed under the product. The period of presentation can be arrived at in two ways. Firstly, you can specify it directly, in terms of days, in the Number of Days field. Typically, this would be 21 days. (However, you can change this to suit your need.) If you choose this option, the number of days specified will default to all Islamic LCs processed under the product. The value will default to the 'Period For Presentation' field in the Islamic LC Contract – Others screen. Alternatively, you can opt to calculate the period of presentation as follows: Expiry Date of the Islamic LC – Latest Shipment Date (You would choose this option if the period of presentation varies for each Islamic LC processed under a product.) To specify this manner of calculating the period of presentation, choose the Calculated Days option in the Product Preferences screen. The system uses the Expiry Date and the Last Shipment Date specified for the Islamic LC you are processing, and arrives at the period of presentation. The period of presentation defined for the product - or calculated for the Islamic LC, as the case may be - will be displayed in the 'Period For Presentation' field in the Islamic LC Contract - Others screen. You can change the default to suit the Islamic LC you are processing.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
LIFO/FIFO Rule	Specify the order in which the availment under this contract should be processed. You can choose one of the following options: If multiple amendments are made to the Islamic LC contract amount, then the system applies the FIFO/LIFO rule when utilization is made against the Islamic LC contract. • LIFO – Islamic LC amount will be utilized in 'First In First Out' order when availment is triggered against the multiple amended Islamic LC contract. • FIFO – Islamic LC amount will be utilized in Last In First Out order when availment is triggered against the multiple amended Islamic LC contract. The system will calculate the commission accordingly The system applies FIFO / LIFO rule when it finds that multiple amendment has been made to an Islamic LC contract against which utilization has been completed.
Finance Details	Specify the finance details here. **Note** This is allowed only for Shipping Guarantee product.
Guarantee Details	Specify the details.
Claim Days	Specify the claim days for the bank guarantee and advice of guarantee.Collateral Funding by Finance Select this to indicate that the guarantee needs to be funded by a finance.
Claim Settlement by Finance	Select this to allow claim settlement by creating a finance in case of insufficient funds in customer account. **Note** This is applicable for Bank Guarantees.
Finance Bridge GL	Specify the bridge GL used for accounting between finance product and shipping/bank guarantee. The adjoining option list displays a list of all GLs. Choose the appropriate one.
Financing Product	Specify the finance product used for the creation of finance account. The adjoining option list displays a list of finance products. Choose the appropriate one.
Collateral Transfer Bridge	Specify the bridge GL used for collateral transfer from Islamic LC to shipping guarantee and shipping guarantee to Bill. The adjoining option list displays a list of all GLs. Choose the appropriate one.
Status	Specify the following status details:
Auto Status	Check this box to set automatic status control for the Islamic LC product. If you do not check this box, the system will not consider the Islamic LC contracts associated with this product for automatic status change. The status of this check box is defaulted to the field 'Auto Status Change' of every Islamic LC contract associated with this product. However, you can modify this at the contract level.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
Accrual	Specify the following accrual details.
Frequency	Specify the frequency of accrual for commission, charge or fees. The frequency can be one of the following: • Daily • Monthly • Quarterly • Half Yearly • Yearly In case of monthly, quarterly, half yearly or yearly accruals, you should specify the date on which the accruals have to be done during the month. For example, if you specify the date as '30', accruals will be carried out on the 30th of the month, depending on the frequency. If you fix the accrual date for the last working day of the month, you should specify the date as '31' and indicate the frequency. If you indicate the frequency as monthly, the accruals will be done at the end of every month -- that is, on 31st for months with 31 days, on 30th for months with 30 days and on 28th or 29th, as the case may be, for February. If you specify the frequency as quarterly and fix the accrual date as the last day of the month, then the accruals will be done on the last day of the month at the end of every quarter. It works in a similar fashion for half-yearly accrual frequency. If you set the accrual frequency as quarterly, half yearly or yearly, you have to specify the month in which the first accrual has to begin, besides the date.
Month	If you choose one of the following options for accrual frequency, specify the month in which the first accrual has to begin: • Quarterly • Half-Yearly • Yearly
Day	If you choose one of the following options for accrual frequency, specify the date on which the accruals have to be done during the month: • Monthly • Quarterly • Half-Yearly • Yearly
Confirmation	Check the 'Required' option to indicate that confirmation message is required for all Islamic LCs under this product.
Prepayment	Check the 'Allow Prepay' option to indicate that prepayment should be allowed for commissions that are marked as 'Arrears'.
Sanction Check	Specify the field.
Fee Claim SWIFT	Check this box to determine whether the Charge claim advice should be generated in SWIFT.
Product Restriction	Specify the fields.
Branch List	Indicate whether you want to create a list of allowed branches or disallowed branches by selecting one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-3 (Cont.) Preference Screen - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency Restriction	Indicate whether you want to create a list of allowed currencies or disallowed currencies by selecting one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed
Categories List	Indicate whether you want to create a list of allowed customers or disallowed customers by choosing one of the following options: • Allowed • Disallowed

- Specify Sanction Check Details

3.1.1 Specify Sanction Check Details

To process Sanction Check sub-screen, click Sanction Check in LI Product Preference screen.

The system displays the following in the screen.

- Product Code
- Product Description
- Event Code Description

Event Code

Specify the event code. Alternatively, you can select the event code from the option list. The list displays all valid options.

3.2 Generate Islamic LC Expiry/Closure Advices

This topic describes to generate Islamic LC Expiry/Closure Advices

While creating an Islamic LC product, you can indicate whether a closure/expiry advice should be generated for Islamic LCs involving the product. These advices are generated based on the preferences that you specify for them.

Check against the appropriate option on the screen to indicate your preference. If you indicated that a closure/expiry advice should be generated, you need to indicate:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Whether it is to be generated before or after closure/expiry
- The number of days before/after, expiry/closure when the advice should be generated

Table 3-4 Description

Term	Definition
Islamic LC Expiry Processing	The Islamic LC cannot be marked as 'Expired' if any commission or charge is outstanding for the Islamic LC. The system logs an exception if the same is encountered.
Islamic LC Closure Processing	Upon Closure of the Islamic LC, The system checks to see if there are any outstanding receivable components in the Islamic LC (Commission and Charges to be collected from Bills availed against the Islamic LC). The system displays configurable error messages indicating the same.
Rate Code	When defining the settlement details for a product, you can specify the rate type (under the Rate Code option) that should be used in case of cross-currency settlements. Your specification for the product will default to all contracts involving the product. However, you can change the rate type defined for the product to suit a contract entered under the product. The 'Rate Type' indicates the type of exchange rate that will be used. It can be the: • Mid rate maintained for the currency pair • Buy or Sell rate depending upon the nature of the transaction (whether debit or credit)

- Opting to Track Limits
- Setting Criteria for Status Change
  This topic provides systematic instruction to process setting criteria for status change.
- Specify Applicable Rules of a Guarantee
- Generate Advices for the Insurance Company
- Specify Event for Reissue of Guarantee
- Generate Advice for Faxing Islamic LC Confirmation to Counterparty

3.2.1 Opting to Track Limits

You can opt to track limits for all Islamic LCs processed under the product for which you are defining preferences. Choose the 'Limit Tracking Required' option to track limits for the Islamic LCs processed under the product.

Your specification here will default to all Islamic LCs processed under the product. You can modify the defaulted preference when processing an Islamic LC.

3.2.2 Setting Criteria for Status Change

This topic provides systematic instruction to process setting criteria for status change.

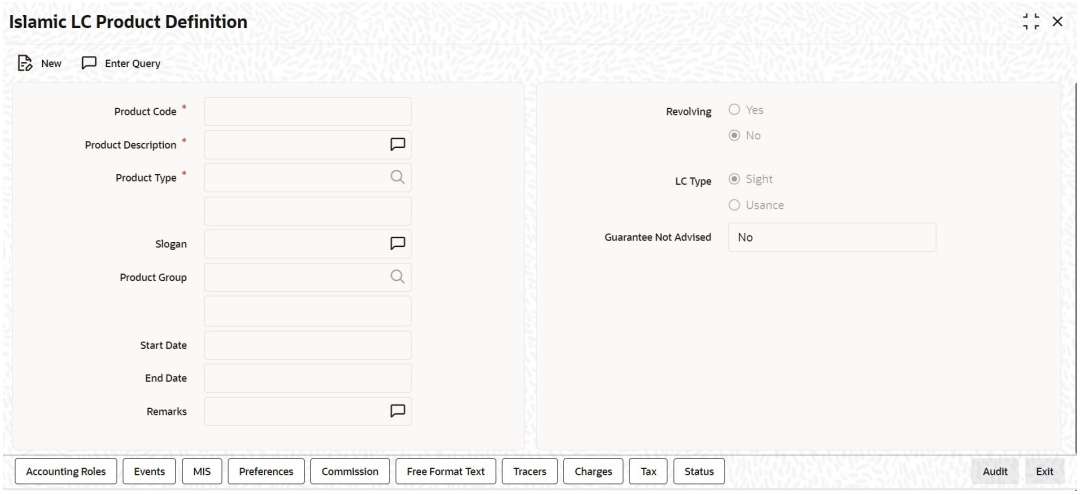
Specify **User Id** and **Password**, and login to Homescreen.

1. On Homescreen, navigate to **Islamic Letters of Credit Product Definition** screen.

   The **Islamic Letters of Credit Product Definition** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 3-3 Islamic Letters of Credit Product Definition



2. On **Letters of Credit Product - User Defined Status** page, specify the fields.

   For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 3-5 Letters of Credit Product - User Defined Status

Field	Description
Product Code	The system displays the code that identifies the product being maintained.
Product Description	The system displays a brief description of the product.
Status	Specify the status. The Islamic LC contract will be moved to the status that you define here. If more than one status are defined for a product, you need to indicate the sequence in which a contract moves from one status to another.
Sequence	The system displays the sequence number if you have defined more than one status for the product.
Transaction	Specify the transaction code to be used for the GL transfer entries involved in the status change. The option list displays all valid transactions that are applicable. Choose the appropriate one. A transaction code is associated with every accounting entry in Oracle Trade Fince. In case of status change, a component is transferred from one GL to another resulting in a new accounting entry. The system uses this transaction code to pass such entries.
Accrual	You can set certain preferences for accruals in the event of status change. These preferences are applicable to non periodic commission components that are collected in arrears. These are not applicable to components that are collected in advance.
Stop Accruals	Check this box to stop further accrual on components when the Islamic LC is moved to the status defined above. If you do not check this, the system will continue to accrue the components even after Islamic LC status change.
Reversal Accruals	Check this box to reverse the accrued outstanding amount when the Islamic LC is moved to the status defined above. If you do not check this box, the system will not reverse the accrued amount after Islamic LC status change.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-5 (Cont.) Letters of Credit Product - User Defined Status

Field	Description
Complete Accruals	Check this box to complete the accruals when the Islamic LC is moved to the status defined above. Further to completion of the accrual, the system proceeds with the status change. If you do not check this option, the system will not complete the accruals.
Automatic	Here, you can indicate whether the status change has to be carried out automatically.
Forward	Check this option to automatically move forward the status of the Islamic LC. If you do not check this option, the system will not facilitate automatic forward movement of the Islamic LC status. This is applicable only if Islamic LC automatic status processing is enabled.
Reverse	Check this option to automatically move the status in reverse. If you do not check this option, the system will not facilitate automatic reverse movement of Islamic LC status. This is applicable only if Islamic LC automatic status processing is enabled.
Derivation	You can use the following fields to define derivation rules:
Derivation Rule	If you have opted for automatic status change, specify the criteria (rules) based on which the system will perform the status change. An Islamic LC is said to be in a specific status if any one of the five conditions associated with the status holds true. If all the conditions are false, the Islamic LC will automatically move to the next available status for which the condition is true. You can define five conditions for each status. The conjunctions 'AND' and 'OR' can be used to create multiple conditions. Use those buttons appropriately between each condition.
Operators	Select the operator for building a condition for automatic status change. You can use multiple elements, in conjunction with the functions and arithmetic operators. The drop-down list displays the following operators: • + (add) • - (subtract) • * (multiply) • / (divide) Choose the appropriate one.
Logical Operators	Select the logical operator for building a condition for automatic status change. The system uses the logical operators in combination with the elements for creating derivation rules. The drop-down list displays the following logical operators: • > (greater than) • >= (greater than or equal to) • < (less than) • <= (less than or equal to) • = (equal to) • < > (not equal to) Choose the appropriate one.
Upward and Downward Movement	Specify the following details:
Accounting Role	Specify the role to be used for provisioning accounting entries for the Islamic LC contracts in the selected status. The option list displays all accounting roles pertaining to commission components. Choose the appropriate one.
Description	The system displays a brief description of the selected accounting role.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 3-5 (Cont.) Letters of Credit Product - User Defined Status

Field	Description
Accounting Head	Specify the account head (GL) to which the provisioning accounting entries should be passed, for the Islamic LC contracts in the selected status. The option list displays real as well as contingent general ledgers. Choose the appropriate one.
Description	The system displays a brief description of the selected accounting head. **Note** In case of prepayment of commission for arrears, if the status of the contingent set of GLs changes, the system does not move the prepaid commission. Accrual continues to take place from the real GLs until the prepaid commission is exhausted. Contingent accrual takes place once the prepaid commission is exhausted.

3.2.3 Specify Applicable Rules of a Guarantee

You need to indicate the rules applicable for the guarantee.

Indicate the rule applicable by selecting the appropriate value from the list of values. The available values are as follows:

- URDG: The guarantee is subjected to the ICC Uniform rules of Demand Guarantees
- URCG: The guarantee is subjected to the ICC Uniform rules of Contract Guarantees
- OTHR: The guarantee is subjected to another set of rules
- NONE: The guarantee is not subjected to any rules

Note

The above values are applicable only for Guarantee type of products.

The default value of Applicable Rule is set to NONE. This is applicable only for Guarantee type of products.

For Import and Export type of products, the following values are applicable:

- UCP LATEST VERSION
- EUCP LATEST VERSION
- UCPURR LATEST VERSION
- EUCPURR LATEST VERSION
- ISP LATEST VERSION
- OTHR: The guarantee is subjected to another set of rules

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> - If the guarantee is subjected to rules other than that provided in the list of values, the applicable rule must be indicated as ‘OTHR’
> - The default value of Applicable Rule is set to UCP LATEST VERSION. This is applicable only for Import/Export type of products
> - Based on the product type, the list of values will display rules applicable for the product.
> - Applicable Rule’ and ‘Rule Narrative’ will be enabled only for import, export and guarantee product types

Rule Narrative

This is enabled only if ‘Applicable Rule’ is set to ‘OTHR’. It is mandatory to specify the rule narrative if the applicable rule is ‘OTHR’.You need to describe the Applicable rule here. Oracle Trade Fince will validate the rule narrative for slashes.

> **Note**
>
> - ‘Rule Narrative’ should not start or end with ‘/’ or should not have two consecutive slashes
> - The above fields will be enabled only for a guarantee
> - The Applicable Rule and Rule Narrative cannot be amended after authorization

Partial Confirmation Allowed

Check this box to confirm the partial amount. The remaining amount can be confirmed after you receive the approval from the external agent.

> **Note**
>
> Partial confirmation is allowed only for Islamic export LC.

Applicable Rule For Reimbursement

Select applicable rule for which you need a reimbursement from the adjoining drop-down list. This list displays the following:

- URR Latest Version–Select if the applicable type is latest version of URR.
- NOTURR–Select if the applicable type is NOTURR.

3.2.4 Generate Advices for the Insurance Company

For generation of advice to an insurance company for the Islamic LC product, you need to associate the message type ‘Islamic LC_INSURANCEADV’ for the events BISS and AMND respectively. During authorization of these two events, the system will process the messages for all import Islamic LCs.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Refer to the ‘Product Definition’ User Manual under Modularity for details about events, accounting entries and advices.

All the messages are sent to the insurance company via mail. For this reason, you need to specify the insurance code (Receiver) and the mailing address of the Insurance Company in the Islamic LC Drafts screen.

Refer to the Annexure chapter to view an advice sample generated for the insurance company.

3.2.5 Specify Event for Reissue of Guarantee

You must associate the event REIS for an Islamic LC product for processing of reissue of guarantee. The system will display the REIS event during Events definition in the Product Maintenance.

Refer to Products user manual for detailed explanation of ‘The Product Event Accounting Entries and Advices Maintenance screen’.

3.2.6 Generate Advice for Faxing Islamic LC Confirmation to Counterparty

For generation of advice to the counterparty at the time of confirming an Islamic LC, you need to associate the message type ‘ILC_INSTR_COPY’ and ‘ILC_AM_INST_COPY’ for the events BISS and AMND respectively. During authorization of these two events, the system will process the messages for confirmed Islamic LCs.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4

Process an Islamic LC Contract

This chapter contains the following topics:

1. Introduction
2. Islamic LC Contract Details
3. Islamic LC Contract Details Screen Description
4. Cancel an Islamic LC
5. Close, Reopen, and Black list an Islamic LC
6. Reverse Islamic LC

- Introduction
- Islamic LC Contract Details
- Islamic LC Contract Details Screen Description
- Cancel an Islamic LC
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to Cancel an Islamic LC.
- Close, Reopen, and Black list an Islamic LC
- Reverse Islamic LC

4.1 Introduction

A Letter of Credit contract is an instruction wherein a customer requests the bank to issue, advice or confirm a letter of credit, for a trade transaction. An Islamic Letter of Credit (Islamic LC) substitutes a bank's name and credit for that of the parties involved. The bank thus undertakes to pay the seller/beneficiary even if the remitter fails to pay.

The sequence of the events involved, in processing the Islamic LC is considered as an Islamic LC contract. The specific letters of credit thus processed for the customers of your bank constitutes a contract.

An Islamic LC Contract would, therefore, require information on:

- Who is the buyer or importer?
- Who is the seller or the exporter?
- The operation that your branch is performing on the Islamic LC
- The merchandise traded under the Islamic LC
- Specifications for the transportation of the consignment
- The documents that should accompany the Islamic LC
- The amount for which the Islamic LC is drawn
- Details of the parties involved in the Islamic LC
- The type of Islamic LC you are processing
- The details of the insurance company under which the goods traded are covered

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

You have defined products to group together or categorize Islamic LC which share broad similarities. Under each Product that you have defined, enter specific Islamic LCs based on your customers' needs. Each of these will constitute a contract. While products provide a general framework and services to classify or categorize Islamic LCs, contracts are customer-specific.

By default, an Islamic LC inherits the attributes of the Product to which it is associated. This means that you will not have to define these general attributes each time you input an Islamic LC involving a product.

4.2 Islamic LC Contract Details

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Islamic LC Contract Details

- Islamic LC Contract Details Screen
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the Islamic LC Contract Details.

4.2.1 Islamic LC Contract Details Screen

This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the Islamic LC Contract Details.

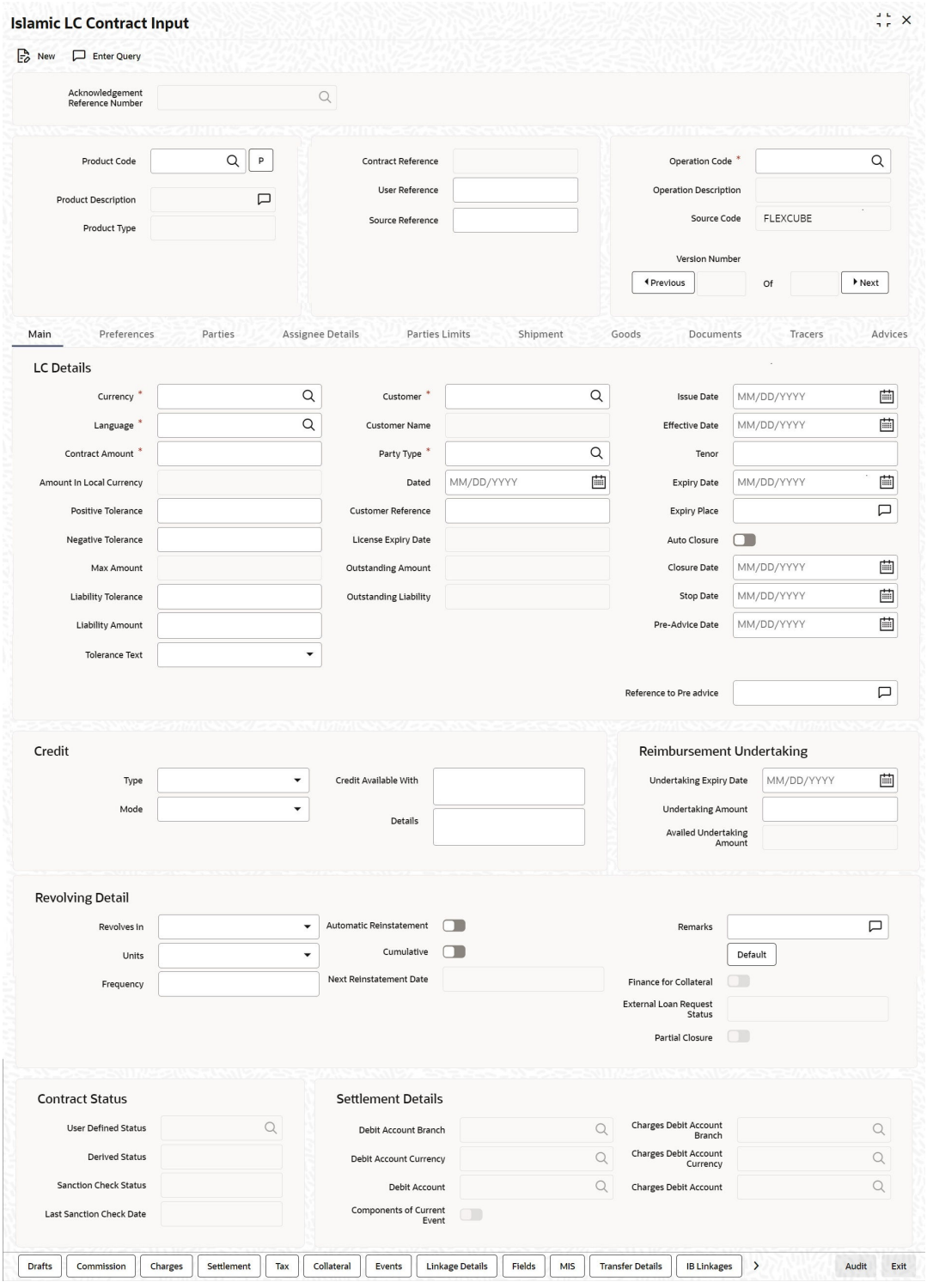
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDTRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-1 Islamic LC Contract Input



2. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-1 Islamic LC Contract Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Acknowledgment Reference Number	Specify the acknowledgment reference number. Alternatively, you can select the reference number from the option list. The list displays all the acknowledgment reference numbers and type of registration maintained at LC registration screen which are authorized and unprocessed. The system defaults the details captured in registration screen if acknowledgment is captured on clicking populate (P) beside Product Code. If Registration is for LC issuance and product code is selected BG Issue/SG issue, then the system displays configurable override on product default. **Note** System will update the status of registration as 'Processed' and contract reference no at registration screen, if acknowledgment reference number is captured at contract screen and (new) contract is created.
Product Code	This is a Mandatory Field Select the product from the list of products created in the Islamic LC. Click 'Populate' for details of this product to get defaulted from the Product screen.
Product Description	Product description given for this product gets defaulted from the Product screen.
Contract Reference Number	The contract reference number generation is based on the value of parameter REF_NUM_GEN_FORMAT in CSTB_PARAM level. If REF_NUM_GEN_FORMAT = 'O' (Old format), then contract reference number is a combinaion of the branch code(3 character), the product code(4 character), Julian date(5 digit) and a running serial number sequence(4 digit). If REF_NUM_GEN_FORMAT = 'N' (New Format), then contract reference number is a combination of the product code(4 character), Julian date(5 digit), and a running number sequence(7 digit). In both formats, the Contract reference number is of 16 Characters.
Product Type	The type of product gets displayed here from the product screen, specifying if the product is of type import/export or revolving or non-revolving.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-1 (Cont.) Islamic LC Contract Input - Field Description

Field	Description
User Reference	In addition, a contract is also identified by a unique User Reference Number. By default, the Contract Reference Number generated by the system is taken as the User Reference Number. But you have the option to change the User Ref Number. Oracle Banking Trade Finance also provides you the facility to generate the user reference number in a specific format. **Note** You can specify a format for the generation of the User Reference Number in the 'Sequence Generation' screen available in the Application Browser. Refer to the Core Services User Manual for details on maintaining a sequence format.
Fund ID	Select the fund id from the adjoining option list populated from FCUBS application. The fund information is fetched based on the below criteria. • Funds with OBTF Application date in between Fund Start and end dates. • Funds which belong to the global OBTF Branch.
Source Reference	The system automatically generates the Source Reference number. You can change it i required. This message identification number is used to identify an incoming message coming from an external system. This is defined as the ICN number. On upload of an incoming message into Oracle Banking Trade Finance, this number, given by the external system, is stored in Oracle Banking Trade Finance and passed on to the contract generated as a result of the incoming message. If the incoming message results in an outgoing message, the ICN number is linked to the outgoing message also. This number will help you in creating a relationship between the incoming message, the resultant contract in Oracle Banking Trade Finance, and the outgoing message, if any. If an Incoming message results in an outgoing contract (outgoing message), Oracle Banking Trade Finance will store the source reference number (ICN Number) at the following levels. • Incoming Message Level • Contract Level (Resulted due to the Incoming message) • Outgoing message (As a result of the above contract) You can capture the same source reference number for LC advising and reimbursement contracts if LC Issuance (MT700) and LC Reimbursement Authority (MT740) are received from the same issuing bank. **Note** The system will not allow to capture, the same source reference number for more than one advising or reimbursing contracts.

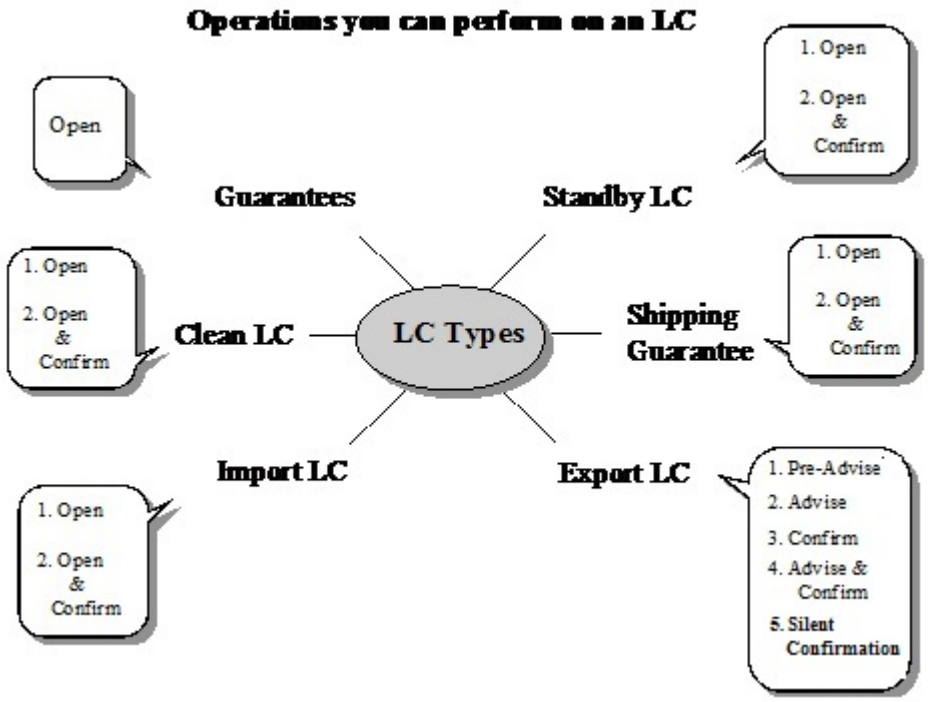
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-1 (Cont.) Islamic LC Contract Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Fund ID	Select the fund id from the adjoining option list. The system defaults the value of Default Mudarabah Fund as fund id.
Operation Code	The operations that you can perform on an Islamic LC are determined by the type of Islamic LC being processed. The operation that you specify will determine the accounting entries that are passed and the messages that is generated. You can select operation code from the list of valid operation code value based on Product Type. The type of operation that you can perform on an Islamic LC has been diagrammatically represented in the **Operation you can perform on an LC**.
Note If you are calling a contract that has already been created, click on Summary view. You can capture the Islamic LC Contract Summary screen details by typing LISTRONL in the field at the top right corner of the Application tool bar and clicking the adjoining arrow button or you can open an existing contract by double clicking the contract.	
Specify Details of an Islamic LC Through the screens that follow in this section, you can process all types of Islamic LCs (import, export, invoice, clean, guarantees, shipping guarantees). You can choose to enter the details of a contract using the following methods: • Copying the details from an existing contract and changing only the details that are different for the Islamic LC you are entering • Using your keyboard or the option lists that are available at the various fields to enter the details of the Islamic LC afresh To facilitate quick input, you only need to input the product code. Based on the product code, many of the fields is defaulted. Overwrite on these defaults to suit your requirement. You can add details that are specific to the Islamic LC like the Islamic LC amount, details of the buyer and the seller, etc.	
Upload Islamic LCs/Guarantees Oracle Banking Trade Finance allows you to a facility to automatically upload Islamic LCs and Guarantees. The MT 700 and MT 701 messages that you receive is uploaded into Oracle Banking Trade Finance as Islamic LC contracts. Depending on whether confirmation is required, the uploaded Islamic LCs is of type ‘advice’ or ‘advice and ‘confirm’. Similarly, you can upload MT 760 messages as Guarantee contracts and copy the details of the incoming guarantee from field 77c (and amend these details, if required). You only need to furnish minimal details such as the Currency, the Amount, the Parties, etc. Upload processing will also upload the document reference of Shipping Guarantee Contracts.	

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-2 Operation you can perform on an LC



4.3 Islamic LC Contract Details Screen Description

This topic contains the following subtopics:

- Description of the Islamic LC Contract Details Screen
- Specify the Main Details of an Islamic LC
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to specify the main details of an Islamic LC.
- Update Parties' Limits on Amendment of Islamic LC Contract
- Update Parties' Limits on Islamic LC Availments
- Specify the Media Details for a Party
- Specify Credit Administration Details
- Specify Shipping for an Islamic LC
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to Specify Shipping for an Islamic LC.
- Specify Advices for an Islamic LC
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to Specify Advices for an Islamic LC.
- Specify the Free Format Instructions that should accompany an Advice

4.3.1 Description of the Islamic LC Contract Details Screen

The Islamic LC Contract Details screen consists of a header and footer that contains fields specific to the contract being entered. Besides these, you will also notice six tabs and a horizontal array of icons along the lines of which you can enter details of the contract. Contract details are grouped into the various screens according to the similarities they share.

The Islamic LC Contract Screen contains six tabs along the lines of which you can enter details of the contract.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The six tabs are:

Table 4-2 Tab Details

Field	Description
Main	Click this tab to enter the essential terms of the Islamic LC. This screen along with its fields has been detailed under the head Entering Main Contract Details.
Preference	Click this tab to set the preferences
Parties	In the screen that corresponds to this tab, you can enter the details of all parties involved in the Islamic LC. This screen along with its fields has been detailed under the head Entering Party Details.
Parties Limit	Click this tab to capture parties limit details
Shipment	In the screen that corresponds to this tab you can enter details of the documents required under an Islamic LC and the clauses that should accompany the documents. Besides, you can also specify a description of the merchandise traded under the Islamic LC and shipping instructions for the transportation of the merchandise.
Goods	Click this tab to capture the goods details
Documents	Click this tab to capture the document details
Tracers	Click on this tab to enter details of the tracers that should be generated for an Islamic LC.
Advices	In the screen corresponding to this tab you can view, suppress and prioritize the advices that are to be generated for a contract. This screen along with its fields has been detailed under the head Specifying Advises for an Islamic LC.

On the Contract Detailed screen are also displayed a horizontal toolbar. The options on this toolbar enable you to process a number of functions vital to the processing of an Islamic LC contract. These options have been briefly described below.

Table 4-3 Additional Details

Field	Description
Drafts	Click Drafts to capture the details of draft drawn for the LC. You can specify the name of the insurance company that is covering the goods traded under the LC.
Commission	On invoking this Commission details of the contract are displayed
Charges	On invoking this function you is presented with a screen where the ICCF rate, amount, currency and the waive charge parameter is specified. The Processing Charges and Fees manual, details the procedure for maintaining charge rules. It also deals with the linking of a charge rules to a product and the application of the rule on an Islamic LC. The Processing Commissions manual, details the procedure for maintaining commission rules. It also deals with the linking of a commission rule to a product and the application of the rule on an Islamic LC.
Settlement	Based on the details that you enter in the settlement screens the Islamic LC is settled. The details of these screens have been discussed in the Settlements manual.
Tax	The Processing Tax manual details the procedure for maintaining tax rules and schemes. It also deals with the linking of a tax scheme to a product and the application of the scheme on an Islamic LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-3 (Cont.) Additional Details

Field	Description
Collateral	In the screen that corresponds to this icon, you can specify details of the cash that you collect as collateral form a customer for the Islamic LC that you process. The details of this screen are discussed under the head Specifying Collateral details for an Islamic LC.
Events	Select this option to view the details of the events and accounting entries that a contract involves.
Linkage Details	In this screen, you can link an Islamic LC to a deposit or account, and indicate the funds that you would like to block.
Fields	Click **Fields**, to view the user-defined fields linked to the product.
MIS	Click **MIS**, to define MIS details for the Islamic LC.
Transfer Details	If the LC is transferred to a new party then a transaction is populated here. You can only view the details. IB Linkages choose this option to specify IB linkages
Split Settlement	Specify split settlement details
Finance Preference	Click **Finance Preference** to view the 'Finance Preference Screen'. You can enter the details of the finance.
Brokerage	Use this option to capture brokerage details for the Islamic LC contract and set your preferences for sharing the brokerage amount among multiple brokers.
All Messages	View all messages associated to contract.
Documents	Capture the customer related documents in central content management repository.
Deferred Profit Component	View the components which are transferable to BC in Oracle Banking Trade Finance
Remarks	Choose this option to view 'History of Remarks' screen.
Change Log	Choose this option to view the changes made to a particular version of an Islamic LC contract.
Transferred Components	Choose this option to view the deferred components details screen.
Insurance	Choose this option to capture insurance details for the LC.
Common Message Group	Choose this option to view the common group message screen.

Enter valid inputs into all the mandatory fields or you will not be able to save the contract. After making the mandatory entries for the Islamic LC, save the contract by either clicking Save in the tool bar.
A contract that you have entered should be authorized by a user bearing a different Login ID, before the EOD is run

> **Note**
>
> You have the option to amend all the unauthorized entries made for an Islamic LC. However, after authorization, certain fields cannot be amended.

Click Exit to go back to the Application Browser.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-3 (Cont.) Additional Details

Field	Description
Hold Support during Islamic LC Issuance [LIDTRONL] Click HOLD to support a New operation during Islamic LC Issuance from LIDTRONL. The system is enhanced to support Hold during LC amendment. • User can unlock contracts put on HOLD, modify details if required and Save. In the existing functionality of amendment, Save would continue 'Deletion of Hold' and 'Hold of Hold' support. • 'Similar to Hold of New operation', the system will perform only mandatory validations. • Validations applicable during amendment, is processed. However, authorization is not supported for Contracts put on Hold.	

4.3.2 Specify the Main Details of an Islamic LC

This topic provides the systematic instruction to specify the main details of an Islamic LC.

While defining a product, you defined a broad outline that is applied on Islamic LCs. However, while processing an Islamic LC involving a product, you need to enter information specific to the Islamic LC.
This information is captured through the Islamic LC Contract Details Main screen.

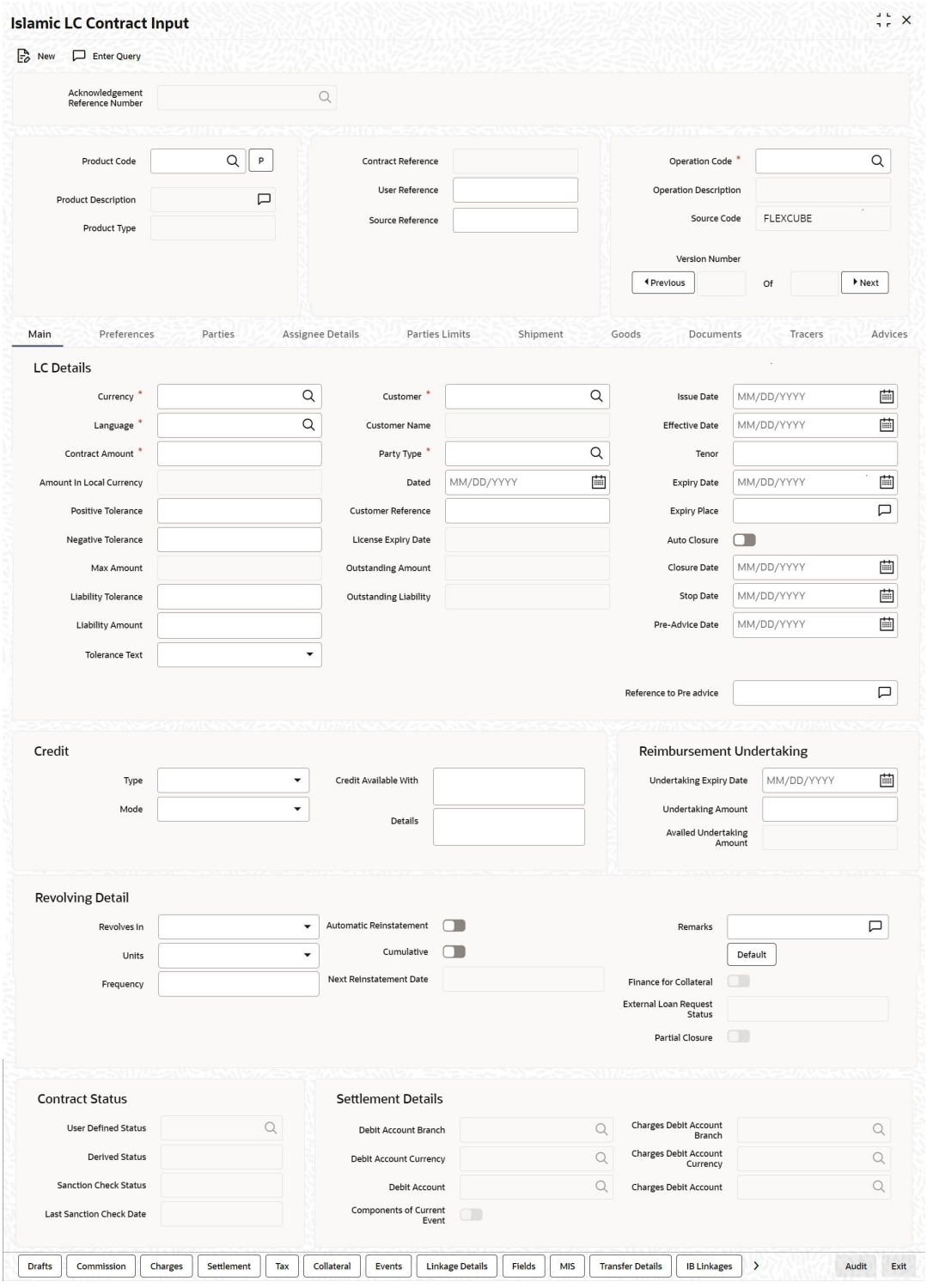
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDTRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic LC Contract Input - Main screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-3 Islamic LC Contract Input



2. On the **Main** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 Main - Field Description

Field	Description
LC Details	The terms defined for an Islamic LC form the basis on which the Islamic LC is processed.
Currency	Specify the currency in which the Islamic LC is drawn.
Contract Amount	Specify the amount for which the Islamic LC is drawn.
Amount in Local Currency	When FCY amount is given in 'Contract Amount' field for Islamic LC, system converts in local currency and respective value is displayed in this screen. This field is mandatory for FCY contracts.
Tolerance Text	Select the applicable tolerance text from the adjoining drop-down list. The available options are: • None • About • CIRCA • Approximately
Customer	If the applicant is a customer of your bank, specify the CIF ID assigned to the customer, the related details of the customer is automatically picked up. If you are processing an Export LC, you should typically specify details of the beneficiary. Specify the 'Customer' for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the 'Customer' from the List of Values Customer . Third Party Customer is also listed under list of values customer. **Note** BIC Code appears for a 'Customer' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that Customer Number. If the BIC code is not mapped with that Customer Number then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer' in the adjoining list.
Customer Name	The system displays the customer name.
Party Type	Specify a valid party type. The adjoining option list displays all valid party types maintained in the system. You can select the appropriate one.
Dated	Enter the date of the Their Reference. This would normally be the date on which you have a correspondence from the party regarding the LC.
Customer Reference	This is the reference of the party whose CIF ID you have input. This is picked up appropriately in the correspondence sent for the LC.
License Expiry Date	The system displays the license expiry date.
Amount	The system displays the amount for which the Islamic LC is drawn.
Expiry Place	Specify the city, country, or the bank where the Islamic LC expires.
Applicable Rule	This is defaulted from the product level. The value displayed here cannot be amended.
Issue Date	Enter the date on which the Islamic LC is issued.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 (Cont.) Main - Field Description

Field	Description
Effective Date	In the Islamic LC Contract Details screen, you can capture the Effective Date of a guarantee. The effective date that you capture for a guarantee is printed on the instrument. By default, the system displays the Issue Date, in the Effective Date field. You can change the default value (for a guarantee) to a date in the past or future. As stated earlier, the Effective Date along with the Tenor of the Islamic LC is used to calculate the Expiry Date of the Islamic LC. **Note** Please note that commission for a guarantee, is calculated according to your specifications for the product that the guarantee involves. In the Islamic LC Product Definition screen, you can indicate if commission is to be calculated from: The Issue Date The Effective Date The earlier of the two
Tenor	All Islamic LC contracts is associated with the standard tenor maintained for the product under which the contract is being processed. The tenor of the Islamic LC is used in combination with the Effective Date to arrive at the Expiry Date of the Islamic LC, as follows: Islamic LC Expiry Date = Effective Date + Tenor However, for a specific Islamic LC contract, you can choose to maintain a different tenor. The tenor of an Islamic LC is expressed in one of the following units: • Days (D) • Months (M) • Years (Y) **Note** If you do not specify a unit, the system will automatically append 'D' with the numeric value (tenor) indicating that the tenor is expressed in Days. Depending on the tenor that you specify, the system will recalculate the Expiry Date. Consequently, the Closure Date that is dependent on the Expiry Date will also be recalculated by the system.
Expiry Date	Specify the date when the Islamic LC expires.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 (Cont.) Main - Field Description

Field	Description
Auto Closure	Check this option to indicate that the Islamic LC should be automatically closed. **Note** This field is not applicable for Islamic LC Module Contracts under Islamic LC Product with Product Type `G' (Guarantee).
Closure Date	The date of closure is based on the 'Closure Days' maintained for the product involved in the Islamic LC. The number of days specified as the Closure Days is calculated from the expiry date of the Islamic LC, to arrive at the Closure Date. Islamic LC Closure Date = Islamic LC Expiry Date + Closure Days However, you can change the closure date, thus calculated, to any date after the expiry date. **Note** If the closure date falls on a holiday, the system will prompt you with an override message.
Pre Advice Date	Specify date on which the pre-advice was initiated from the adjoining calendar. The current date is defaulted as pre-advice date, if the operation is Pre-advice Islamic LC; however you can change to an earlier date. **Note** Modifications are not allowed after first authorization.
Reference to Pre-advice	Specify reference to the pre-advice, if any, generated for the Islamic LC contract. A pre-advice is a brief advice of documentary credit sent by the Issuing Bank to the Advising Bank. This is to be followed by the Islamic LC instrument that contains all the details of the Islamic LC. It notifies the recipient that the named buyer has opened an Islamic LC for a specified amount on a named seller (beneficiary). **Note** Modifications are not allowed after first authorization.
Stop Date	This date is defaulted to Islamic LC Expiry date. Stop date cannot be earlier than Issue date and later than expiry date.
Credit	You can capture the following details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 (Cont.) Main - Field Description

Field	Description
Type	Indicate the type of credit for which the Islamic LC is being processed.
Mode	Indicate the mode of payment through which the LC is settled. If you indicate the Islamic LC type as sight in the LC Product Definition screen, then you can select the credit mode as: • Sight Payment • Negotiation. If you indicate the Islamic LC type as Usance in the LC Product Definition screen, then you can choose the credit mode as: • Acceptance • Deferred Payment • Mixed Payment • Negotiation These validations are applicable only if drafts information is maintained in the Drafts subsystem. These validations are applicable for both Import and Export LC products.
Credit Available With	Specify details of the party with whom the credit is available.
Credit Available With	Specify the details of the credit.
Reimbursement Undertaking You can capture the following details:	
Undertaking Expiry Date	Specify the undertaking expiry date. You can claim the reimbursement only till the undertaking expiry date, else, the system will display the following error message “The undertaking has been expired”.
Undertaking Amount	Specify the amount that is reimbursed. It is less than or equal to contract amount. The system will default the Undertaking Amount value with the Max LC Amount initially when it is created through the incoming MT740. However you can amend this field by adding the undertaking amount.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 (Cont.) Main - Field Description

Field	Description
Availed Undertaking Amount	The system displays the availed portion of undertaken amount. **Note** Undertaking Expiry Date and Undertaking Amount fields is entered for reimbursement contracts only. Undertaking Expiry date is entered only when Undertaking Amount has been specified. Undertaking Expiry date cannot be earlier than the issue date or later than the Islamic LC Expiry date. In case when Islamic LC Expiry date is not input then Undertaking Expiry date cannot be greater than the Islamic LC closure date.Revolving Details
Revolves In	Islamic LCs can revolve in Time or in Value. Select the appropriate option from the adjoining drop-down list.
Automatic Reinstatement	The mode of reinstatement for a revolving Islamic LC is either automatic or manual. Check against this field to indicate that the mode of reinstatement is automatic. This field is applicable only for an Islamic LC revolving in time.
Cumulative	Check this box to indicate that the Islamic LC is cumulative. Leave it unchecked to indicate otherwise.
Units	For Islamic LCs, which revolve in time, the maximum number of reinstatements is calculated based on the Reinstatement Frequency you specify. In the Units field, you can choose one of the following: • Months • Days
Next Reinstatement Date	The system computes and displays the date of next reinstatement based on the value in ‘Units’ field.
Remarks	You can specify remarks here if any.
Finance for Collateral	Check this box if finance for collateral is applicable.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 (Cont.) Main - Field Description

Field	Description
Partial Closure	Check this box to perform partial closure of Islamic LC manually. You can check this box during the following conditions: • Unlock' Operation • If the product is not of Revolving type • On or before the Expiry date of the Islamic LC On saving the amendment after checking this option, PCLS event takes place. The Limits, Outstanding Liability and the Cash Collateral are released to the extent of unutilized amount. Once PCLS event is fired for an Islamic LC contract, system does not allow any operation on the Islamic LC other than LC Closure (CLOS). You can reopen the closed Islamic LC as existing. While reopening the Islamic LCs for which PCLS is fired earlier, the Limits are tracked, OS Liability and Cash collateral is increased to the extent of the amount released as part of PCLS. After PCLS event takes place on the Islamic LC contract, if the Bill contract to which the Islamic LC is linked is reversed, the corresponding availment of Islamic LC is reversed and the Limits, OS Liability and the Cash Collaterals are updated. The linkages to the Islamic LC are not released automatically as part of PCLS firing during batch. You have to manually release as part of manual partial closure. The above processes are skipped for the Islamic LC contracts under the product for which the 'Revolving' option is indicated as 'Yes'. The system allows manual partial closure during the partial closure days, until the Islamic LC is closed. In case of a partially confirmed export Islamic LC contract, the system excludes the bill amount in the initial stage from the confirmed and unconfirmed portions.
User Defined Status	Specify the status of the Islamic LC contract. The option list displays all valid statuses that are applicable. Choose the appropriate one.
Derived Status	The system displays the derived status of the Islamic LC contract. You cannot modify this.
Sanction Check Status	The system displays the sanction check status once the sanction check is performed. The system displays any of the following statuses: • P - Pending • X - Pending • A - Approved • R - Rejected • N - Not Required
Last Sanction Check Date	The system displays the last sanction check date. **Note** For more information on processing sanction check refer 'Processing Sanction Check' section in LC user manual. – Settlement Details
Debit Account Branch	The system defaults the details of debit account branch. The values is modified.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-4 (Cont.) Main - Field Description

Field	Description
Debit Account Currency	The system defaults the details of debit account currency. The values is modified.
Debit Account	The system defaults the debit account. The values is modified.
Charges Debit Account Branch	The system defaults the details of charges debit account branch.The values is modified.
Charges Debit Account Currency	The system defaults the details of charges debit account currency. The values is modified.
Charges Debit Account	The system defaults the details of charges debit account. The values is modified.
Components of Current Event	System enhanced to show the amount tags pertaining to the current event in settlement screen for LI contracts. • During settlement pickup of LI contract input screen, current value of components of current event on contract input screen is considered to show the amount tags in 'Settlements' screen. • If the flag is checked at contract input screen, the amount tags pertaining only to the current event will be available in settlement screen with 'Current event' checked. • If the flag at contract input screen is unchecked, the amount tags of all the events will be available in 'Settlements' screen with current event flag checked for those amount tags of current event and unchecked for those amount tags not pertaining to current event.This field is optional. By default the field will be unchecked.
Viewing the Media Addresses of a Customer While capturing the details of the counterparty involved in an Islamic LC or Islamic LC transfer contract, the system displays the Media Address details of the customer once you specify the CIF ID assigned to the party. **Note** When you specify the CIF ID, the system will check to see if you have maintained multiple media addresses for the specific customer. If you have maintained multiple media addresses, a list of all the media addresses is displayed in a separate window.	
Viewing the BIC Details of a Customer If the media type of the party is SWIFT, and the customer address you have specified is a BIC customer, the system automatically displays the related BIC details in a separate window.	

3. On the **Preferences** tab, specify the details as required.

   The details that you specify in the fields of this screen are picked up for SWIFT messages. The SWIFT message that utilizes the information that you specify in this screen and the corresponding field of the SWIFT message which carries the input, has been listed in:

   The **Islamic LC Contract Input - Preferences** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-4 Islamic LC Contract Input - Preferences

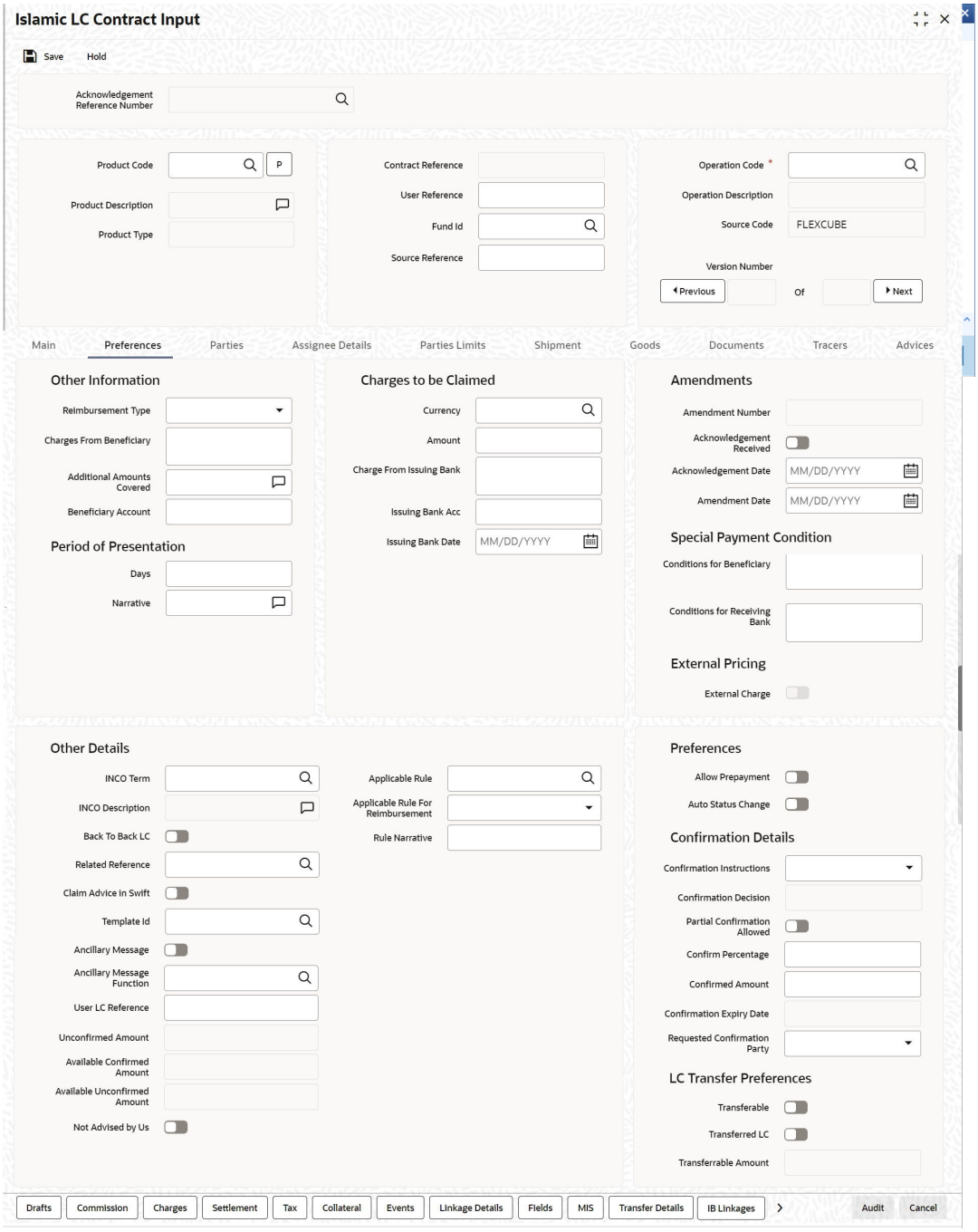


Table 4-5 SWIFT Messages

Field in Oracle Banking Trade Finance	SWIFT Message	Field of the SWIFT message
Charges From Beneficiary	MT700	Field 71B
Additional Amounts Covered	MT 700 & MT 740	Field 39C
Period For Presentation	MT 700	Field 48
Charges From Issuing Bank	MT 730	Field 71B

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-5 (Cont.) SWIFT Messages

Field in Oracle Banking Trade Finance	SWIFT Message	Field of the SWIFT message
Account For Issuing Bank	MT 730	Field 57A
Date	MT 730	Field 32D

For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 4-6 Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Other Information	Capture the following details:
Reimbursement Type	Specify the type of reimbursement. Choose the appropriate one from the drop-down list.
Fee From Beneficiary	The system displays the issuance fee from beneficiary.
Additional Amounts Covered	Specify the additional amount covered.
Beneficiary Account	Specify the account details of beneficiary. This field is read only.
Fee to be Claimed	Specify the following details:
Currency	Specify the currency of the charge.
Amount	Specify the charge amount.
Fee From Issuing Bank	Give a brief description of the fee.
Issuing Bank Acc	Specify the account from which charge should be collected.
Issuing Bank Date	Specify the date of charge collection.
Amendments	Specify the following details:
Amendment Number	The system displays the amendment number.
Acknowledgement Received	Check this box to indicate that the acknowledgment has received.
Acknowledgement Date	Specify the date on which the acknowledgment is received.
Amendment Date	The date of amendment is displayed here.
Period for Presentation	The period of presentation defined for the product - or calculated for the Islamic LC, as the case can/- is displayed in the ‘Period For Presentation’ field. You can change the default to suit the Islamic LC you are processing. The system uses the Expiry Date and the Last Shipment Date specified for the Islamic LC you are processing, and arrives at the period of presentation. For details, refer the heading ‘Specifying the Period of Presentation’ in chapter three, ‘Creating Products’, in the Islamic LC user Manual.
Narrative	Specify the details of date of document submission.
Conditions For Beneficiary	Specify the payment conditions for beneficiary.
Conditions for Receiving Bank	Specify the payment conditions for receiving bank.
Other Details	Specify the following details:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-6 (Cont.) Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
INCO Term	Specify the INCO term related to goods that are a part of the LC instrument. You can select one of the following values from the adjoining option list: • EXW - EX Works (…named place) • FCA - Free Carrier (…named place) • FAS - Free Alongside Ship (…named port of shipment) • FOB - Free On-Board (…named port of shipment) • CFR - Cost and Freight (…named port of destination) • CIF - Cost Insurance Freight (…named port of destination) • CPT - Carriage Paid to (…named place of destination) • CIP - Cost Insurance Paid (…named place of destination) • DAF - Delivered at Frontier (…named place) • DES - Deliver Ex Ship (…named port of destination) • DEQ - Delivered Ex Quay (…named port of destination) • DDU - Delivered Duty Unpaid (…named place of destination) • DDP - Delivered Duty Paid (…named place) DPU- Delivered at Place Unloaded
INCO Description	Once you choose the INCO Term, the documents and clause details will be displayed based on the maintenance for the chosen INCO term in the 'INCO Terms Maintenance' screen. However, if you change the INCO term, the document and clause details will be not be updated automatically. You will have to manually change them if required. However, the system will check whether the document and clauses details are the same as those defined in the 'INCO Term Maintenance' screen. The INCO term is picked up and displayed in field 45A of MT700.
Back to Back LC	Check this option if you want to link an export LC to an import LC. This field is applicable only for import LCs. If you check this option, you will have to specify the export LC which you want to link to the import LC in the 'Reference Number' field. All active and authorized export LCs of the same counterparty will be available for selection in the option list adjoining 'Reference Number'. An export LC can be linked to only one import LC.
Related Reference Number	Specify the related reference number. Choose the appropriate one from the option list. While issuing a guarantee, the option list displays all valid bill of lading reference numbers and import LCs. Similarly, while issuing a back to back LC, the option list displays all valid export LCs maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one.
Claim Advice in Swift	Check this box to generate the charge claim advice in MT799 SWIFT format. This field is initially defaulted from product level. However, you can then check or uncheck it at the contract level.
Template ID	Specify the template ID related to MT799 message types from the option list. **Note** You can enter the values only if the 'Claim Advice in Swift' field is checked.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-6 (Cont.) Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Ancillary Message	Check this box to generate MT 759 on contract authorization.
Ancillary Message Function	Specify the ancillary message function. Alternatively, you can select the ancillary message from the option list. The list displays all valid options maintained in the system. Ancillary Message Function is mandatory if 'Ancillary Message' is checked.
External Pricing	Specify the external pricing details:
External Charge	While booking a contract under a product for which 'External Charges' is enabled at product level, it defaults the same value for contract also which fetches external charges from external pricing and billing engine.
User LC Reference	System displays the Contract User Reference as the User LC Reference Number. The reimbursement Islamic LC, under which the bill is availed, and the Export Islamic LC linked to the bill, should contain the same 'User LC Reference Number'.
Unconfirmed Amount	The system displays the current maximum unconfirmed Islamic LC amount. This amount is derived by deducting the confirmed amount from the maximum Islamic LC amount.
Available Confirmed Amount	The system displays the available confirmed portion of the maximum Islamic LC amount.
Available Unconfirmed Amount	The system displays the available unconfirmed portion of the maximum Islamic LC amount.
Beneficiary Confirmation Required	The system checks this box by default for Letters of Credit. This box is unchecked for 'Guarantees'. You can operationally control the beneficiary confirmation process for an Islamic LC, but you cannot modify it after the first authorization.
Confirmation Instructions	You can also specify the type of the confirmation instruction that should be sent to the advising/confirming bank if you are issuing the Islamic LC (whether Field 49 of MT 700 should be 'Without', 'Confirm', or 'May add').
Confirmation Decision	Confirmation decision will be display only field, which will be defaulted with the value as, • Confirm - When the 'Operation' of LC is 'CNF' and 'ANC' • Silent Confirmation – When the operation of LC is SCF • Blank – When the operation of LC is other than CNF, ANC and SCF.
Auto Status Change	The system defaults the status of the check-box based on the product maintenance. However, you can modify this. If you check this box, the system picks up the contract during EOD operations for status processing. If you do not check this, the system will not consider the Islamic LC contract for automatic status processing.
Partial Confirmation Allowed	Check this box to confirm the partial amount. The remaining amount is confirmed after you receive the approval from the external agent. This field is initially defaulted from product level. However, you can then check or uncheck it at the contract level.
Confirm Percentage	Specify the percentage of Islamic LC Amount to be confirmed or silent confirmed. If percentage is not specified, the system will calculate the percentage based on the confirm Amount specified. Confirmation percentage will be defaulted to 100% during silent confirmation change of operation.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-6 (Cont.) Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Confirmed Amount	Specify the amount to be confirmed or silent confirmed. If Confirm Amount is not specified, the system will calculate the confirmed amount based on the Confirm Percentage specified. During silent confirmation change of operation, confirm percentage and confirmed amount will be defaulted to 100% and LC oustanding amount respectively.
Requested Confirmation Party	Select the confirmation party type. You can select one of the following messages: • Advising Bank • Advise Through Bank • Confirming Bank
LC Transfer Preferences	You can set the following Preferences
Transferable	Check this option to indicate that the LC is transferable.
Transferred LC	Check this option for indicating the given LC is transferred LC.
Transferable Amount	This field displays the transferrable amount calculated using the LC amount.
Assignee Details	Assignee can be walk-in customers, Bank customersand Third Party customers and Other Party Customers.. For Third Party Customers, user must maintain those parties in Third Party screen (TFDTPMNT) first. It will be possible to maintain assignee details in export type of letter of credit contract. Assignee can be added/modified/deleted in LC during internal amendment if Bill is not booked under LC with assignee details else system will provide appropriate error message. You can set the following assignee details:
Sequence	Sequence in which the assignee details are maintained. Value for this should be greater than or equal to zero. Sequence will not accept any decimal points. This should be unique. This field is mandatory.
Assignee Id	To maintain the party ID. This will fetch all the parties maintained in Other Party screen. It will not be possible to maintain the same assignee multiple times. This field is mandatory.
Assignee Name	Assignee name will be displayed based on the Assignee Id. Assignee name can be modified only Walk-in Customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 1	Address Line 1 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 1 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 2	Address Line 2 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 2 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 3	Address Line 3 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 3 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 4	Address Line 4 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 4 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Account Currency	Specify the currency of the account of the assignee. This field is mandatory.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-6 (Cont.) Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Account	Specify the account to which the amount should be credited. This can be the account of the assignee with the bank if he is a customer of the bank. If he is not the customer of the bank then this can be the Nostro account of his bank maintained in the current bank. If Assignee is a bank customer (Individual/Corporate/Bank customer) then Account LOV will provide customer accounts maintained in External Customer Account for the selected bank customer. If Assignee is a Third party or Walk in customer then Account LOV will display NOSTRO accounts for the currency. This field is mandatory.
Assigned Percentage	Specify the percentage of assignment to the assignee. Sum of assignee percentage should not exceed 100 percent.Either Assigned Percentage or Assigned Amount should be entered. If assigned percentage is provided and assigned amount is not provided, system will compute assigned amount based on assigned percent of contract amount.If assigned amount is provided and assigned percentage is not provided, system will compute assigned percentage based on assigned amount. If both assigned percentage and assigned amount is provided, system will compute assigned amount based on assigned percentage If both assigned percentage and assignment amount is not provided, system will provide error message.
Assigned Amount	Specify the amount of assignment to the assignee in LC currency. This should be greater than zero. Decimal points will be based on the LC currency. If assignment details are maintained for any product type other than export type, system will throw an error message. It will be possible to amend these values. If the amendment amount is reduced, there will be a validation to check whether it goes below from that used already in BC contract. If yes, system will throw an error. Also if the assignment details are already used in any BC contract, system will not allow to add or delete new assignees or amend party details such as Assignee Id, Account etc. Assignment details can be added through excel upload.

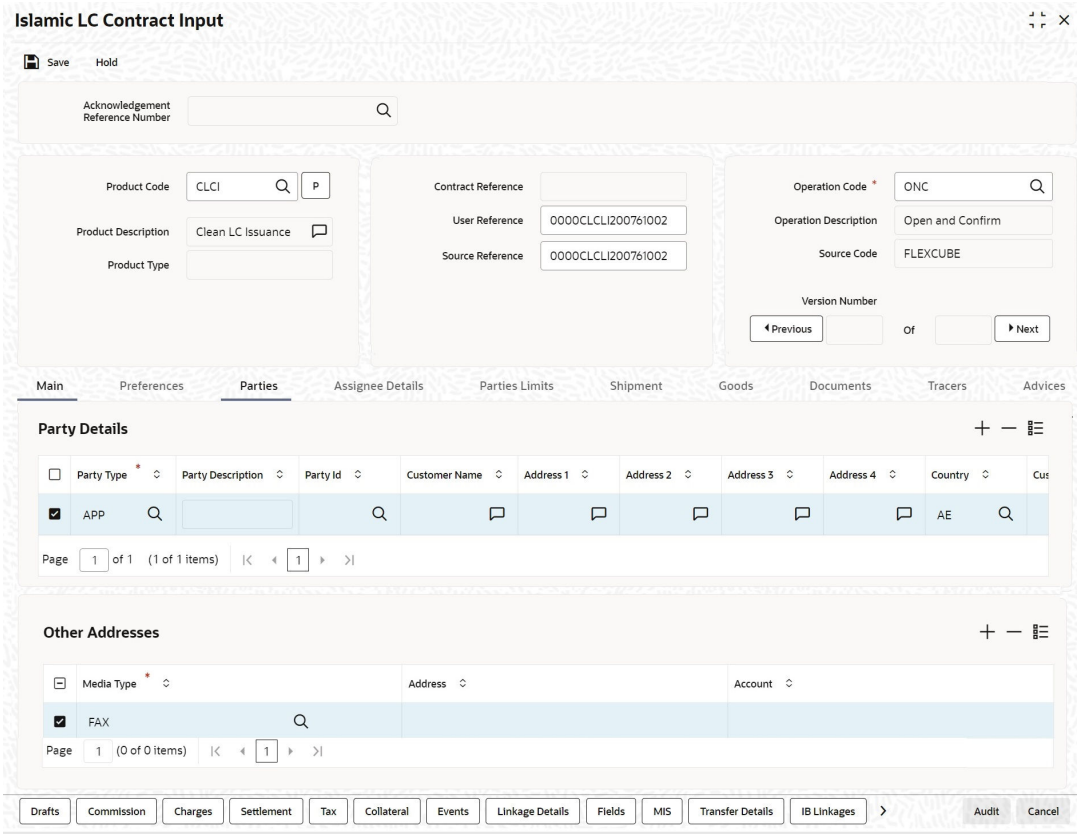
4. On **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Parties**.

   The Parties screen is used to record the details related to all the parties involved in the Islamic LC. The documents, tracers and messages that are generated is sent to the parties concerned, based on the details you specify in this screen.

   The **Party Details** is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-5 Islamic LC Contract Input - Parties



5. On the **Parties** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 4-7 Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Party Type	The party type (beneficiary, accountee, applicant, advising bank, issuing bank, reimbursing bank, advice through bank, confirming bank).
Party Description	You can provide the description for the party type here.
Party ID	Specify a 'Party ID' for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the 'Customer No' from the List of Values Party Id. Third Party Customer details is also listed under List of Values Party Id. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC code is mapped with that customer number.If the BIC Code is not mapped with that Customer Number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining option list.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-7 (Cont.) Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer Identification File Identification	The CIF ID assigned to the party, if the party is defined as a customer in Oracle Banking Trade Finance. If the applicant (APP) or beneficiary (BEN) is not a customer of your bank, you can use a walk in customer ID.
Name	Enter the name of the Customer. The party name is 150 characters in length. However, please note that in the SWIFT messages that you generate only 35 characters is included.
Country	Enter the country to which the party belongs.
Address 1 to 4	Enter the address of the customer who has initiated the transaction.
Dated	Specify the date of transaction initiation.
Language	Specify the language in which advices should be sent to the customer.
Issuer	The issuer of Islamic LC is a bank or an individual. This is enabled only for the party type ISB (issuing Bank). The party type is defaulted from CIF maintenance. However, you can amend the value before authorizing the contract. If issuer of Islamic LC is a bank, tags 52A and 52D is populated. The message Types supported by these tags are MT710/MT720. If issuer of Islamic LC is not a bank, 52B tag is populated.
Template ID	Specify the template ID related to MT799 message types from the option list. **Note** You can enter the values only if the 'Claim Advice in Swift' field is checked.
Specifying the Other Addresses	Following details are displayed here: • The media type through which the advises should be routed and the respective address(es) • The party's mail address • The account The parties involved in an Islamic LC depend upon the type of Islamic LC you are processing. The following table indicates the minimum number of parties required for the types of Islamic LC that you can process, refer to **Islamic LC Processes**
Opting to amend Party Details during System Setup	Oracle Banking Trade Finance offers you the facility to edit the party details that you capture in the Islamic LC Contract Online screen. You may exercise this option when setting-up the system at your bank If you opt for the edit facility, you can change the following party and credit details, captured for an Islamic LC, in the Islamic LC Contract Details screen: • The Name • The Mailing Address • The Credit Details Click on the adjoining, adjacent to the name, address and credit details fields, to view a popup window. In this screen, you can edit the party and credit details originally captured for the Islamic LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-7 (Cont.) Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Media Type	The system defaults the media type. You can select a different medium from the adjoining option list.
Address	The system defaults the other address of the party. However, you can modify this.
Account	The system defaults the account number. However, you can modify this.

Table 4-8 Islamic LC Process

Islamic LC type	Parties applicable	Mandatory parties	Parties not allowed
Import Islamic LC	Applicant/Accountee Advising Bank Beneficiary Confirming Bank Reimbursing Bank	Applicant and Beneficiary OR Accountee and Beneficiary	Issuing Bank
Export Islamic LC	Applicant/Accountee Issuing Bank Advising Bank Beneficiary Confirming Bank Reimbursing Bank	Beneficiary and Issuing Bank	Advising Bank
Shipping Guarantee	Applicant/Accountee Advising Bank Beneficiary Confirming Bank Advice Through Bank Reimbursing Bank	Applicant and Beneficiary	Issuing Bank
Guarantee	Applicant and Beneficiary	Applicant and Beneficiary	Advising Bank Advise Through Bank Reimbursement Bank Issuing Bank
Standby	Applicant/Accountee Advising bank Beneficiary Confirming bank Reimbursing bank	Applicant and Beneficiary	Issuing Bank
Clean Islamic LC	Applicant/Accountee Advising bank Beneficiary Confirming bank (for confirmed Islamic LCs only; could be more than one bank)	Applicant and Beneficiary OR Accountee And Beneficiary	Issuing Bank

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-8 (Cont.) Islamic LC Process

Islamic LC type	Parties applicable	Mandatory parties	Parties not allowed

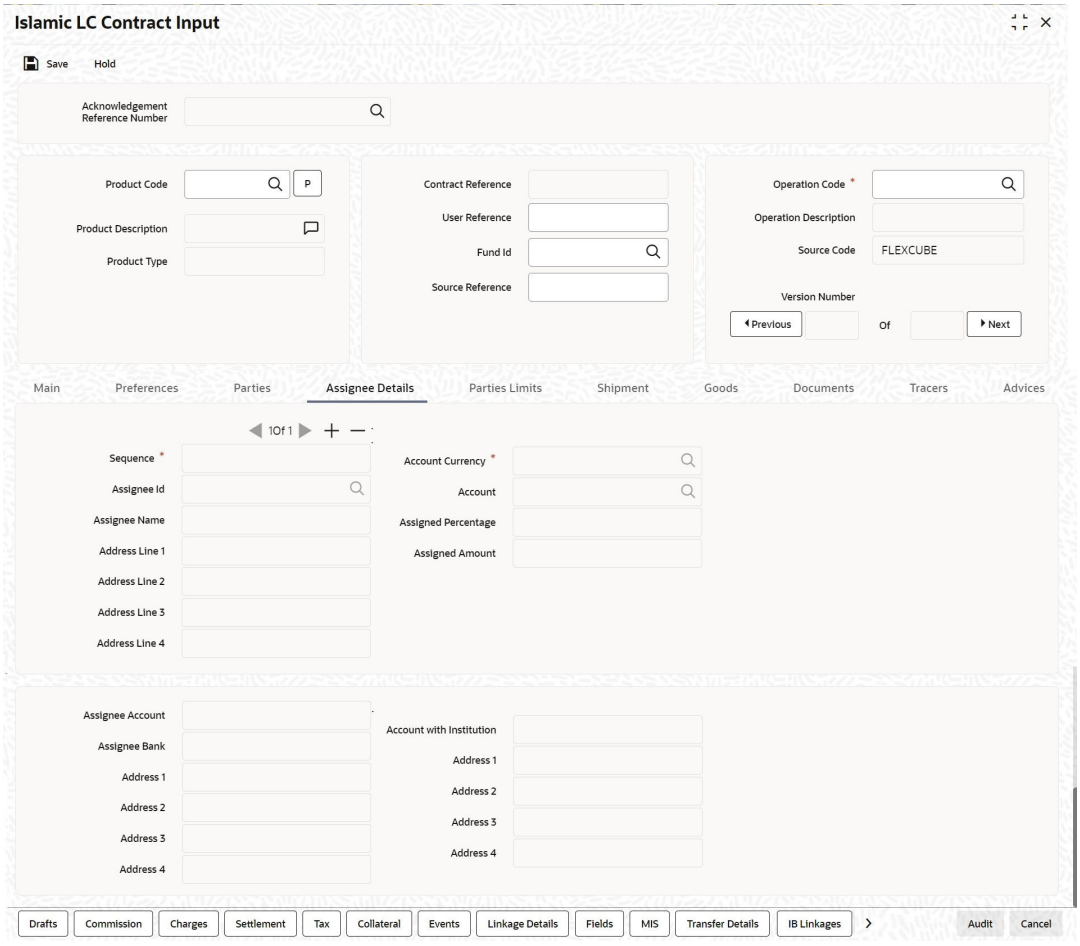
Note

While processing Islamic LCs and guarantees, you can use the walk-in customer ID for the applicant (APP) and Beneficiary (BEN) party types. However, note that you can use a particular CIF ID only once in an Islamic LC.

6. On the **Islamic LC Contract Details** screen, click **Assignee Details**.

Islamic LC Contract Details - Assignee Details screen is displayed.

Figure 4-6 Islamic LC Contract Details - Assignee Details



7. On **Islamic LC Contract Details - Assignee Details** screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-9 Assignee Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Assignee Details	Assignee can be walk-in customers, Bank customers and Third Party customers and Other Party Customers.. For Third Party Customers, user must maintain those parties in Third Party screen (TFDTPMNT) first. It will be possible to maintain assignee details in export type of letter of credit contract. Assignee can be added/modified/deleted in LC during internal amendment if Bill is not booked under LC with assignee details else system will provide appropriate error message. You can set the following assignee details:
Sequence	Sequence in which the assignee details are maintained. Value for this should be greater than or equal to zero. Sequence will not accept any decimal points. This should be unique. This field is mandatory.
Assignee Id	To maintain the party ID. This will fetch all the parties maintained in Third party maintenance screen and walkin customer along with Bank customer. It will not be possible to maintain the same assignee multiple times other than walkin customer. This field is mandatory.
Assignee Name	Assignee name will be displayed based on the Assignee Id. Assignee name can be modified only Walk-in Customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 1	Address Line 1 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 1 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 2	Address Line 2 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 2 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 3	Address Line 3 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 3 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Assignee Address Line 4	Address Line 4 will be displayed based on the Assignee ID.Address Line 4 can be modified only for Walk in customer. This field is optional.
Account Currency	Specify the currency of the account of the assignee. This field is optional.
Account	Specify the account to which the amount should be credited. This can be the account of the assignee with the bank if he is a customer of the bank. If he is not the customer of the bank then this can be the Nostro account of his bank maintained in the current bank. If Assignee is a bank customer (Individual/Corporate/Bank customer) then Account LOV will provide customer accounts maintained in External Customer Account for the selected bank customer. If Assignee is a Third party or Walk in customer then Account LOV will display the NOSTRO accounts for the currency. If Assignee id is not provided then Account LOV will provide customer Accounts and Nostro Accounts. Either Account or Assignee account is mandatory.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-9 (Cont.) Assignee Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Assigned Percentage	Specify the percentage of assignment to the assignee. Sum of assignee percentage should not exceed 100 percent.Either Assigned Percentage or Assigned Amount should be entered. If assigned percentage is provided and assigned amount is not provided, system will compute assigned amount based on assigned percent of contract amount.If assigned amount is provided and assigned percentage is not provided, system will compute assigned percentage based on assigned amount. If both assigned percentage and assigned amount is provided, system will compute assigned amount based on assigned percentage If both assigned percentage and assignment amount is not provided, system will provide error message.
Assigned Amount	Specify the amount of assignment to the assignee in LC currency. This should be greater than zero. Decimal points will be based on the LC currency. If assignment details are maintained for any product type other than export type, system will throw an error message. It will be possible to amend these values. If the amendment amount is reduced, there will be a validation to check whether it goes below from that used already in BC contract. If yes, system will throw an error. Also if the assignment details are already used in any BC contract, system will not allow to add or delete new assignees or amend party details such as Assignee Id, Account etc. Assignment details can be added through excel upload.
Assignee Account	Indicates Account of Assignee which is Ultimate Beneficiary Account. If user provides Invalid Accounts then system will assign walkin customer to Assignee id and Nostro Account to Account field.
Assignee Bank	Indicates Bank of Assignee
Address Line 1	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Address Line 2	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Address Line 3	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Address Line 4	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Account with Institution	Indicates Account with Institution.
Address Line 1	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Address Line 2	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Address Line 3	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.
Address Line 4	Indicates Assignee Bank address details.

Account details provided from External system to be mapped to Assignee Account field which is newly introduced.

Assignee ID, Account and Assignee Account derivation will be as below:

Table 4-10 Table Assignee Details

Assignee Id	Account	Assignee Account	Processing on Save
Customer selected from LOV	Customer Account selected from LOV	Not provided	Assignee account to be defaulted with Account on Save

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-10 (Cont.) Table Assignee Details

Assignee Id	Account	Assignee Account	Processing on Save
Not provided	Customer Account selected from LOV	Not provided	Customer id to be derived and Assignee Account to be defaulted with Account
Not provided	Not provided	Valid Customer account provided	Customer id to be derived and Account to be defaulted with Assignee Account
Not provided	Not provided	Invalid Customer account provided	Walk in customer and Nostro account of the walk in customer to be defaulted

During Bill liquidation, assignee details to be defaulted to Settlement subsystem as below:

Table 4-11 Assignee Details

Assignee Details	Settlement Subsystem
Assignee Account	Ultimate Beneficiary 1
Assignee Name	Ultimate Beneficiary 2
Assignee Address 1	Ultimate Beneficiary 3
Assignee Address 2	Ultimate Beneficiary 4
Assignee Address 3	Ultimate Beneficiary 5
Assignee Bank	Beneficiary Institution 1
Assignee Bank Address Line 1	Beneficiary Institution 2
Assignee Bank Address Line 2	Beneficiary Institution 3
Assignee Bank Address Line 3	Beneficiary Institution 4
Assignee Bank Address Line 4	Beneficiary Institution 5
Account with Institution	Account with Institution 1
Address Line 1	Account with Institution 2
Address Line 2	Account with Institution 3
Address Line 3	Account with Institution 4
Address Line 4	Account with Institution 5

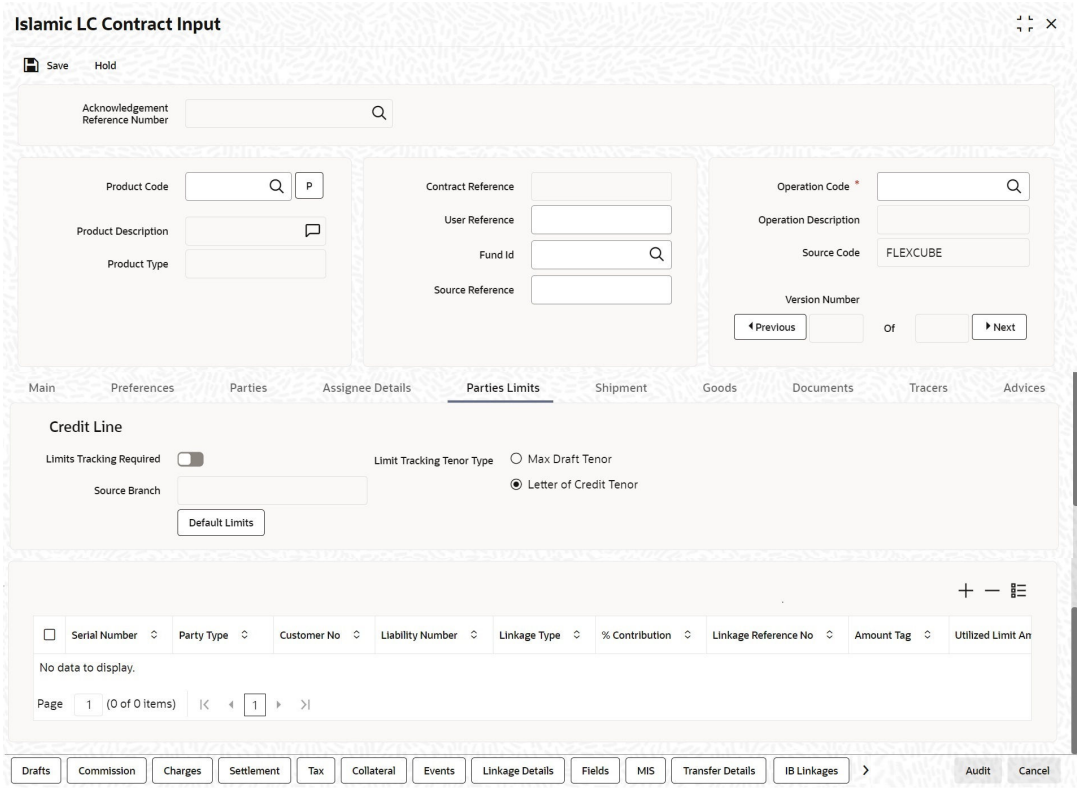
8. On the **Islamic LC Contract Details** screen, click **Parties Limits**.

   Oracle Banking Trade Finance allows you to track the credit limits for customers who are parties to an Islamic LC contract. Using ‘Parties Limits’ tab, you can track the limits of multiple credit lines in an Islamic LC contract.

   Islamic LC Contract Input - Parties Limits screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-7 Islamic LC Contract Input - Parties Limits



9. On **Islamic LC Contract Details - Parties Limits** screen, specify the details as required.

You can add new records or delete defaulted record for limit before saving the details. For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 4-12 Parties limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Limits Tracking Required	Check this box to indicate that limit tracking is required for the parties to the Islamic LC contract. If you check this box, the system will let you set the limits for multiple credit lines in the contract. If you do not check this box, the system will not track the parties' limits. On checking this box, the system enables 'Default'. You can use this option to get the default values for the parties in the credit lines. • Letter of Credit tenor • Max Draft Tenor
Default Limits	Click the Default Limits button. The system displays the default values for the parties limits
Limit Tracking Tenor Type	Choose the limit tracking tenor type from the following options:
Serial Number	On click of Save button, the system displays the serial number.
Party Type	Specify the party type of the counter party of the contract whose credit limits need to be tracked. However, you need to make sure that the mandatory party details have been maintained under 'Parties' tab of the screen. When you add another row to the list, you can manually select the party type as required. If you leave it blank, the system will automatically update the party type when you save the contract.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-12 (Cont.) Parties limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer No	Specify the customer number of the party whose credit limits need to be tracked. The option list displays the customer numbers of all the parties selected under 'Parties' tab.Specify the 'Customer No' for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC Code is not mapped with that Customer Number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining option list. You need to make sure that the customer number corresponds to the party type selected above. If the customer number and party type do not match, the system displays an error.
Liability Number	The system displays multiple liabilities that are attached to the Customer.
Linkage Type	Specify the linkage type. The drop-down list displays the following options: • Facility (Credit Line) • Collateral Pool • Collateral • Local Collateral Choose the appropriate one.
Linkage Reference No	Specify the reference number that identifies the facility, collateral pool or collateral. The option list displays all valid facilities and collateral pools specific to the liability. Choose the appropriate one. In case you choose the same linkage reference for more than one record in the list, the system displays an override message. You may choose to cancel or proceed with the selection. **Note** You can select Linkage Reference Number and JV Parent manually.
% Contribution	Specify the proportion of limits to be tracked for the credit line or collateral pool for the customer. When you click 'Default' the system defaults the percentage of contribution maintained under 'Customer Maintenance' screen. It is mandatory to indicate the percentage of contribution if the party is a customer.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-12 (Cont.) Parties limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag. The system tracks the limits for non joint venture customers based on the amount tag. The amount tags applicable to export and import Islamic LC contracts are listed below: Amount tags applicable to Export Islamic LC: • Liability Amount • Confirmed Amount • Unconfirmed Amount • Silent Confirmation Amount Amount tags applicable to Import Islamic LC: • Liability Amount • Undertaking Amount • Non Undertaking Amount • Liability Minus Margin Choose the appropriate one based on the type of Islamic LC contract. If you do not specify the amount tag, the system will track the limits based on the liability amount and facility. In 'Parties Limit' tab choose 'Liability Minus Margin' from the 'Amount Tag' the 'Limit Amount' is computed as 'Current Liability Amount' minus the 'Margin Amount' In 'Parties Limit' tab choose 'Silent Confirmation Amount' from the 'Amount Tag' the amount computed is 'Silent Confirmation Amount' which is the Liability Outstanding Amount. The system verifies the amount tag against the product type. If you choose an amount tag, which is not supported by the product type, the system displays an error message.
Limit Amount	When you click 'Default', the system defaults the amount tracked for each credit line. In case of other customers, the amount is derived based on the amount tag specified above. You can add more rows to the list of credit lines using add. Similarly, you can remove a selected row from the list using delete. Once you have specified the details, save the contract. In case the limit for a credit line has been completely exhausted, the system displays a configurable override message. If you have not used 'Default' while specifying the parties' limit details, the system will automatically default the details and track the limits based on that.
JV Parent	When you click 'Default Limits' button, the system defaults the joint venture customer number of the party. This customer number is defaulted based on the details maintained in 'Joint Venture' sub-screen of 'Customer Maintenance' screen.

If limits Earmarking is done by an External system. OBTF can release the Earmarking details by following below steps:

- Enable the flag "Release ELCM Earmarking" at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance.
- External system has to send the Earmarking details to OBTF through the service – OBTFIFService and Operation – CreateLmtEARDtls, before calling handoff request.
- When OBTF initiates utilization service call to limits system, we will send the Earmarking reference received from external system in block reference no tag to release the earmarking details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4.3.3 Update Parties' Limits on Amendment of Islamic LC Contract

Oracle Banking Trade Finance allows you to amend Islamic LC contracts. Such amendments may have direct impact on the parties limits defined in the contracts. This section examines the some amendments that is made to an Islamic LC contract and their impact on the parties' limits.

Increase in Islamic LC Amount

If there is an increase in the Islamic LC amount, based on the amount tag, the system updates the parties' limits as follows:

Table 4-13 Parties Limits

Amount tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The liability amount is used to track the delta amount
Confirmed Amount	The increased confirmed amount is used to track the parties' limits
Unconfirmed Amount	The increased unconfirmed amount is used to track the limits
Non-undertaken Amount	The Islamic LC amount is used to track the limits for the line specified under 'Non-Undertaken Amount'
Liability Minus Margin	The increased Islamic LC amount is used to track

After amendment, if there is an increase in the confirmed amount, the parties' limits are updated as follows:

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The system does not track the limits
Confirmed Amount	The increased confirmed amount is used to track the limits
Unconfirmed Amount	The increased confirmed amount is deducted from the credit line tracked for the unconfirmed portion

After amendment, if there is an increase in the undertaking amount, the parties' limits are updated as follows:

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The system does not change the parties' limits
Undertaken Amount	The increased undertaken amount is used to track the limits
Non-undertaken Amount	The increased undertaken amount is deducted

After amendment, if there is a decrease in the Islamic LC amount, the system updates the parties' limits as follows:

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The decreased amount is deducted from the credit line tracked for the liability amount
Confirmed Amount	The decreased confirmed amount is deducted from the credit line tracked for the confirmed amount
Unconfirmed Amount	The decreased confirmed amount is deducted from the credit line tracked for the unconfirmed portion

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Minus Margin	The decreased Islamic LC amount is used to track the limits for the line specified under 'Liability Minus Margin

After amendment, if there is a decrease in the confirmed amount, the system updates the parties' limits as follows:

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The system does not change the parties' limits
Confirmed Amount	The decreased confirmed amount is deducted from the credit line tracked for the confirmed amount
Unconfirmed Amount	The decreased confirmed amount is added to the credit line tracked for the unconfirmed portion

After amendment, if there is a decrease in the undertaking amount, the system updates the parties' limits as follows:;

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The system does not change the parties' limits
Non-Undertaken Amount	The decreased undertaken amount is added to the credit line tracked for the non-undertaken portion

After amendment, if there is a decrease in the collateral amount, the system updates the parties' limits as follows:

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Minus Margin	The decreased collateral amount is used to track the limits for the line specified under 'Liability Minus Margin'

After amendment, if there is a increase in the collateral amount, the system updates the parties' limits as follows:

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Minus Margin	The increased collateral amount is used to track the limits for the line specified under 'Liability Minus Margin'

If the percentage of allocation is modified, the system updates the delta amounts accordingly.

4.3.4 Update Parties' Limits on Islamic LC Availments

On receipt of the bills or on notification from the negotiating bank, you can record an availment under an Islamic LC. The system updates the parties' limits during availment of an Islamic LC contract.

Table 4-14 Islamic LC Availments

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Liability Amount	The limits are reinstated based on the Islamic LC amount availed so far

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-14 (Cont.) Islamic LC Availments

Amount Tag	Changes in Parties' Limits
Confirmed Amount	The limits are reinstated based on the confirmed portion of th Islamic LC amount availed so far
Unconfirmed Amount	The limits are reinstated based on the unconfirmed portion of the Islamic LC amount availed so far
Undertaken Amount	The limits are reinstated based on the undertaken portion of the Islamic LC amount availed so far
Non-undertaken Amount	The limits are reinstated based on the non-undertaken portion of the Islamic LC amount availed so far Liability Minus
Margin	The limits are reinstated

4.3.5 Specify the Media Details for a Party

The advices for a party is sent to the default media maintained in the Customer Addresses table. If you want to send the advices through another medium, you should indicate it in the Parties screen. The address should be also indicated. The advices is sent through the new medium, only if you indicate so in the Advices screen of contract processing. If not, the advice will continue to be sent to the default address defined for the party.

You can use this feature to send a one-off advice, through a different medium. For example, for a particular customer, you normally send all advices through mail and hence haven't defined SWIFT or TELEX advices. For an Islamic LC involving a customer, you want to send the advices through SWIFT. In such a case, you can specify the medium as SWIFT and specify the address only for the Islamic LC you are processing.

4.3.6 Specify Credit Administration Details

The details on credit lines that feature on this screen have been covered in the chapter titled Specifying Central Liability tracking details.

4.3.7 Specify Shipping for an Islamic LC

This topic provides the systematic instruction to Specify Shipping for an Islamic LC.

An Islamic LC, which is an instrument of trade finance, involves details of merchandise. Hence, you will need to specify the following details for the Islamic LC:

- Details of the merchandise
- Details of the mode of transportation

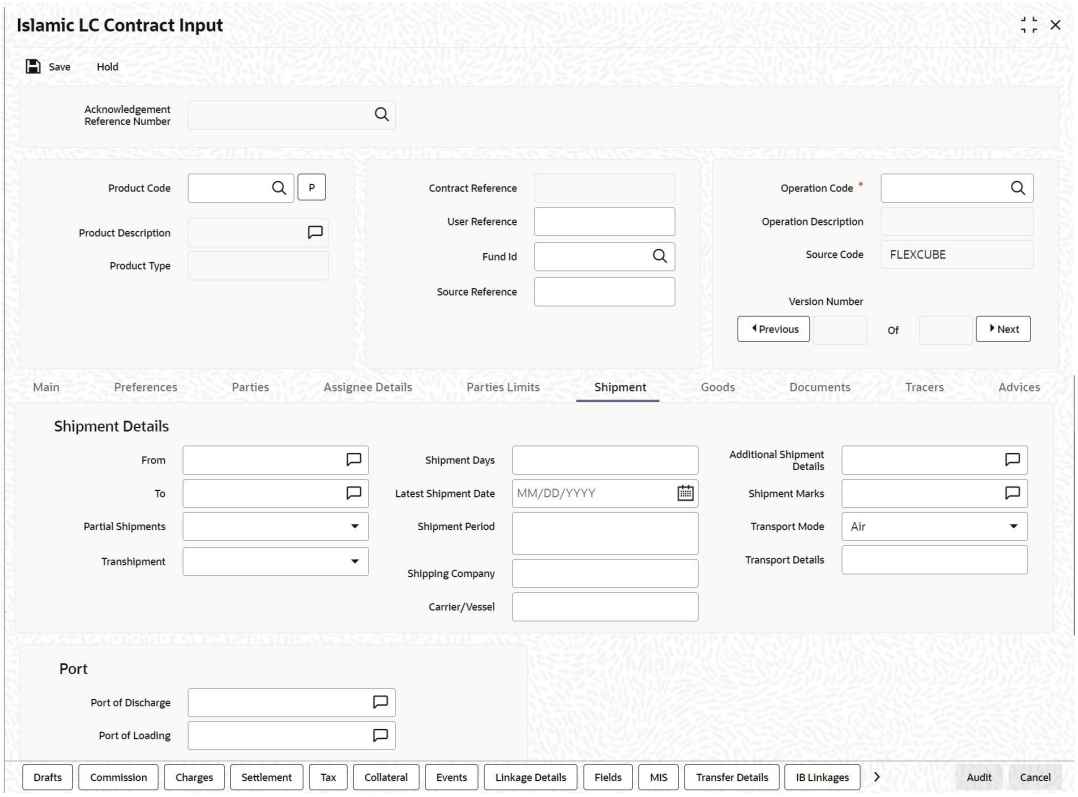
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.
From the Homepage, navigate to **Islamic LC Contract Input**.

1. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Shipment**.

   Islamic LC Contract Input with **Shipment** details

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-8 Shipment



2. On the **Shipment** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 4-15 Shipment - Field Description

Field	Description
Specify Shipment Details for an Islamic LC There are certain standard clauses and conditions, associated with the shipment of the merchandise traded under an Islamic LC. You can specify the following shipping details for an Islamic LC that you process.	
Partial Shipment Allowed	Check this option if partial shipment of the goods is allowed under the LC.
Trans Shipment Allowed	Check this option if Trans-shipment is allowed under the LC
From	The location from which the goods transacted under the LC should be shipped. In international trading parlance, this is called the Loading on board/Dispatch/Taking in charge at/from.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-15 (Cont.) Shipment - Field Description

Field	Description
To	The destination to which the goods transacted under the LC should be sent. In international trading parlance, this is called the 'For transportation' to. to. 'Shipment From' and 'Shipment To' are linked to the tags 44A and 44 B respectively. These tags are applicable to the following message types: • MT700 • MT705 • MT707 • MT710 • MT720 **Note** Specifying the 'Shipment From' and 'Shipment To' is optional.
Shipment Days	Specify the number of shipment days. If you enter the shipment days and leave the field 'Latest Shipment Date' blank, on saving the contract, the system calculates the latest shipment date based on the number of shipment days and the effective date. However, if you specify the latest shipment date, the system ignores the shipment days specified here. Instead, it recalculates the shipment days based on the latest shipment date and the effective date.
Latest Shipment Date	Specify the latest shipment date Besides these details, you can also specify shipping preferences like: • Should Trans-shipment be allowed under the Islamic LC • Should partial shipment of the goods be allowed under the Islamic LC • Shipping marks • Additional shipment details
Shipping Company	Indicates the name of the shipping company
Carrier/Vessel	Indicates Carrier / Vessel Name
Port of Loading	Specify the name of the airport from where the goods transacted under the Islamic LC are loaded for shipping.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-15 (Cont.) Shipment - Field Description

Field	Description
Port of Discharge	Specify the name of the destination port to which the goods transacted under Islamic LC should be sent. **Note** Port of Loading and 'Port of Discharge' are linked to the 44E and 44F tags respectively. These tags are applicable to the following message types: MT700 MT705 MT707 MT710 MT720 It is not mandatory to specify the Port of Loading or Port of Discharge.

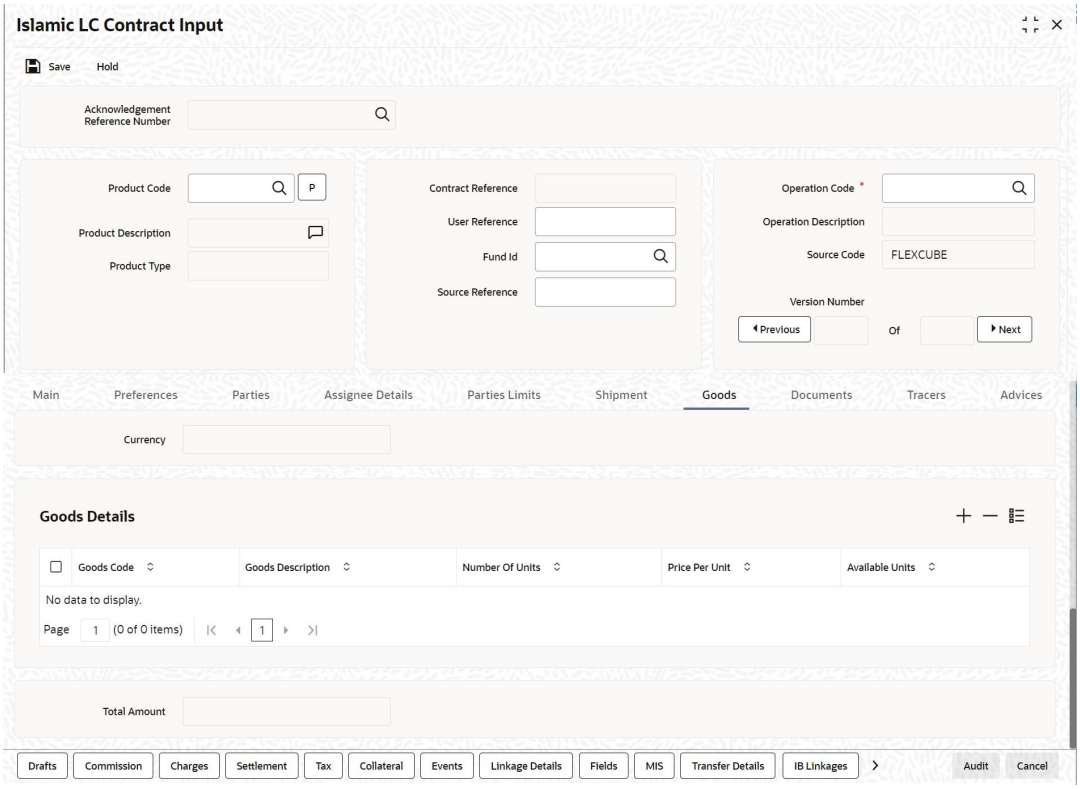
3. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Goods**.

   You can also specify Preferences for the shipment of goods in the **Goods** tab

   Islamic LC Contract Input with **Goods** details

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-9 Islamic LC Contract Input - Goods



4. On the **Goods** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 4-16 Goods - Field Description

Field	Description
Goods Code	Select the Goods code from the list provided.
Goods Description	The system displays the description of the Goods.
Number of Units	The system displays the number of units.
Price Per Unit	The system displays the price per unit.
Available Units	The system displays the available units of the goods.

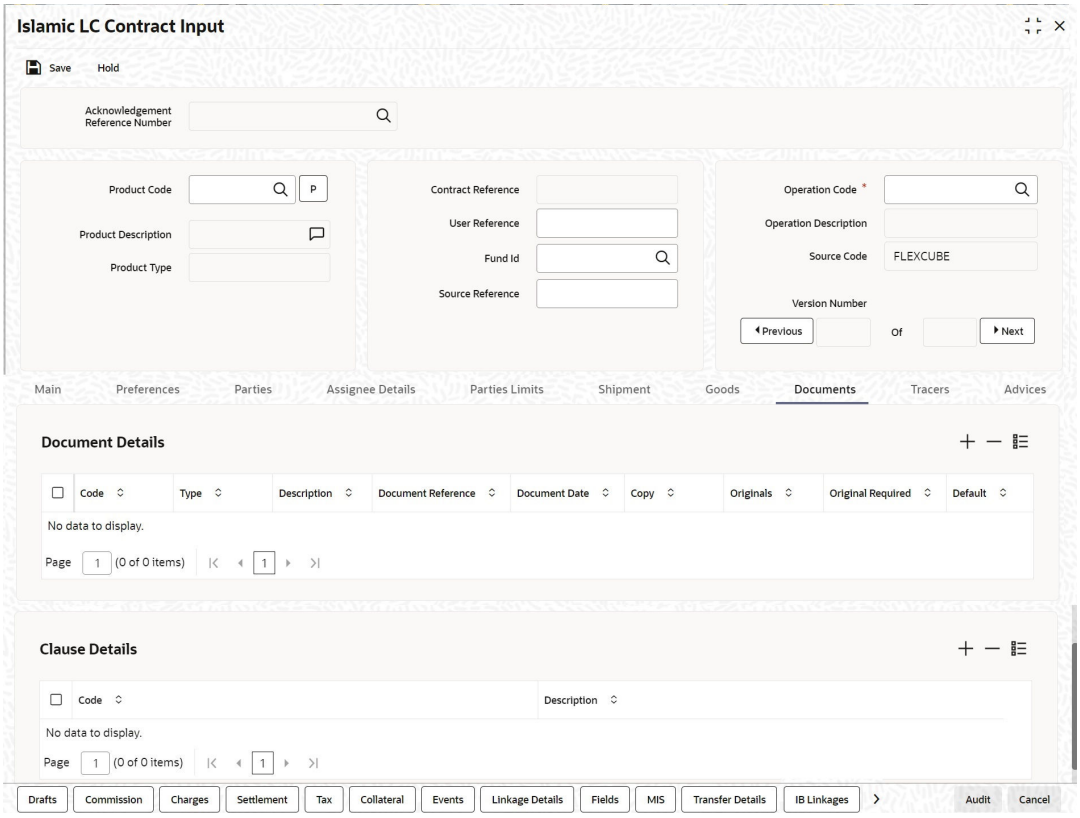
5. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Documents**.

   You can specify the documents that should accompany the goods in the ‘Documents’ tab. Click ‘Documents’ tab to specify details documents and clauses that are part of the Islamic LC instrument.

   Islamic LC Contract Input - Documents screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-10 Islamic LC Contract Input - Documents



6. On the **Documents** tab, specify the details as required.

There are some standard documents required under a documentary Islamic LC. In this screen you can specify the documents that are required under the Islamic LC being processed.
These details is a part of the Islamic LC instrument sent to the advising bank, the advice through bank or the beneficiary. All the documents specified for the product to which the Islamic LC is linked is defaulted to this screen.

For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 4-17 Documents - Field Description

Field	Description
Product Code	This is a Mandatory Field Enter the document code.
Type	Enter the document type.
Description	Enter the document description of the document that is defaulted to suit the LC you are processing. This field is enabled only if the LC type is 'Shipping Guarantee', but not mandatory. During copy operation, the value of this field will not be copied to the new contract.
Document Reference	Enter the document reference number based on which the Shipping Guarantee issued.
Document Date	Specify the Document Date. Document date should be less than or equal to issue date.
Copy	Enter the number of copies of the document.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-17 (Cont.) Documents - Field Description

Field	Description
Originals	Enter the number of Original documents here.
Original Required	Enter the receipt details here. You can add to or delete from the list of documents that are defaulted. To add a document for the Islamic LC, click on add and then on option list positioned next to the Document Code field. Select the code of the appropriate document from the list of document codes maintained in the Documents Maintenance screen. The other details of the document is defaulted to this screen. To delete a document that is not required for the Islamic LC, highlight the document code and click on the delete on the screen.
Specifying the Document Reference	For Shipping Guarantee type of Islamic LCs, you can specify the document reference based on which the Shipping Guarantee is issued in the 'Doc reference' field. This field is enabled only if the Islamic LC type is 'Shipping Guarantee'. However it is not mandatory to enter the document reference for 'Shipping Guarantee' contracts. Documents captured for a shipping guarantee contract, can exist with or without document reference. During copy operation, the value of this field will not be copied to the new contract.
Specify Clauses for a Document	In addition to the other details, the clauses specified for a document while defining the product, are also defaulted to this screen. When you highlight a document code, all the clauses defined for the document are displayed in the Clauses window. You can add to or delete from, the list of clauses that are defaulted. To add a clause to a document for the Islamic LC, click add. Then, click on option list positioned next to the Clause Code field. Select the code of the applicable clause from the list of clause codes maintained, in the 'Clause Maintenance' screen. The description of the clause is defaulted, based on the clause code that you select. To delete a clause that is not required for the Islamic LC, highlight the Clause code and click on the delete.

7. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** details screen, click **Tracers**.

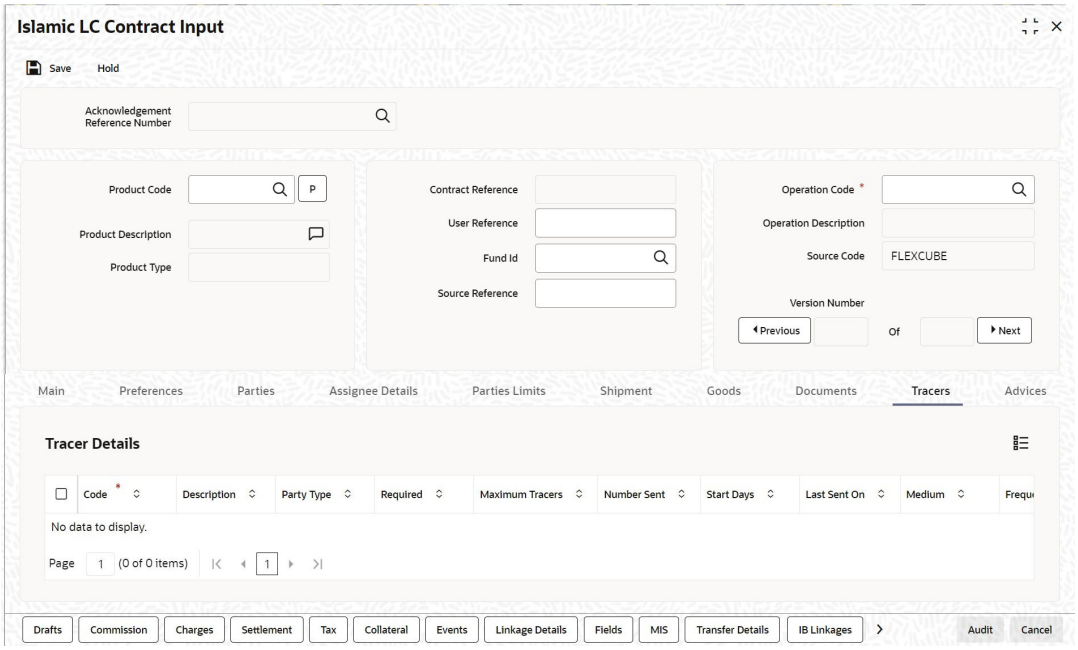
   Tracers are reminders that is sent to various parties involved in an Islamic LC. The list of tracers that you can send for an Islamic LC is predefined (hard coded in the system) and is classified into the following types:

   - The acknowledgment tracer (sent to the advising bank when an import Islamic LC is issued and an acknowledgment is sought)
   - The charge-commission tracer (sent to the party who has to bear the commission or charges for an Islamic LC, pending the payment of the charge or commission)
   - The confirmation tracer (sent to the confirming bank, seeking a letter of confirmation)

   Islamic LC Contract Input with **Tracers** details is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-11 Islamic LC Contract Input with Tracers



8. On **Tracers** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 4-18 Tracers - Field Description

Field	Description
Specifying Tracer Details	For the tracer code that is highlighted, the details are defaulted from the product and is changed to suit the Islamic LC you are processing. Besides the Tracer Code, the following details is displayed: • Description of the tracer • Party to which the tracer is to be sent • Number of tracers sent thus far, to the party • Date on which the tracer was last sent to the party
Maximum Tracers	You can specify the maximum number of tracers that should be sent for the Islamic LC. The value is defaulted from the product under which you are processing the Islamic LC.
Start Days	The tracers that you specify for an Islamic LC is generated only after it has been authorized. Specify the default number of days that should elapse after an Islamic LC has been authorized, on which the first tracer should be sent. By default, the first tracer for an authorized Islamic LC contract is sent, after the number of days prescribed for the product under which it is processed.
Frequency	You can specify the frequency (in days) with which the tracer should be re-sent, for the Islamic LC you are processing.
Last Sent On	You can stop the generation of a tracer at any point during the life cycle of an Islamic LC contract. For instance, you had specified that an acknowledgment tracer is to be generated for a contract. When you receive the acknowledgment from the concerned party, you can disable its generation. At a later stage when you wish to generate the tracer again, you only need to enable it for the Islamic LC by using this facility.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-18 (Cont.) Tracers - Field Description

Field	Description
Medium	If you have specified that tracers should be generated for an Islamic LC, you should also specify the medium through which it is to be generated. A tracer for an Islamic LC is sent through Mail, Telex or other compatible media.
Template ID	Specify the template ID for the SWIFT message type. If the medium is SWIFT, then the system will generate the tracers in the SWIFT MT799 format based on the template ID mentioned at the Islamic LC Contract level for populating the tag 79.

4.3.8 Specify Advices for an Islamic LC

This topic provides the systematic instruction to Specify Advices for an Islamic LC.

An important part of processing an Islamic LC is the generation of various advices applicable for a contract.
The advices that is generated for the events that occur during the lifecycle of an Islamic LC are defined for the product, to which the Islamic LC is linked. For example, you may have specified the following advices for a product:

- Issue of an import Islamic LC: pre-advice by SWIFT and Islamic LC instrument by mail to the advising bank, the authorization to reimburse to the reimbursing bank
- Advice of an export Islamic LC: the acknowledgment advice to the advising bank
- Issue of a guarantee: the guarantee instrument to the beneficiary

The details of the advices for an event are displayed in the Advices screen. The party type to whom a specific advice should be sent is picked up automatically based on the type of Islamic LC being processed and the parties involved.

The advices screen is displayed. The advices defined for the event you are processing is displayed. You can choose to suppress any of them. The address of the party to whom the advice is addressed to is picked up by default, based on the media and address maintenance for the party.

These is changed if required. For a payment message by SWIFT, you also have the option to change the priority of the message

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

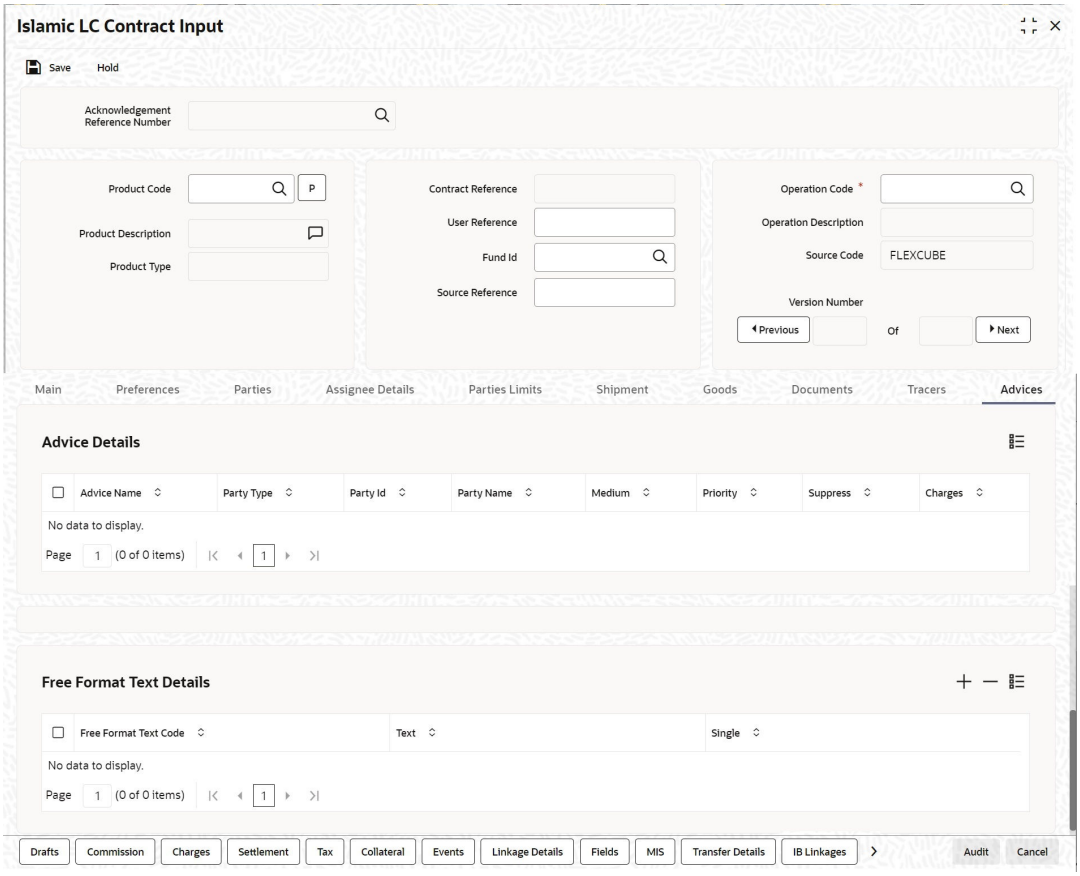
From the Homepage, navigate to **Islamic LC Contract Details**.

1. On **Islamic LC Contract Details** screen click **Advices**.

   Islamic LC Contract Details with **Advices** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-12 Islamic LC Contract Input with Advices



2. On the Advices tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 4-19 Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Suppress	By default, all the advices that have been defined for a product is generated for the Islamic LCs involving it. If any of the advices are not applicable to the Islamic LC you are processing, you can suppress its generation by Checking against the suppress field.
Priority	For a payment message by SWIFT, you also have the option to change the priority of the message. By default, the priority of all advices is marked as Normal. The priority of a payment message is changed to one of the following • Normal • Medium • High

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-19 (Cont.) Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Medium	The medium by which an advice is transmitted and the corresponding address is picked up based on the media and address maintenance for a customer. You can, however, change either of these while processing the Islamic LC. Typically, if changed, both of them is changed. After selecting the advices to be generated for the Islamic LC, click on 'Ok' to save it. Click on 'Delete' to reject the inputs you have made. In either case, you is taken to the Contract Main screen.

(Optional) Enter the result of the procedure here.

4.3.9 Specify the Free Format Instructions that should accompany an Advice

Free Format Text instructions (FFTs) are a set of instructions or statements that are applicable to the Islamic LC that you process. It is used to enter additional details related to the Islamic LC you are processing. In the Islamic LC Contract - Advices screen you can specify the FFTs that should accompany an advice, generated for an Islamic LC. When you select an advice code on this screen, the advice code together and the party type, to which it is to be sent, is displayed in the FFT section. This indicates that the FFTs that you specify will appear on the advice, which is displayed and is sent to the party type that is displayed.

All the FFTs defined for the advice, at the product level will also be displayed. You have the option to add to or delete from the list of FFTs defaulted for an advice. To add an FFT to the list, click on add in the screen and then on the option list.

Select an FFT code from the option list that is displayed. After selecting the code that identifies the FFT you wish to attach to the advice, its description is automatically picked up and displayed. The FFT description is changed to suit the requirements of the Islamic LC you are processing.

To delete an FFT from the list, highlight the code that identifies the FFT and click on the delete in the screen. The free format codes for the following purposes have the fixed codes:

FFT Code	Description
SND2RECMTxxx	Sender to receiver information (Field 72 of SWIFT).
INSTRUCTION	Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/Negotiating bank (Field 78 of SWIFT).

Sender to Receiver Info Tag

FFT codes "SND2RECMTxxx" is used to pick up the sender to receiver information in various swift messages. In the FFT code "MTxxx" will stand for the SWIFT message type in which the FFT code is picked up. This facilitates defining a separate FFT code for each of the SWIFT message.

This is applicable for the following swift messages: MT700, 707, 705, 710, 720, 730, 740, 747, 760, 767, 768, 400, 410, 412, 420,422, 430, 734, 732, 742, 756, 750, 752,754

The various FFT codes for SND2RECMTxxx are maintained in the Free Format Code maintenance screen. During contract processing, based on the event being processed system defaults the advices maintained for the particular event. For messages of SWIFT type, you can

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

select the corresponding SND2RECMTxxx FFT code from the list of values In the SWIFT message generated, the tag 72 is populated with the text associated with the FFT code SND2RECMTxxx attached for the advice at the contract level.System will not validate the FFT code SND2RECMTxxx being attached with the advice. This has to be operationally controlled.

During advice generation, if the FFT code SND2RECMTxxx corresponding to the advice is not attached or if a different SND2RECMTxxx is attached, system will not populate the tag 72 in the advice generated.

4.4 Cancel an Islamic LC

This topic provides the systematic instruction to Cancel an Islamic LC.

You may have to cancel an Islamic LC that has been opened, before its Expiry Date. An example for a cancellation is when the trade deal for which the Islamic LC is opened falls through. A canceled Islamic LC will not be available for any availment. However, you can cancel an Islamic LC that has been availed partially. In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, the following are the prerequisites for cancellation:

- The Islamic LC has not yet reached its expiry date
- The cancellation event - CANC, has been defined

The accounting entries for this event are generally the reversal of the accounting entries passed for liability and collateral, when the Islamic LC was opened. In addition, a charge is levied for canceling the Islamic LC.

A cancellation advice informing, the advising bank or beneficiary, about the cancellation is generated.

1. To cancel an Islamic LC, from the Contract Detailed View, do the following:
   a. Select Close from the Application toolbar
   b. Click ‘Reopen’ icon in the Toolbar
      You is prompted to confirm the cancellation.

4.5 Close, Reopen, and Black list an Islamic LC

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Closing an Islamic LC
2. Reopen an Islamic LC
3. Black Listing Islamic LCs

- Closing an Islamic LC
- Reopen an Islamic LC
- Black Listing Islamic LCs
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to Black Listing Islamic LCs.

4.5.1 Closing an Islamic LC

Normally, an Islamic LC that is opened is negotiated within its expiry date. If the negotiation does not happen even after the expiry date, you can close the Islamic LC. By closing an Islamic LC, you is reversing the liability entries passed for the Islamic LC. This ensures that the credit limit that was taken by the Islamic LC is released and is available for future utilization.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, you can close an Islamic LC under the following circumstances:

- The event CLOS is defined for the Islamic LC
- The Islamic LC is beyond its Expiry Date

The accounting entries defined for this event is generally the reversal of the outstanding liability. No availment is made against an Islamic LC that is closed. You should reopen a closed Islamic LC if you have to make an availment against it. This would be required in a situation when the Islamic LC comes in for negotiation after it has been closed. The reopening of the Islamic LC will put back the outstanding liability and availability for the Islamic LC.

- Close an Islamic LC automatically
- Close an Islamic LC manually

4.5.1.1 Close an Islamic LC automatically

In the Islamic LC Contract Main screen, you can specify the following dates related to the closure of an Islamic LC:

- Whether auto closure is allowed
- The date on which the Islamic LC should be automatically closed

To recall, the date of automatic closure is based on the ‘Closure Days’ maintained for the product involved in the Islamic LC. However, you can change the closure date, to any date, after the expiry date of the Islamic LC.

An Islamic LC that is defined for automatic closure is closed during the End of Day processes on the closure date.

4.5.1.2 Close an Islamic LC manually

An Islamic LC that is not defined for automatic closure is closed any time after its Expiry Date.

By clicking ‘Reopen’ icon in the Toolbar, when the details of the Islamic LC IS displayed in the Detailed View screen.

Oracle Banking Trade Finance displays a message prompting you to confirm the closure. The closure of an Islamic LC should be authorized by a user, bearing a different User ID, before the End of Day operations begin.

4.5.2 Reopen an Islamic LC

To avail against a closed Islamic LC, you have to reopen it. This occurs when the Islamic LC comes in for negotiation after it has been closed. The reopening of the Islamic LC will put back the outstanding liability and availability for the Islamic LC.

To reopen a closed Islamic LC, you should have defined the event ROPN for the product under which the Islamic LC is processed. For this event, you should have ideally defined the same entries for the Islamic LC outstanding amount and the liability, as you would for the opening (issue or advice) of an Islamic LC. You can levy a charge for reopening an Islamic LC.

- Procedure to reopen an Islamic LC

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4.5.2.1 Procedure to reopen an Islamic LC

Clicking ‘Reopen’ icon in the tool bar when the details of the Islamic LC are being displayed in the Detailed View screen. Oracle Banking Trade Finance will prompt you to confirm the reopening of the Islamic LC. You need to click save icon to reopen the LC.

4.5.3 Black Listing Islamic LCs

This topic provides the systematic instructions to Black Listing Islamic LCs.

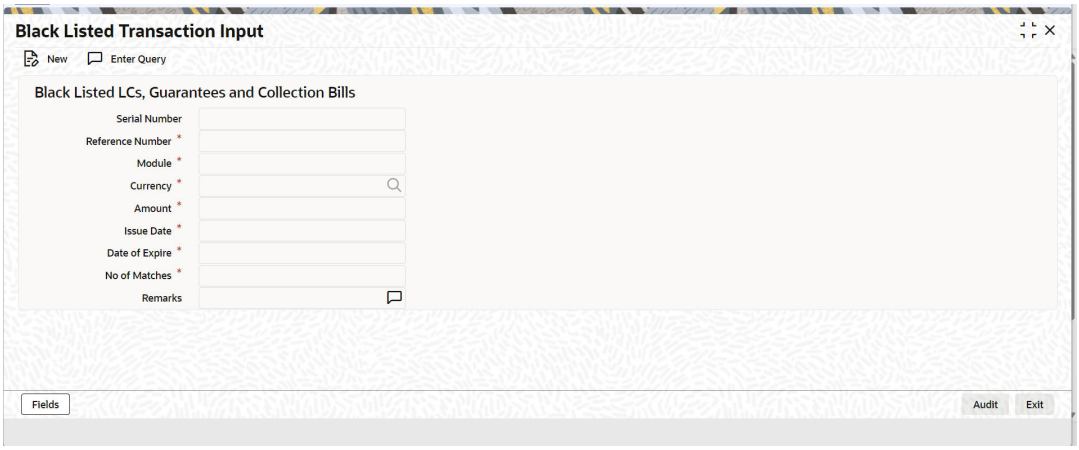
You can black list Islamic LCs and collection bills based on a set of criteria that you can define. You can define criteria for black listing Islamic LCs and bills in the Black Listed Transaction Input screen processed from the Application Browser.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LCDBKLST** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Black Listed Transaction Input** is displayed.

Figure 4-13 Black Listed Transaction Input



2. On the **Black Listed Transaction Input** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 4-20 Black Listed Transaction Input - field Description

Field	Description
Setting up criteria for blacklisting Islamic LC/ Bills	You can set up the following criteria for blacklisting Islamic LCs and Bills: • The module to which the contract belongs • The reference number of the party (For Islamic LCs, specify the reference of the Issuer. • For Bills, enter the reference of the Remitting bank). • The Currency Code of the contract • The Contract Amount • The Issue Date and • The Expiry Date • Remarks

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 4-20 (Cont.) Black Listed Transaction Input - field Description

Field	Description
No of Matches	Now that you have set up the criteria for black listing contracts, you need to indicate the number of the above criteria that should be used to black list Islamic LCs and Bills. For example, you indicate 2 in the field Number of Matches. All Islamic LCs/Bills that match at least two of the blacklisting criteria that you specified is displayed for blacklisting. After you indicate the blacklisting criteria, click 'Save' icon from the tool bar to save the record. A message with the Reference Number of the Islamic LCs / Bills that matches the blacklisting criteria that you specified is displayed. You can choose to blacklist the contract or ignore the message. If you enter a new Islamic LC/Bill that matches the blacklisting criteria, you is prompted for an override. Similarly, if you attempt to amend the details of a blacklisted Islamic LC/Bill, you is prompted with an override.

4.6 Reverse Islamic LC

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Reverse an Islamic LC
2. Procedure for Reversing an Islamic LC
3. Contract Reversal
4. Event Reversal

- Reverse an Islamic LC
- Procedure for Reversing an Islamic LC
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to Procedure for Reversing an Islamic LC.
- Contract Reversal
- Event Reversal

4.6.1 Reverse an Islamic LC

You can reverse any particular version of the Islamic LC Contract or entire Islamic LC. This can achieved through reversal operation. The Reversal of an Islamic LC should be authorized by a user, bearing a different User ID, before the End of Day Operation begins.

This is applicable for Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit.

4.6.2 Procedure for Reversing an Islamic LC

This topic provides the systematic instructions to Procedure for Reversing an Islamic LC.

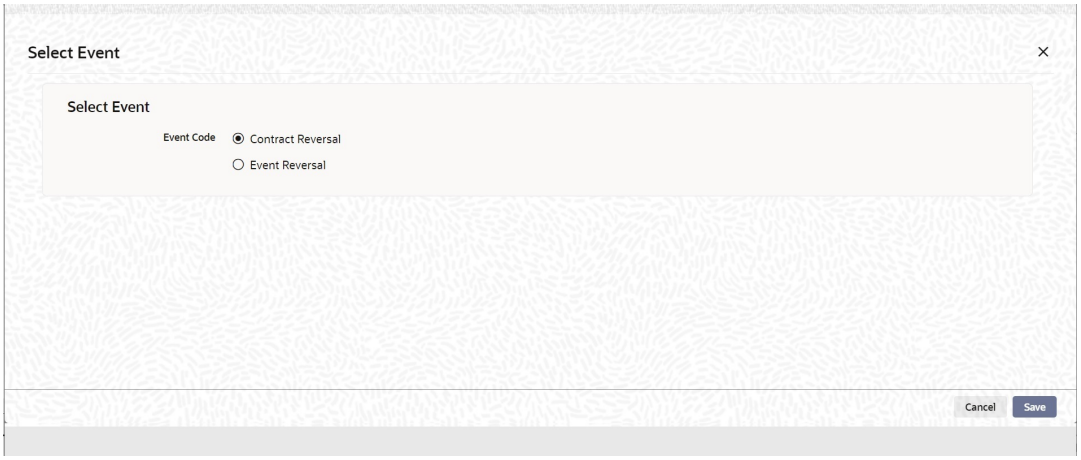
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.
From the Homepage, navigate to **Islamic LC details in the Detailed View** screen

1. On the **Islamic LC details in the Detailed View** screen, click **Reverse**.

   Select Event screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 4-14 Select Event



2. On the **Islamic LC details in the Detailed View** screen, Choose the Reversal option based on the requirement.

   The Reversal options are:

   - Contract Reversal
   - Event Reversal

3. Confirm the reversal when prompted.

4.6.3 Contract Reversal

On selecting the ‘Contract reversal’, system will reverse the Islamic LC contract. A Reversed Islamic LC will not be available for any further operations. ‘REVR’ event is triggered which updates the contract status as ‘Reversed’. This will reverse the liability entries passed for the Islamic LC to ensure that the credit limit that was taken by the Islamic LC is released and is available for future utilization. In addition to this, Charges, Commission, Limits Utilization and Accounting entries will also be reversed on contract reversal.

4.6.4 Event Reversal

In case of ‘Event Reversal’, system will reverse the last version creating event along with the non-version creating events (if any) in between the current version and previous version. This reinstates the contract to the version corresponding to the version of the immediate previous event of the reversed event.

‘REVE’ event is triggered and reverse the associated events, but the contract status is available as ‘Active’. However, you cannot reverse the last event reversal even though it is a version creating event.

This will also reverse the liability entries passed for those particular reversed LC events to ensure that the credit limit that was taken by the Islamic LC is released and is available for future utilization.

Reversal of the event will have impact on the below details

- Accounting entries- Negative entries is posted for the reversed LC events
- Commission
- Charges

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Limit utilization

You cannot reverse more than one event at the same time or reverse a canceled or closed Islamic LC contract.

When there is only one version available for the contract and if you select ‘Event Reversal’, the system displays an error message and in this case you need to select ‘Contract Reversal’.

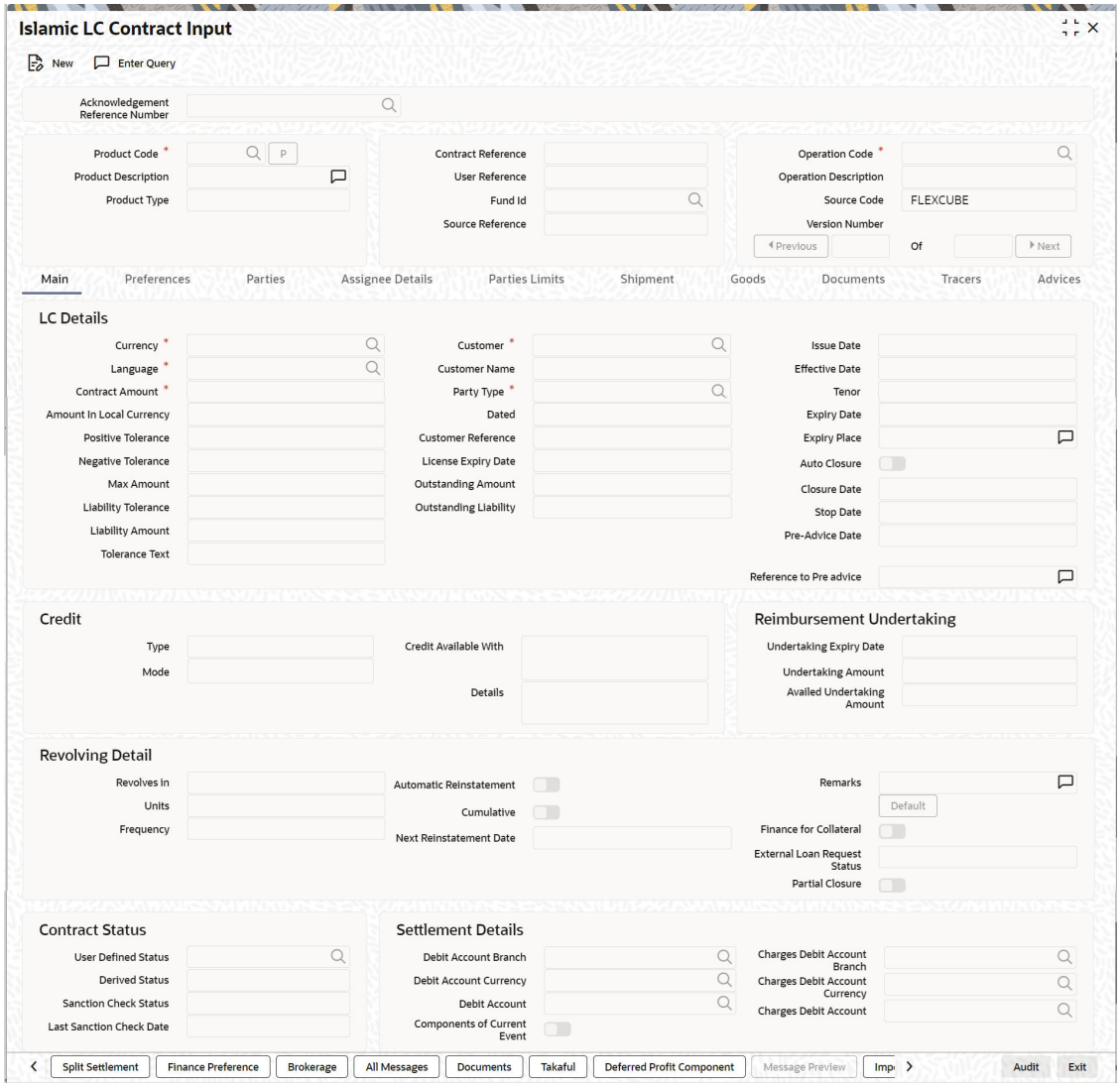
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

5

Additional Details

You can process an Islamic LC contract by clicking on the buttons in the Islamic LC Contract Input screen.

Figure 5-1 Islamic LC Contract Input



For more information on the fields, refer the Field Description table given below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-1 Islamic LC Contract Input

Buttons	Description
Drafts	Click this button to capture the details of draft drawn for the Islamic LC. You can specify the name of the insurance company that is covering the goods traded under the Islamic LC.
Settlement	Click this button to capture the Settlement screens. Based on the details that you enter in the settlement screens the Islamic LC will be settled. The details of these screens have been discussed in the Settlements manual.
Events	Click this button to view the details of the events and accounting entries that a contract involves.
MIS	Click this button to define MIS details for the Islamic LC.
Commission	On invoking this button Commission details of the contract is displayed
Charges	This button invokes the Charges, Commissions and Fees (ICCF) service. On invoking this function you will be presented with a screen where the ICCF rate, amount, currency and the waive charge parameter can be specified. The Processing Charges and Fees manual, details the procedure for maintaining charge rules. It also deals with the linking of a charge rules to a product and the application of the rule on an Islamic LC. The Processing Commissions manual, details the procedure for maintaining commission rules. It also deals with the linking of a commission rule to a product and the application of the rule on an Islamic LC.
Tax	This button invokes the Tax services. The Processing Tax manual details the procedure for maintaining tax rules and schemes. It also deals with the linking of a tax scheme to a product and the application of the scheme on an Islamic LC.
Collateral	In the screen that corresponds to this button, you can specify details of the cash that you collect as collateral form a customer for the Islamic LC that you process. The details of this screen are discussed under the head Specifying Collateral details for an Islamic LC.
Linkages	Clicking this button invokes the Contract Linkages screen. In this screen, you can link an Islamic LC to a deposit or account, and indicate the funds that you would like to block.
Change Log	Click this button to view the changes made to a particular version of an Islamic LC contract.
Transfer Details	If the Islamic LC is transferred to a new party, you can view the transaction details.
Fields	Click this button to specify values for the user defined fields (UDFs).
Finance Preference	Click this button to maintain the details of the finance.
Split Settlement	Click on this button to specify split settlement details of the bill.
Deferred Profit Component	Click this button to specify deferred profit component details.
Import License	Click this button to capture import license details,
Message Preview	Click this button to preview the messages or advices generated for the contract
Remarks	Click this button to view History of Remarks screen.
Common Message Group	Click this button to capture the common group message screen.

Enter valid inputs into all the mandatory fields in screens that can be invoked from the buttons or you will not be able to save the contract. After making the mandatory entries for the Islamic LC, save the contract by clicking save icon in the tool bar.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

A contract that you have entered should be authorized by a user bearing a different Login ID, before the EOD is run.

> **Note**
>
> You have the option to amend all the unauthorized entries made for an Islamic LC. However, after authorization, certain fields cannot be amended.

Click **Exit** or **Cancel** button to go back to the Application Browser.

- Capture Additional Details
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to capture the Islamic LC Contract Input details.
- View Islamic LC Contract Summary Details
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to view Islamic LC contract summary details.
- Authorize a Contract
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to authorize a contract.

5.1 Capture Additional Details

This topic provides the systematic instruction to capture the Islamic LC Contract Input details.

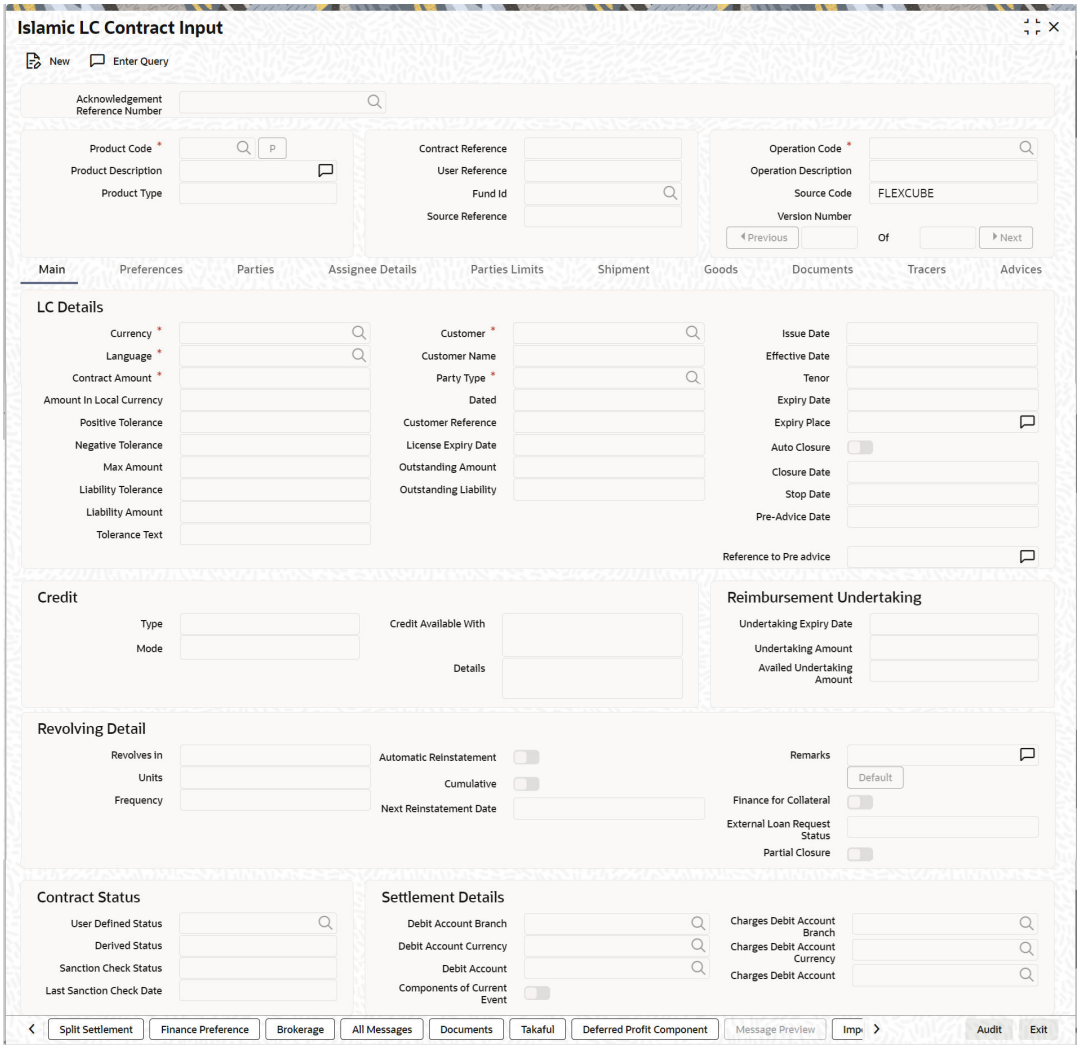
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDTRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-2 Islamic LC Contract Input



> **Note**
>
> Enter valid inputs into all the mandatory fields in screens that can be invoked from the buttons or you will not be able to save the contract. After making the mandatory entries for the Islamic LC, save the contract by clicking save icon in the tool bar.

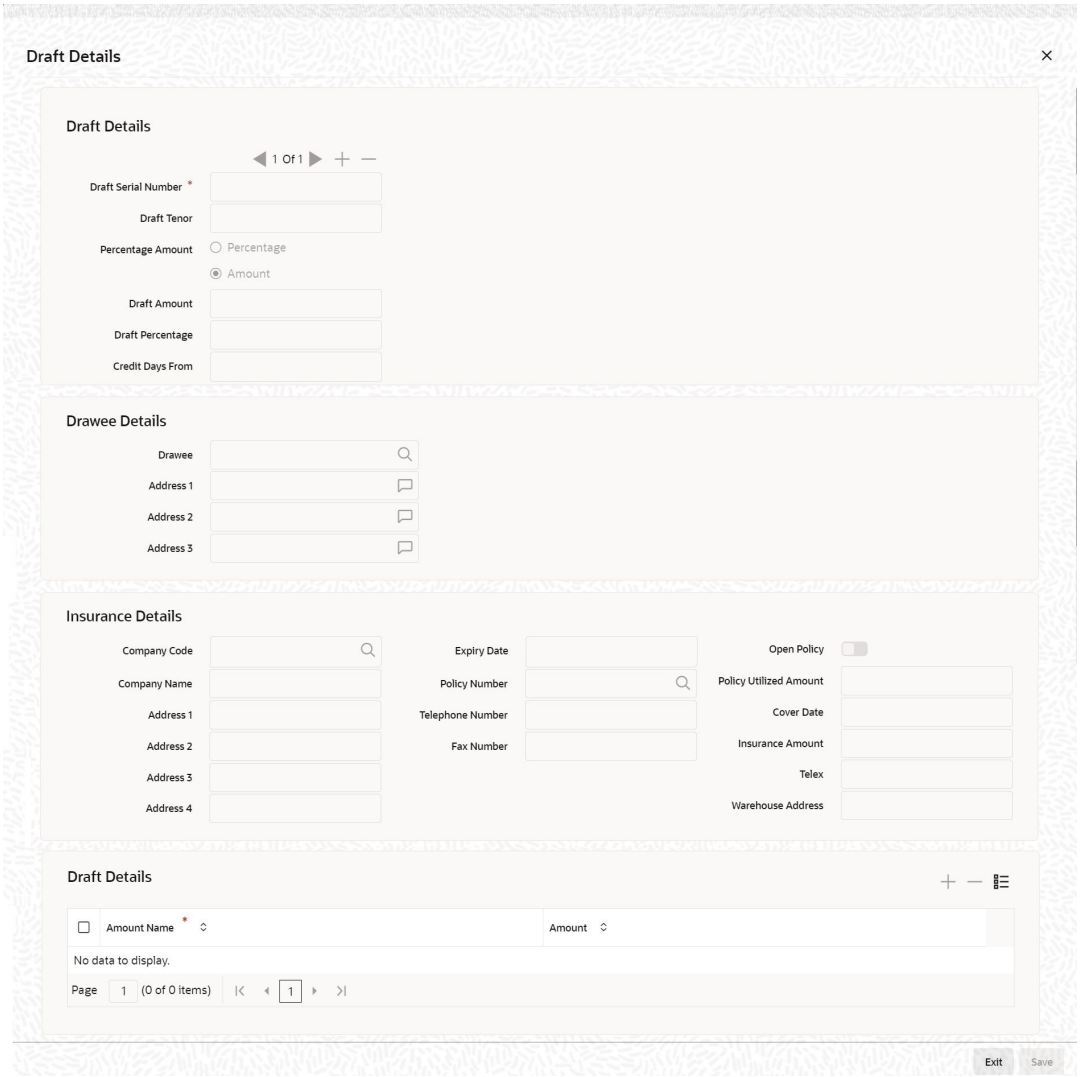
2. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Drafts** button.

   The **Draft Details** screen is displayed.

> **Note**
>
> You can capture the details of draft drawn for the Islamic LC. Specify the name of the insurance company that is covering the goods traded under the Islamic LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-3 Draft Details



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-2 Draft Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Draft Serial Number	Specify the draft serial number. This field is mandatory.
Draft Tenor	Specify the tenor of the draft. This field is optional.
Percentage Amount	Specify whether the draft is a percentage of the Islamic LC amount or a Flat amount. Subsequently, specify the Amount or the Percentage (based on your selection). This field is optional.
Draft Amount	Specify the draft amount once you have selected the amount option in percentage amount. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-2 (Cont.) Draft Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Draft percentage	Specify the draft percentage amount once you have selected the percentage option in percentage amount. This field is optional.
Credit Days From	The Date from which the tenor of the draft begins.
Drawee	Specify the party on whom the draft is drawn. You can select the drawee's CIF from the list. This will contain a list of all the open and authorized CIF maintained in the Customer Directory. This information is captured from the BIC directory.
Address 1 to Address 3	Specify the address of the drawee.
Insurance Details	Specify the insurance company details:
Company Code	You can select the appropriate company code from the option list. The list will display all authorized and active company codes. If you have specified an open insurance policy in the 'Insurance Policy Number' field, the option list will display the company code associated with the chosen insurance policy number. Upon selection of the company code, the following details will be automatically displayed by the system: • Company Name • Address of the company • Telephone Number • Fax Number • Policy Utilized Amount • Cover Date • Insurance Amount • Telex Address • Warehouse Address
Company Name	Specify the Insurance Company to be associated with the Islamic LC.
Address 1 to Address 4	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the address 1 to 4 details automatically.
Expiry Date	Enter the expiry date of the Policy. This field is optional.
Policy Number	Specify the insurance policy number here. The option list displays all insurance policy codes maintained in the system. If you check the option Open Policy the option list will display the open insurance policies maintained in the system. You can select the appropriate one. If you have checked the Open Policy' option and the policy number is specified here is invalid (i.e. not maintained in the Open Policy Maintenance screen) or blank, the system will display an error message. This field is optional.
Telephone Number	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the telephone number automatically. This field is optional.
Fax Number	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the fax number automatically. This field is optional.
Open Policy	Select open policy check box to link an open insurance policy to the Islamic LC. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-2 (Cont.) Draft Details - Field Description

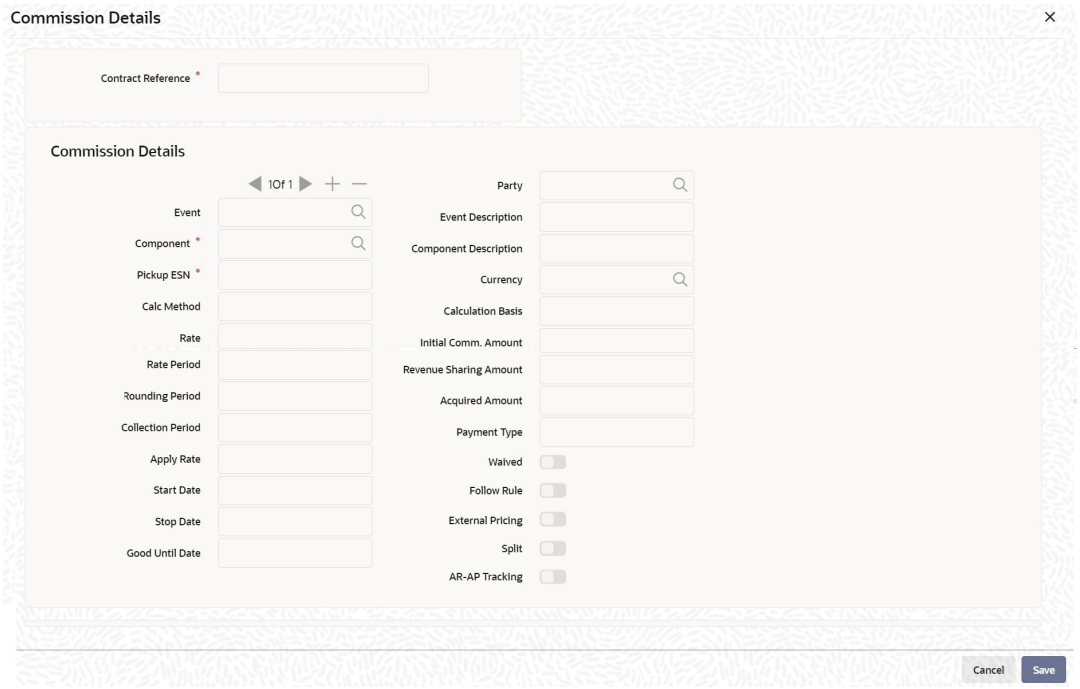
Field	Description
Policy Utilized Amount	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the policy utilized amount automatically. This field is optional.
Cover Date	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the cover date details automatically. This field is optional.
Insurance Amount	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the insurance amount details automatically. This field is optional.
Telex	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the telex address details automatically. This field is optional.
Warehouse Address	Upon selection of the company code, the system displays the warehouse address details automatically. This field is optional.
Amount Name	**Note** You can also choose to associate an Insurance Company that is not maintained in the system. When you are specifying a company code that does not exist, the system will display an override (based on your requirement, you can configure the override to be a warning or an error message). On confirmation of the override, the company code will be automatically changed to 'XXXXXXXXX'. Subsequently, you can specify any company name to be associated with the contract. The system will not perform any validations. The remaining fields in the screen will be disabled in this case. This field is optional.
Amount	The breakup details of the draft will be displayed here as follows: **Note** The draft amounts for the different components (Insurance, Interest, Invoice, Freight) This field is optional.

3. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Commission** button.

   The **Commission Details** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-4 Commission Details



Besides the Islamic LC amount, the other components of an Islamic LC include the commissions that you collect and the charges that you levy on the parties involved in an Islamic LC.

While defining Accounting Roles for a product you must specify the internal accounts that should be picked up when commissions are collected and when charges are levied.

For an Islamic LC having the operation code ‘Reimbursement’, you will not be able to save commission related details. While saving the contract, the system will display an error message if you enter details in the ICCF screen.

While creating or amending an authorized contract, you can modify the percentage of commission to be charged. Enter the rate and click Re-compute button to recalculate the commission percentage to be charged.

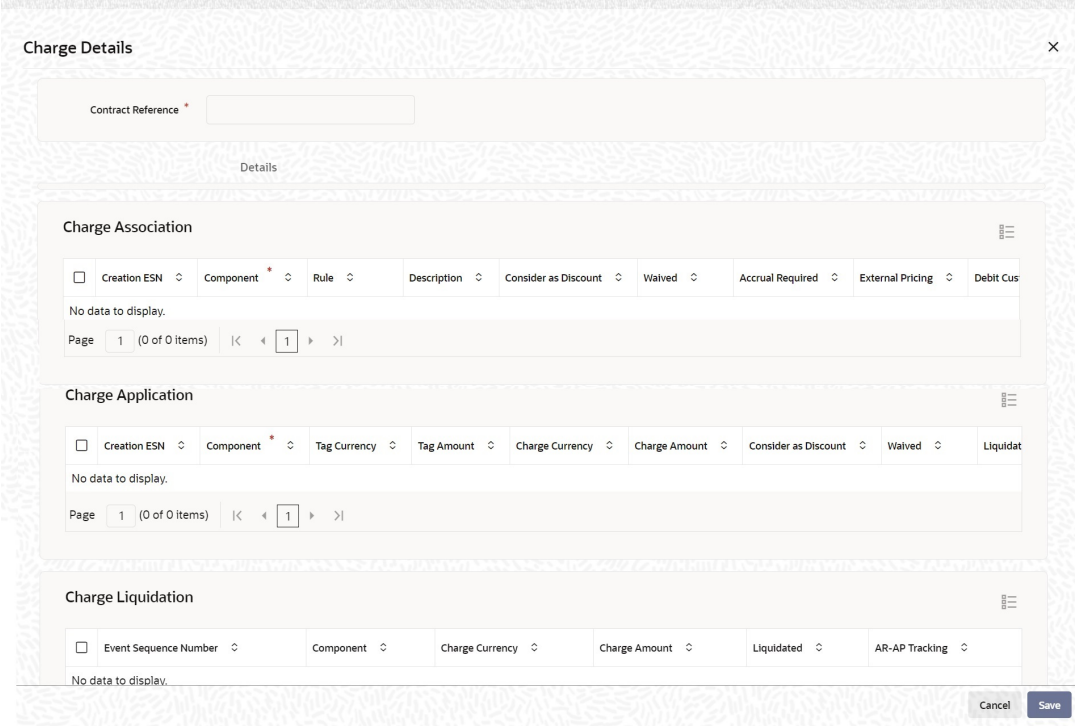
> **Note**
>
> The details of the commissions that can be collected and the procedure of making them applicable to the Islamic LC you are processing has been detailed in the chapter Processing Commissions in the Modularity User Manual.

4. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Charges** button.

   The **Charge Details** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-5 Charge Details

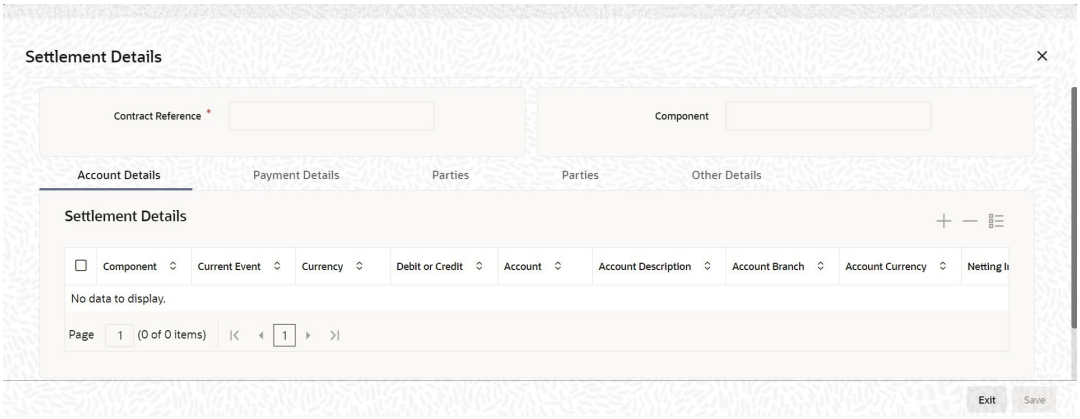


> **Note**
>
> Refer the Charges and Fees User Manual under Modularity for further details about this screen.The ICCF rate, amount, currency and the waive charge parameter can be specified. The Processing Charges and Fees manual, details the procedure for maintaining charge rules. It also deals with the linking of a charge rules to a product and the application of the rule on an LC.

5. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Settlement** button.

   The **Settlement Details** screen is displayed. Based on the details that you enter in the settlement screens the LC will be settled.

Figure 5-6 Settlement Details



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Besides the account details, you can specify:

- **Current Event:**
  Current event of settlements will be checked for the amount tags pertaining to the current event and will be unchecked for the amount tags not pertaining to the current event.
- The currency in which the component is expressed
- The payment account and its currency

> **Note**
>
> If you have specified an account that uses an account class that is restricted for the product, an override is sought.

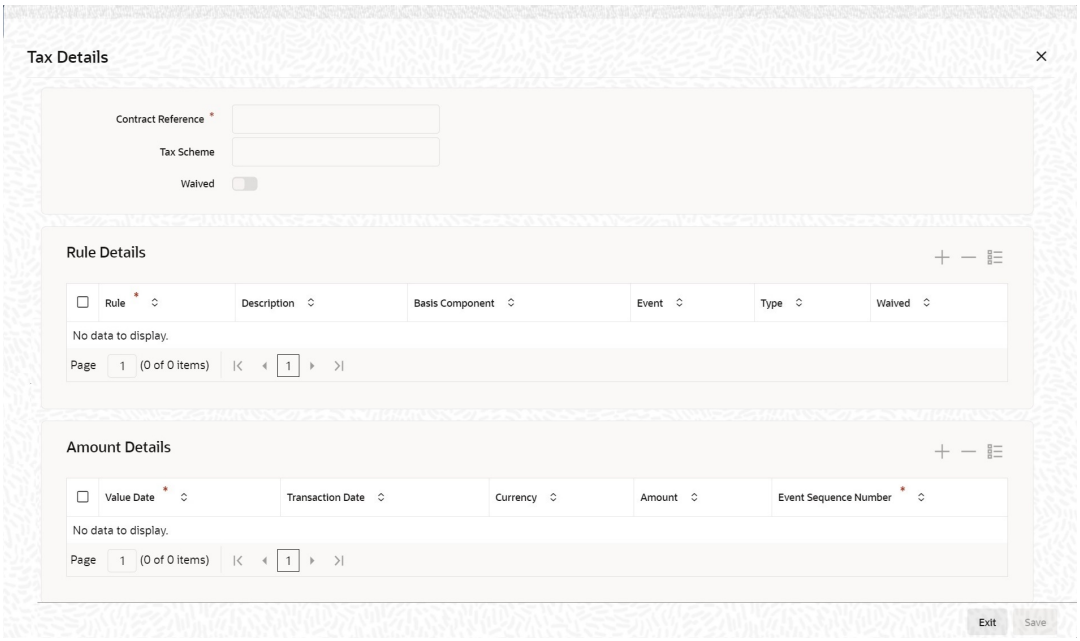
- The branch of your bank to which the account belongs
- The exchange rate (in the case of the component currency being different from the account currency)
- The ERI Currency
- The ERI Amount

> **Note**
>
> Refer to the chapter titled 'Islamic LC Availment' in this user manual for details.

6. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Tax** button.

   The **Tax Details** screen is displayed. The Processing Tax manual details the procedure for maintaining tax rules and schemes. It also deals with the linking of a tax scheme to a product and the application of the scheme on an LC.

Figure 5-7 Tax Details



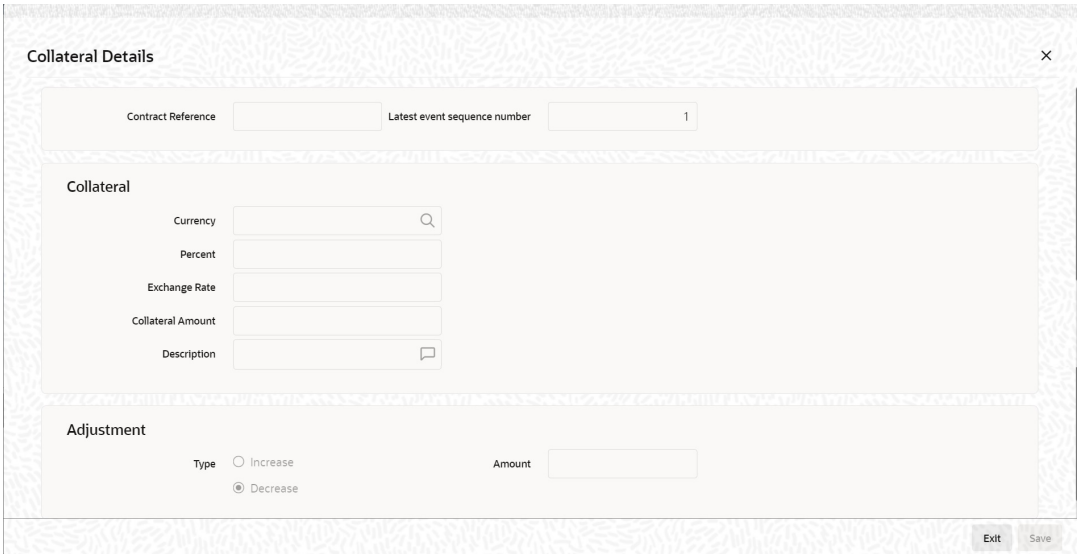
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> Refer the Tax User Manual under Modularity for further details on tax processing.

7. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Collateral** button.

   The **Collateral Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-8 Collateral Details



Islamic LCs that are issued or confirmed is often processed with cash collateral. In cases like a in a Guarantee, you may even take a 100% cash collateral. This is when an applicant is not a customer of your bank and the credit worthiness of the applicant is not known. Details of such cash collateral can be maintained in the Islamic LC Contract - Collateral Details screen.

The cash collateral percentage is defined for the product under which an Islamic LC is processed. This percentage is picked up by default for the Islamic LC being processed.

The cash collateral percentage is defined for the product under which an Islamic LC is processed. This percentage is picked up by default for the Islamic LC being processed.

For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-3 Collateral Details

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The system displays the contract reference number.
Latest event sequence number	The system displays the latest event sequence number.
Specify Value of the Cash Collateral	The value of collateral can be expressed either as an amount or as a percentage of the Islamic LC amount.
Collateral Currency	Specify the currency of the collateral. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-3 (Cont.) Collateral Details

Field	Description
Percentage	If you specify the cash that is to be collected as collateral as a percentage of the Islamic LC amount, the equivalent amount is displayed. This amount is taken to be in the currency, defined as the collateral currency. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	If the collateral currency and the currency in which the Islamic LC is issued are different, you should also specify an exchange rate to be used in the conversion. The value of the collateral is determined based on this exchange rate This field is optional.
Collateral Amount	You can specify the cash collateral as an amount. In this case you do not need to specify a percentage. However if you specified the collateral as a percentage of the Islamic LC amount, the actual amount is computed in the collateral currency by the system. This field is optional.
Description	Give a brief description of the collateral. This field is optional. This field is optional.
Specify Adjustment Details for a Collateral.	At any time during the lifecycle of an Islamic LC, you may want to increase or decrease the value of the cash, accepted as collateral on Islamic LC. This is done by way of an amendment to the Islamic LC. The cash collateral can be increased or decreased, without changing the Islamic LC amount. On the other hand, a change in the Islamic LC amount may necessitate a change to the collateral amount. This field is optional.
Type	If you wish to increase the collateral amount, indicate 'Increase' on this screen. If you wish to decrease the collateral amount that you have collected while issuing an Islamic LC, indicate 'Decrease' on this screen. This field is optional.
Amount	Enter the amount by which you want to increase or decrease the cash accepted as collateral. The collateral deposit account will automatically increase or reduce based on the specifications you make. This field is optional. **Note** If at the time of Availment, you want to pay from the collateral account, you can include it in the accounting entries for the event, Availment.

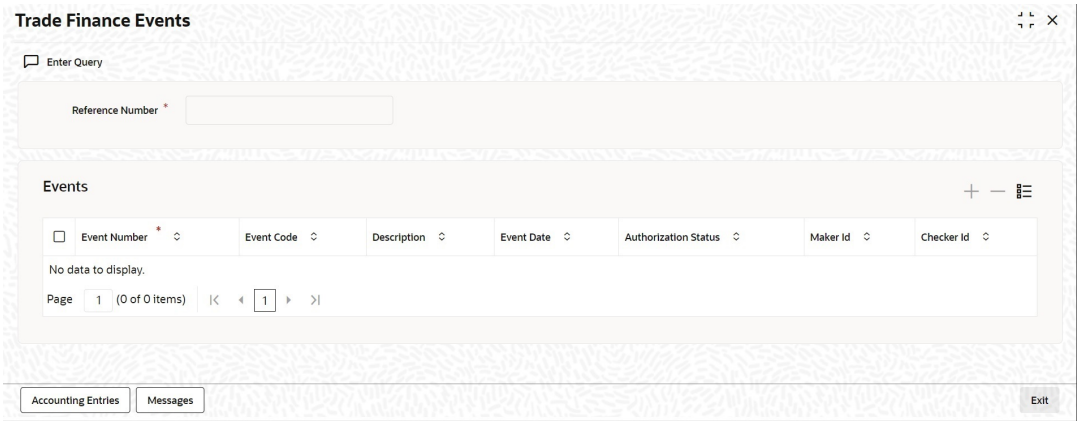
8. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Events** button.

   The **Trade Finance Events** screen is displayed.

> **Note**
>
> On the Homepage, type **CSDTFEVN** in the text box, and click the next arrow to view Trade Finance Events screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-9 Trade Finance Events

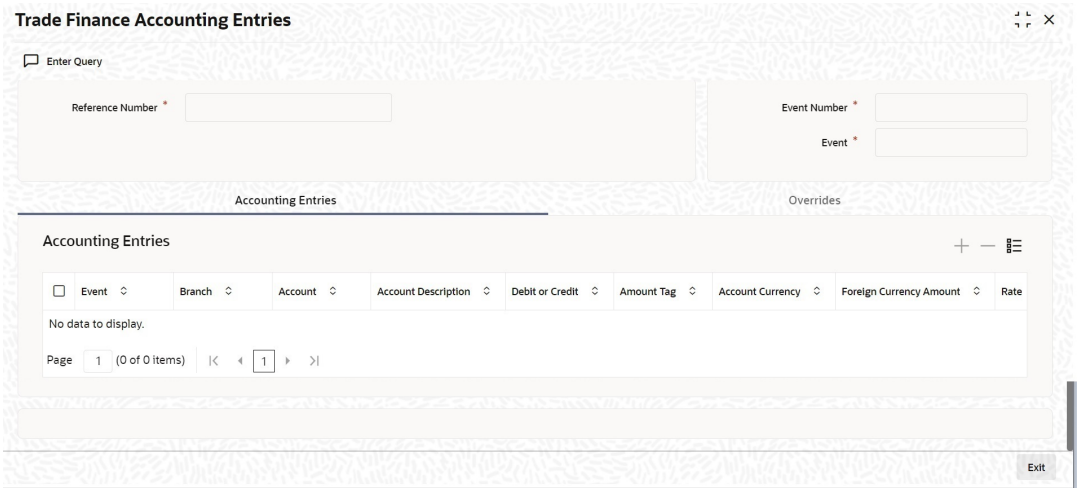


> **Note**
>
> The event details screen of contract processing will show the details of the accounting entries generated for an Islamic LC. The details of events that have already taken place on the contract will be displayed, along with the date on which the event took place.

9. On the **Trade Finance Events** screen, click the **Accounting Entries** to view the accounting entries for the event that is highlighted.

   The **Trade Finance Accounting Entries** screen is displayed. You can view the accounting entries for the event that is highlighted.

Figure 5-10 Trade Finance Accounting Entries



> **Note**
>
> The accounting entries that are passed depend on the type of Islamic LC that you are processing

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

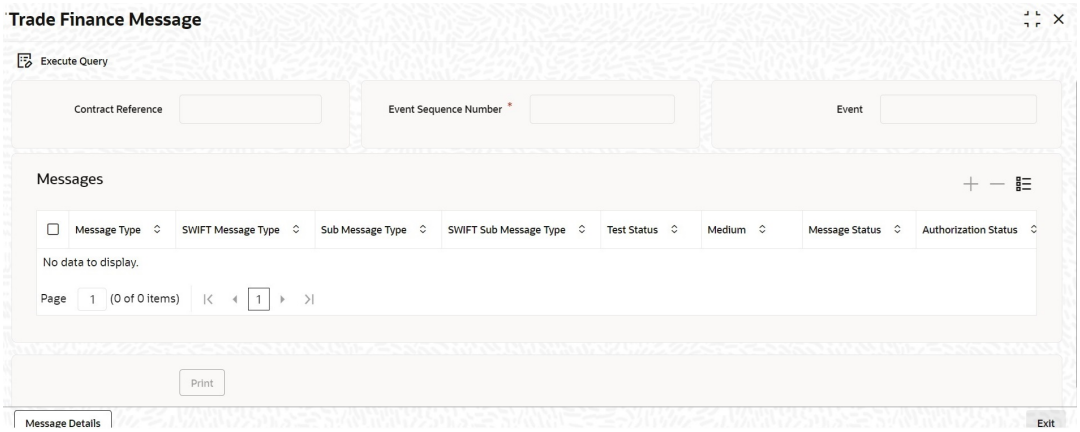
The following information is provided for each event:

- Event
- Branch
- Account
- Account Description
- Debit or Credit
- Amount Tag
- Account Currency
- Foreign Currency Amount
- Rate
- Local Currency Amount
- Date
- Value Date
- Txn Code
- All the overrides that were given for an event will also be displayed

10. Click **Exit** or **Cancel** to navigate to **Trade Finance Events** screen.
11. On the **Trade Finance Events** screen, click the **Messages** button.

    The **Trade Finance Message** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-11 Trade Finance Message



> **Note**
>
> You can view the list of advices applicable to a particular event in the lifecycle of the Islamic LC.

The following details of a message are displayed:

- Message Type

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- SWIFT Message Type
- Sub Message Type
- SWIFT Sub Message Type
- Test Status
- Medium
- Message Status
- Authorization Status
- Receiver
- Receiver Name
- DCN

12. On the **Trade Finance Message** screen, click the **Message Details** button.

    You need to highlight the message to view the text of a message.

    The following details of a message are displayed:

    - Reference Number
    - DCN
    - Event Sequence Number or Version Number
    - Message
    - Receiver or Sender
    - Message Type
    - SWIFT Message Type
    - Sub Message Type
    - SWIFT Sub Message Type
    - Message
    - Remarks
    - Reject Reason
    - Message Trailers

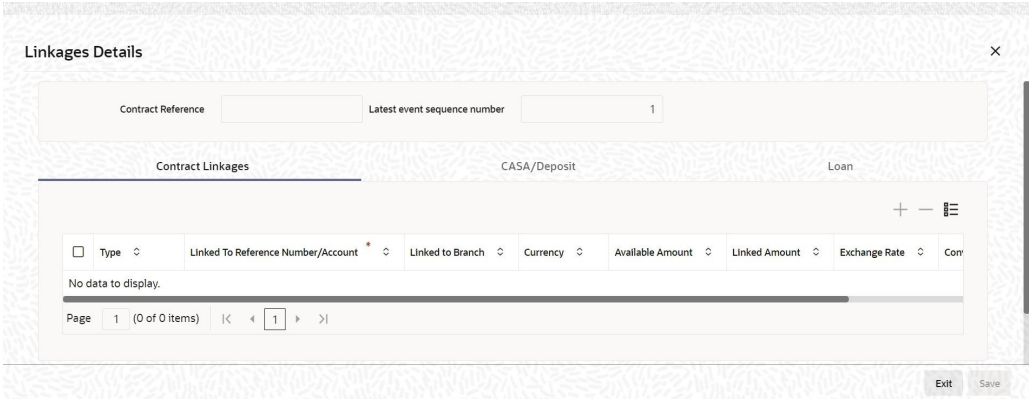
13. Click **Exit** or **Cancel** to exit the screen.
14. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the Linkage Details button.

    The **Linkage Details** screen is displayed.
    In the **Linkage Details** screen, specify the type of linkage

    - **Contract Linkage**
      Linkage type grouped under contract linkages are:
      - Shipping guarantee
      - LI
      - EL

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

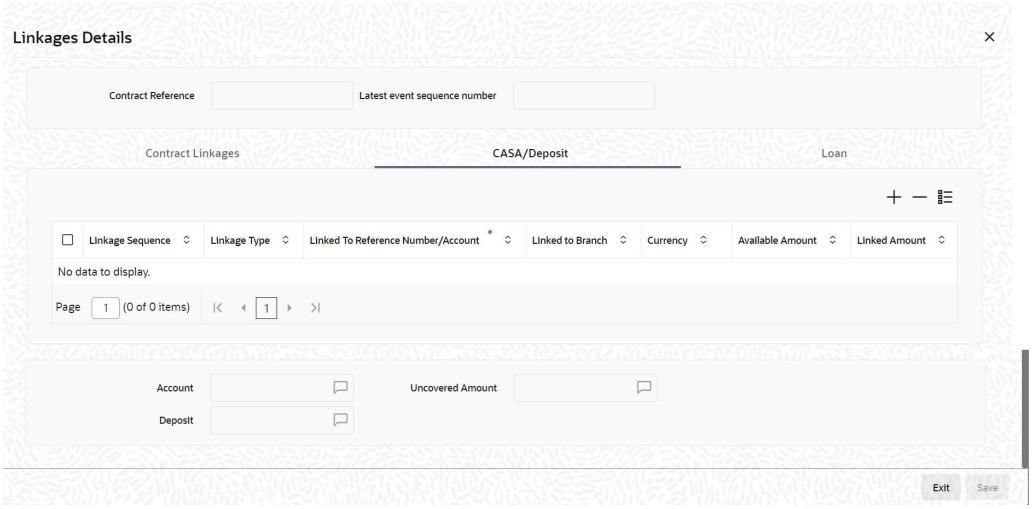
Figure 5-12 Linkage Details-Contract Linkage



For export LC, note the following:

- Export type of LC is the only option displayed in the option-list.
- The system allows Export LC for linkage only for bills under reimbursement type of LC.
- An overriding message is displayed if any outstanding advising charges are collected at the time of bill lodgment or liquidation. This override message is only for Import Bills under LC. Link the export LC from the Linkages Details screen and perform the charges transfer.NOTE: For shipping guarantee, if the bill amount is less than the shipping guarantee amount, an error will be displayed. In case the bill amount is more than the shipping guarantee amount, an overriding message is displayed.
- **CASA/Deposit**
  Linkage type grouped under CASA/ Deposit linkages are:
  - CASA
  - CD

Figure 5-13 CASA/Deposit



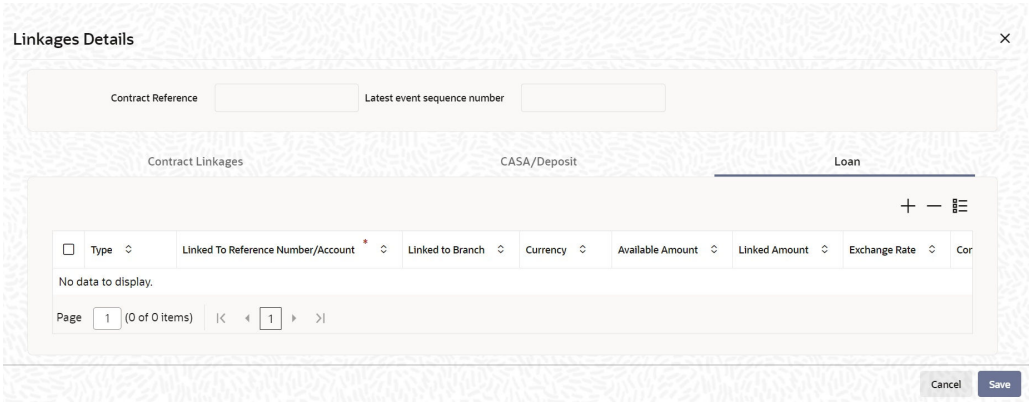
CASA/Deposit tab links one or more active, authorized deposit or CASA accounts.

- **Loans**
  Linkage type grouped under Loans linkages are:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- OL
- Buyers Credit Reference

Figure 5-14 Loans



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-4 Linkage Details

Field	Description
Linkage Sequence	The Linkage Sequence number of a linked type.
Type	In the **Contract Linkages** screen, you can specify the type of linkage. The possible values are: Linkage Type grouped under contract linkages are: – Shipping Guarantee – LC – LI – EL Linkage Type grouped under CASA/Deposit are: – CASA – CD Linkage Type grouped under CASA/Deposit are: – OL – CL – CI – Buyers Credit Reference –
Linked To Reference Number/Account	Specify the contract/account to which you wish to link the LC.
Currency	The currency of the linkage type to which the LC is linked is displayed once the linkage details are specified.
Available Amount	The system displays the amount available against the linked contract or account.
Linked Amount	Specify the linked amount linked to trade contract
Exchange Rate	Exchange rate denotes the rate applied to convert the linked amount in trade currency.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-4 (Cont.) Linkage Details

Field	Description
Converted Linked Amount	If the linked contract is in a different currency (than that of the bill), the system will convert the account/contract amount into the billing currency and display it here.
Account/Deposit	The system displays the amount linked to each contract or account. This displays only for CASA/Deposit.

- Create Deposit/Create amount block request is send on linking the Deposit contract or CASA accounts
- Close Deposit/Close amount block request is send on delinking the deposit contracts or CASA accounts.
- Linkages will be delinked automatically during Closure/Cancel/Rollover/Contract reversal.
- Close Deposit /Close amount block followed by Create Deposit/Create amount block is send when there is change in linked amount either manually or proportionate change based on events(availment/amendment/claim lodgment of LC/Guarantee).

15. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Fields** button.

    The **Fields** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-15 Fields

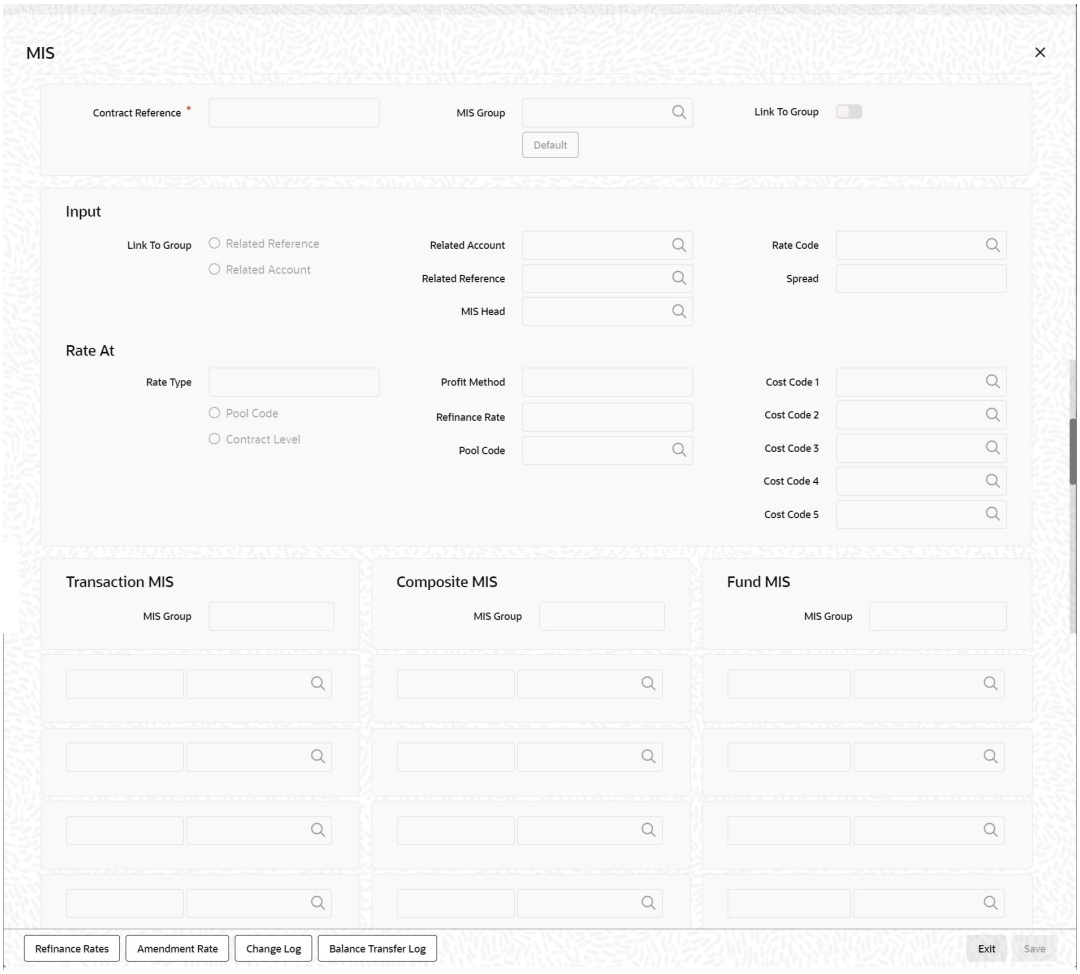
> **Note**
>
> The User Defined Fields (UDFs) maintained for the linked function id are displayed here. You can specify values for them. Refer the User Manual titled User Defined Field for details about defining UDFs.

16. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **MIS** button.

    The **MIS** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-16 MIS

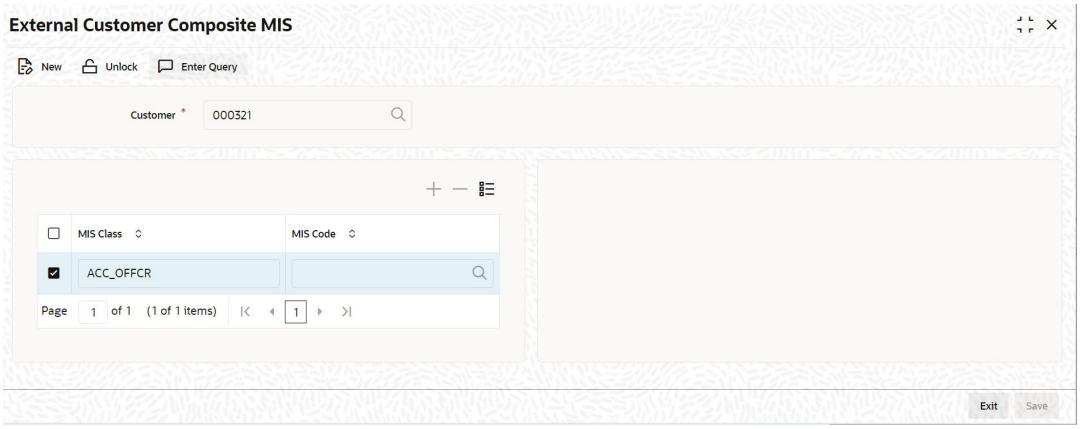


> **Note**
>
> Refer the MIS User Manual for further details on capturing MIS details.

A new common screen STDCRCMI (External Customer Composite MIS) is introduced to capture the Customer Composite MIS at customer level. If the following is maintained in this screen then the same will be defaulted while creation of a contract. If it is not maintained, then the same will be defaulted from the generic existing MIS Screen which happens to be the existing behavior.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

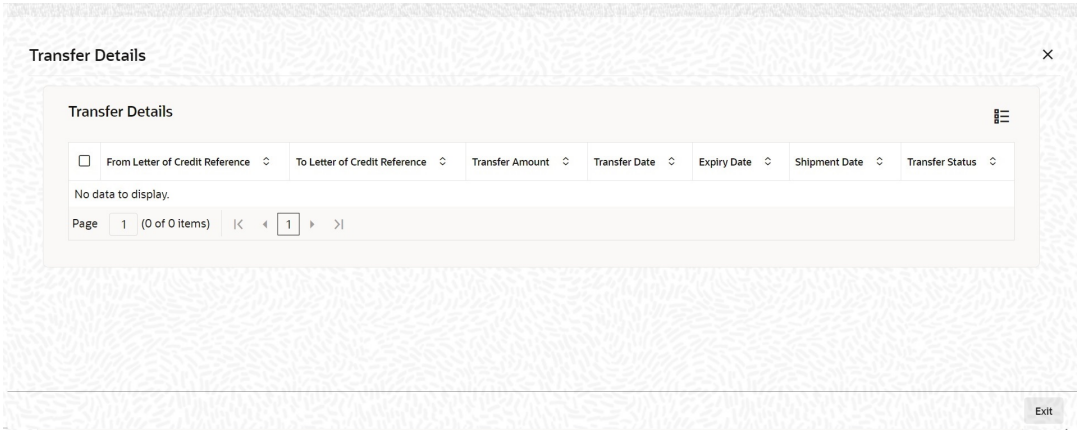
Figure 5-17 External Customer Composite MIS



17. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Transfer Details** button.

    The **Transfer Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-18 Transfer Details



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-5 Transfer Details - Field Description

Field	Description
From Letter Of Credit Reference	Specify the destination from which the goods transacted under the Islamic LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
To Letter Of Credit Reference	Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the Islamic LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
Transfer Amount	Specify the amount that should be transferred from the original Islamic LC. You can only transfer an amount that is less than or equal to the amount available under the original Islamic LC. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

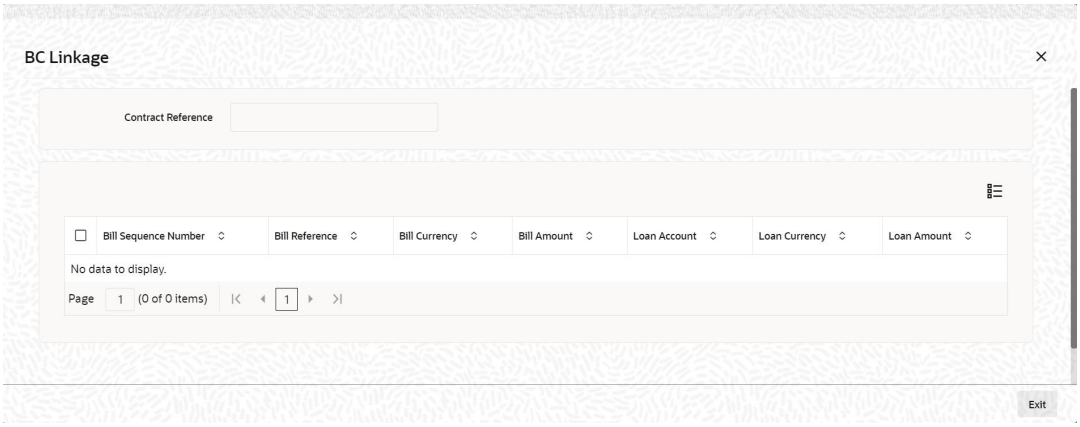
Table 5-5 (Cont.) Transfer Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Transfer Date	The system date is displayed as the date of the transfer. This cannot be modified. This field is optional.
Expiry Date	The expiry date is the date up to which the transferred Islamic LC is valid. The expiry date of the original Islamic LC is displayed here. You can modify this, provided that the expiry date is not earlier than the Islamic LC issue date or the system date. This field is optional.
Shipment Date	This is the latest date by which the shipment of the goods specified for the transferred Islamic LC can take place. The latest shipment date of the original Islamic LC is displayed here. You can modify this, provided that the date you enter is neither earlier than the Issue Date of the Islamic LC, nor later than the expiry date. This field is optional.
Transfer Status	The system displays the transfer status. This field is optional.

18. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **IB Linkages** button.

The **BC Linkage** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-19 BC Linkage



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-6 BC Linkage

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The system displays the Contract Reference Number of the Islamic LC.
Bill Reference	The system displays the BC reference number booked for the Islamic LC.
Bill Currency	The system displays the bill currency booked for the Islamic LC.
Bill Amount	The system displays the bill amount booked for the Islamic LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-6 (Cont.) BC Linkage

Field	Description
Loan Account	The system displays the loan account booked for the Islamic BC.
Loan Currency	The system displays the loan currency booked for the Islamic BC.
Loan Amount	The system displays the loan amount booked for the Islamic BC.

19. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Split Settlement** button.

Split Settlement Master details get populated for the Cash collateral. User needs to provide the split details for the Split Master Basis Amount.
During Cancel or Close, the outstanding collateral will be refunded to the customer accounts.

Split Settlement Master and Split Settlement Details get populated for the Charges and Commmission component if split flag is checked in the respective subsystems.System will default the split settlement details with two splits for a charge/commission component one for counterparty and another one for Other party.System will default split amount 50% of charge/commission component between parties.User can modify the amount and and percentage will be derived based on modified amount. If AR-AP is unchecked for a component then Split account will default with settlement instructions of Customer and Split Account can be modified to another valid account of the Customer.If AR-AP is checked then Split account will be defaulted with AR-AP GL and Split account cannot be modified.Maximum of two splits is allowed for Charges and Commission components.

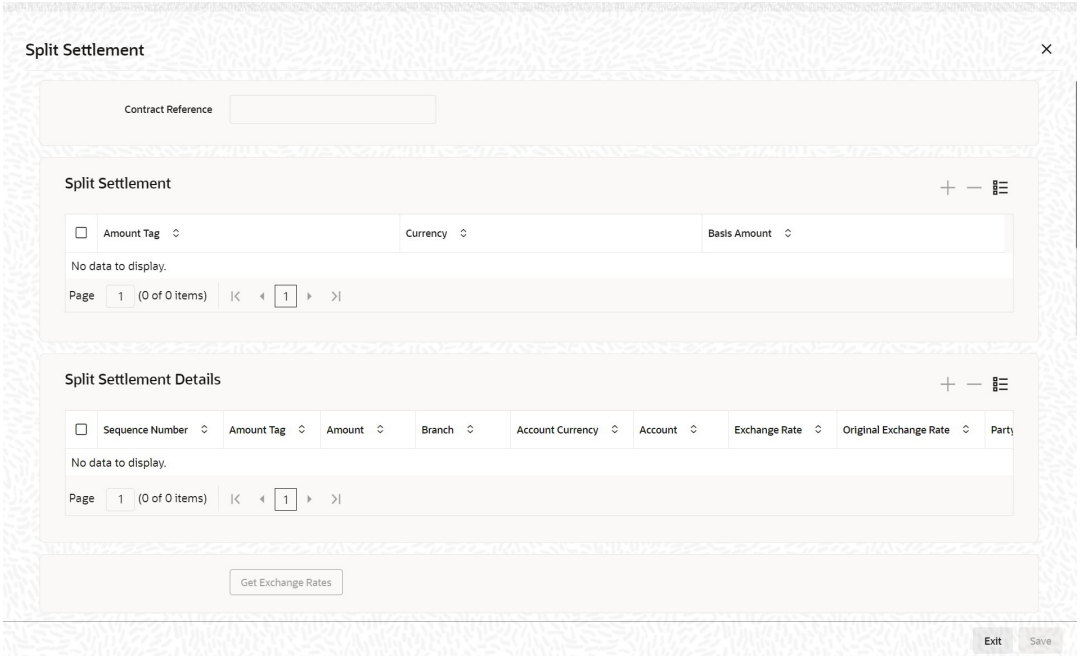
Table 5-7 Party Type Derivation for Charges and Commission

Category	Counter Party	Other Party	Other Party Resolution
Import LC Issuance	APP	BEN/ABK	If Beneficiary is a bank customer else Advising bank
Export LC Advise	BEN	APP/ISB	If Applicant is a bank customer else Issuing bank

The **Split Settlement** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-20 Split Settlement

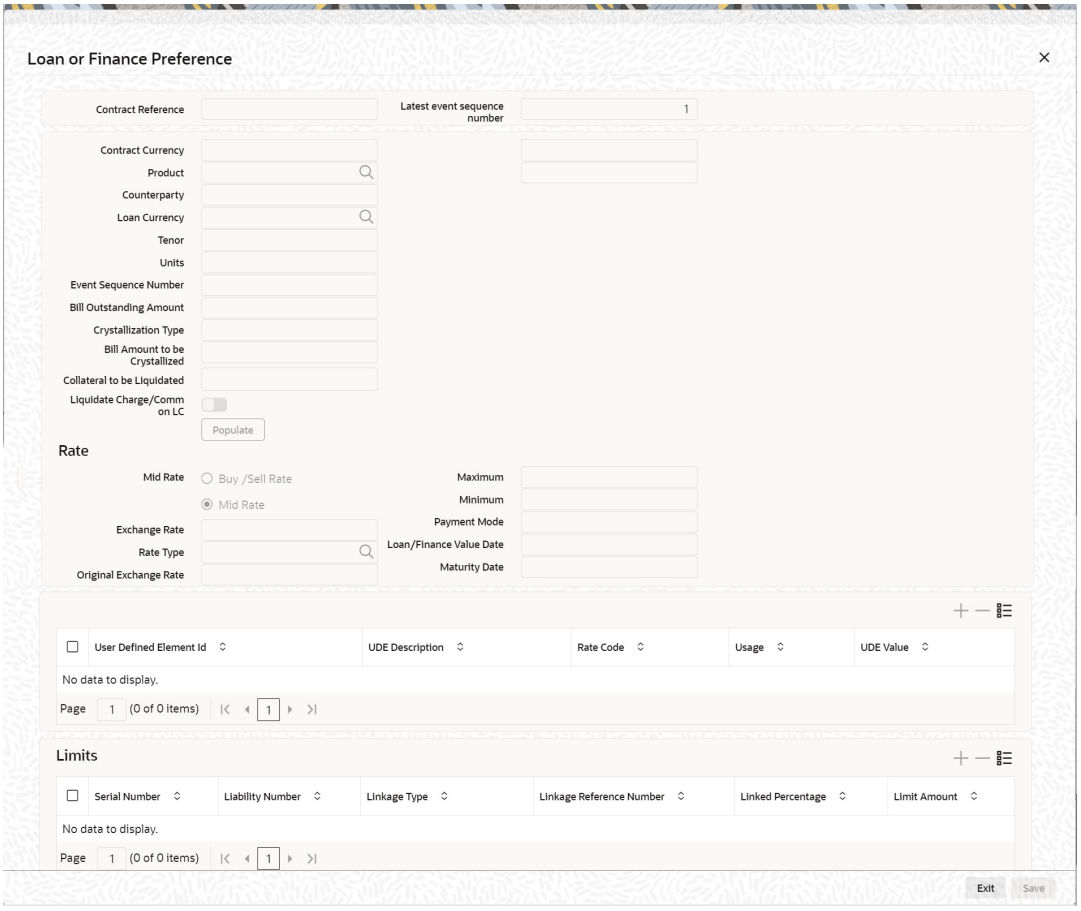


20. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Finance Preference** button.

    The **Loan or Finance Preference** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-21 Loan or Finance Preference



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-8 Loan or Finance Preference - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The system displays the contract reference number here. This field is optional.
Latest Sequence Number	The system generates a sequence number and displays it here. This field is optional.
Contract Currency	The system will display the local currency of the Branch in which the finance is initiated. You cannot change this value.
Product	The loan product is displayed here. However, you can change the loan product if required. Specify the loan product that should be used for loan contract creation. The option list gives a list of loan products maintained in the Consumer Lending module. Choose the appropriate one. This field is optional.
Counterparty	The system displays the customer ID (CIF) of the shipping guarantee. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-8 (Cont.) Loan or Finance Preference - Field Description

Field	Description
Loan Currency	Specify the currency in which the loan should be initiated. The option list gives a list of valid currency codes maintained in the system. Choose the appropriate one. This field is optional.
Tenor	Specify the loan tenor. By default the system displays the OL product tenor. However, you can change it. This field is optional.
Units	Specify the loan tenor. By default the system displays the LC tenor. However, you can change it. This field is optional.
Event Sequence Number	The system displays the event sequence number. This field is optional.
Bill Outstanding Amount	The bill outstanding amount is displayed here.
Rate	You can capture the exchange rate details here. This field is optional.
Middle Rate	Select the rate to be applied for conversion. The options available are Middle rate and Buy/Sell Rate. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	For a customer availing any Relationship Pricing scheme, the customer specific exchange rate derived by adding the original exchange rate and the customer spread maintained for the relationship pricing scheme gets displayed here. If Relationship Pricing is not applicable, Exchange Rate will be the same as the Original Exchange Rate. For more details on customer specific exchange rates, refer the section titled 'Specifying Pricing Benefit Details' in Relationship Pricing user manual. This field is optional.
Rate Type	Specify the rate type used for exchange rate. The list gives a list of rate types. Choose the appropriate one. The default rate type is Standard. The Rate Type indicates whether the rate to be applied for the conversion is the Buy rate, Mid Rate or the Sell Rate. Select the appropriate rate type from the drop down list. This field is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The base or the actual exchange rate between the contract currency and collateral currency gets displayed here. This field is optional.
Party Type	System defaults this field for Charges and Commission components if split flag is checked in respective components. This field is applicable only for charges and commission components.
AR-AP Tracking	System defaults this field for charges and commission components based upon the AR-AP tracking selection in charges and commission component when split flag is checked in respective components. This field is applicable only for Charges and Commission components.
Payment Mode	Specify the mode of payment.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-8 (Cont.) Loan or Finance Preference - Field Description

Field	Description
Loan/Finance Value Date	The system will display the debit value date. However, you can amend this field. For tracking the receivable from the current date, the system will create the finance one day prior to the debit value date and liquidate on the debit value date. In such cases, you can specify the finance value date as 1 day prior to the debit value date, so that, the system will create This field is optional.
Maturity Date	The system computes the maturity date based on loan tenor and displays it here. However, you can change it. This field is optional.
Maturity Account	You should specify the settlement account for the finance. You can choose a valid account number from the list of values that is available.
Event Sequence Number	The system displays the event sequence number.
Customer	The system displays the contract customer ID.
Customer Name	The system displays the contract customer name.
Currency Description	The system displays the description of the currency.
Units	Specify the units in which the tenor is specified.
Preferences for Profit Components	Specify the preferences for profit components.
Component	The component gets defaulted from the BC product level.
Description	The description for the component also gets defaulted from the product level.
Rate Type	You can indicate the profit rate type that is to be picked up and applied to the finance contracts involving the product. The options available for the rate type are: • Fixed • Floating • Special Choose the appropriate option from the drop-down list.
Rate Code	Profit of the contract is computed on the basis of the Rate code associated with it. This field is enabled only if you have opted for 'Floating' rate type for the finance.
Basis	The profit basis indicates the method in which the tenor for profit has to be calculated, if their application is tenor based. It could be one of the following: • (Euro)/360 • (US)/360 • Actual/360 • (Euro)/365 • (US)/365 • Actual/365 • (Euro)/Actual • (US)/Actual • Actual/Actual The Profit Basis defined for the product involved in the contract will be displayed. You can change it here to suit the bill you are processing. The minimum/maximum rate specified in the finance product underlying the contract has to be adhered to.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-8 (Cont.) Loan or Finance Preference - Field Description

Field	Description
Rate	In case you choose the rate type as Fixed, you can specify the rate that is to be used for computing the profit of the contract.
Usage	The usage indicates the time at which the rate change has to be applied to the finance contract in case the profit is floating rate type. The options available are: • Auto - rate change is triggered automatically when the rate associated with a rate code changes. • Periodic – rate change is triggered at pre-defined dates.
Spread	You have to indicate the spread that can be applied on the floating rate.
Amount	In the case of 'Special' rate type, the profit component is expressed as an amount and not as a rate. This amount should be specified when the finance is liquidated.

When a new finance contract is created the following accounting entries are passed.

Table 5-9 Accounting Entries

Event Code	Dr/Cr Indicator	Accounting Role	Amount Tag
DSBR	DR	FINANCE ASSET GL	PRINCIPAL
DSBR	CR	BRIDGE GL	PRINCIPAL

If a bill contract is booked with Advance by Finance option is not checked at the contract level, then the following accounting entries are passed:

Table 5-10 Accounting Entries

Event Code	Dr/Cr Indicator	Accounting Role	Amount Tag
LIQD	DR	BC CUSTOMER	BILL_AMOUNT (or) BILL_AMT_EQUIV
LIQD	CR	NOSTRO	BILL_AMOUNT (or) BILL_AMT_EQUIV

If a bill contract is booked with Advance by Finance option is checked at the contract level, then the following accounting entries are passed:

Table 5-11 Accounting Entries

Event Code	Dr/Cr Indicator	Accounting Role	Amount Tag
LIQD	DR	BRIDGE GL	BILL_LIQ_AMT (or) BILL_LIQ_AMTEQ
LIQD	CR	NOSTRO	BILL_LIQ_AMT (or) BILL_LIQ_AMTEQ

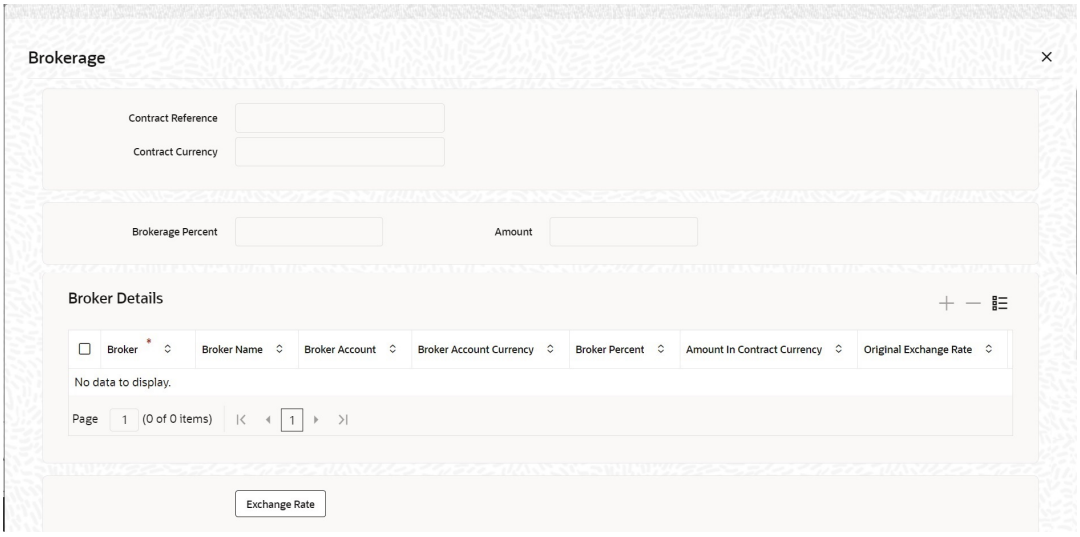
When a finance is booked against a bill the event 'BLNK- Bill Linkage to Finance' is triggered. There will be no advice or accounting entries passed for this event. If the finance linked with the bill is reversed then the event 'BLRV- Bill Linkage reversal to Finance' is triggered. You cannot reverse a bill if there is a Finance linked to the bill that has not been reversed. Once the finance is reversed you will be allowed to reverse the bill.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

21. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Brokerage** button.

    The **Brokerage** screen is displayed. You can capture brokerage details for the Islamic LC contract and set your preferences for sharing the brokerage amount among multiple brokers.

Figure 5-22 Brokerage



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-12 Brokerage Details

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The system displays the reference number of the contract This is optional.
Contract Currency	The system displays the currency of the bills contract. You cannot modify the contract currency. This is optional.
Brokerage Percentage	Specify the percentage of the contract amount that should be paid as brokerage. Based on the percentage set here, the system calculates the brokerage amount. The brokerage amount calculation takes place at the Bills contract level. In case of Bills contracts, you may directly enter the brokerage amount. However, if you specify the brokerage percentage as well as the amount, the system ignores the amount and calculates it afresh based on the percentage specified here. This is optional.
Brokerage Amount	Specify the brokerage amount to be paid. However, if you have entered the brokerage percentage, the system ignores the amount mentioned here and calculates it afresh based on the brokerage percentage. You can directly enter the contract amount for Bills contracts only. In case of Islamic LC contracts, the system displays the amount based on the brokerage percentage and contract amount. You cannot modify the brokerage amount in that case. This is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-12 (Cont.) Brokerage Details

Field	Description
Brokerage Details	You can share the brokerage amount among multiple brokers. Click add button to add more brokers to the list.You can define the percentage of brokerage amount to be paid to each broker selected under this list. This is optional.
Broker	Specify the broker ID. The option list displays all valid broker IDs maintained in the system. Choose the appropriate one. You can maintain multiple records for the same broker ID. This field is mandatory.
Broker Name	Based on the broker ID selected, the system displays the name of the broker. This is optional.
Broker Account	Specify the broker account. The option list displays all valid accounts maintained for the selected broker along with the Nostro accounts and GLs for which posting is allowed. Choose the appropriate one. This is optional.
Broker Account Currency	The system displays the currency of the selected broker account. This is optional.
Broker Percent	Specify the percentage of total brokerage amount that should be paid to the selected broker. This will make the selected broker eligible for that percentage of the total brokerage amount shown above. You can allot a specific percentage of the brokerage to each broker selected here. The system will verify whether the percentages allotted for all brokers together equals to 100 or not. This is optional.
Amount in Account Currency	The system displays the portion of brokerage amount allotted to the selected broker in terms of local currency. This is optional.
Exchange Rate	The system displays the exchange rate between the local currency and the account currency. This rate is used to convert the brokerage amount into the account currency. You can modify the exchange rate. This is optional.
Amount in contract currency	The system calculates and displays the portion of brokerage amount allotted to the selected broker in terms of contract currency. This is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The system displays the actual exchange rate. This rate is inclusive of all available customer spreads. This is optional.
Negotiated Rate	Specify the rate of exchange agreed upon after the negotiations with the broker. The system will display an override message if the negotiated rate is not within the exchange rate variance maintained at the product. This is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

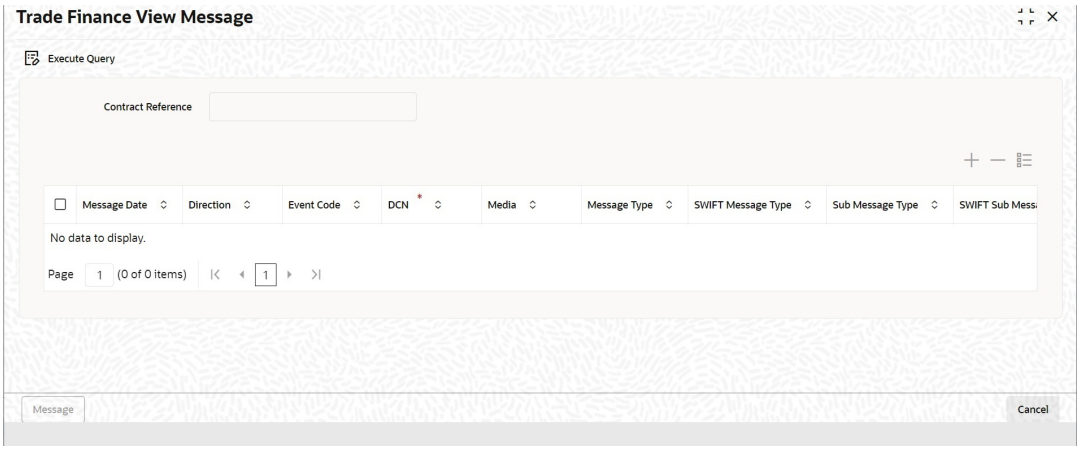
Table 5-12 (Cont.) Brokerage Details

Field	Description
Negotiation Reference Number	Specify the negotiation reference number. Once you have captured the details, save the contract. The system allows modification of brokerage details until its liquidation. The system will default the brokerage details to the bill contracts associated with this Islamic LC. You may modify the brokerage details at the bills contract level. You can use Exchange Rate button to get the exchange rates between the broker account currency and bill currency for all the brokers listed in the screen. The system defaults the brokerage details in Split Settlements screen. Those details are then used in settlements. You can enter the routing details for the messages in case the settlement takes place through Nostro account. If you modify the default brokerage details in Split Settlements screen, the system displays an error message. During liquidation of the brokerage, the system generates credit advices for each of the brokers involved. This is optional.
Remarks	Specify remarks, if any.
Liquidation Status	The system displays the liquidation status.

22. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **All Messages** button.

The **Trade Finance View Message** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-23 Trade Finance View Message



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-13 Trade Finance View Message - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	Displays Reference number of the contract, for which messages are generated. This is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

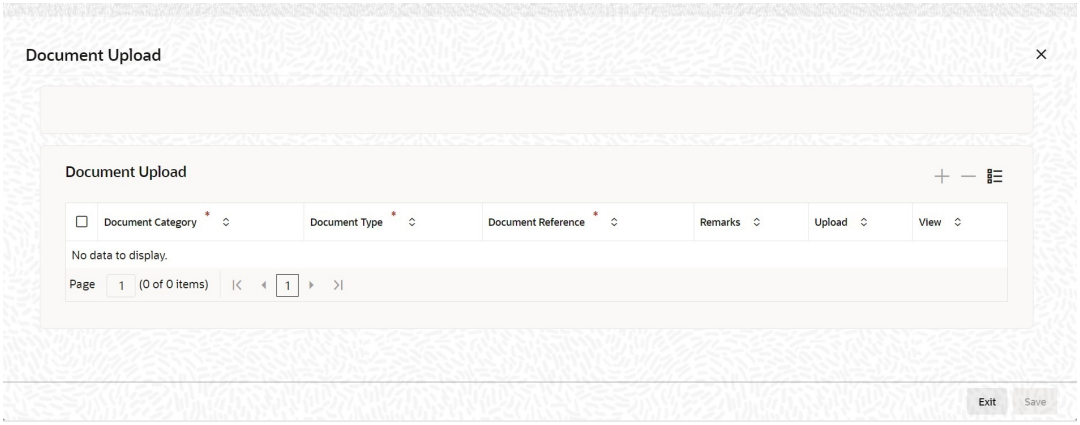
Table 5-13 (Cont.) Trade Finance View Message - Field Description

Field	Description
Message Date	Displays the message generation date or received date This is optional.
Direction	Displays whether the message is an incoming or outgoing message. This is optional.
Event Code	It displays the event code of a contract. This is optional.
DCN	Displays document reference number of a contract. This is optional.
Media	Displays whether the message is swift message or mail message. This is optional.
Message Type	Displays the type of message. This is optional.
SWIFT Message Type	Displays the Swift MT number of the message sent or received. This is optional.
Receiver/ Sender	Displays Receiver or Sender ID. This is optional.
Name	Displays the name of the Sender or Receiver. This is optional.
Message Status	Displays current status of message. This is optional.
Test Status	Displays the test status. This is optional.
Authorization Status	System displays whether the status is authorized or unauthorized. This is optional.
Acknowledgement Status	Displays the acknowledgement status of a message This is optional.
PDE Flag	Displays the PDE flag. This is optional.

23. Click **View** to view the document uploaded.
24. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Documents** button.

    The **Document Upload** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-24 Document Upload

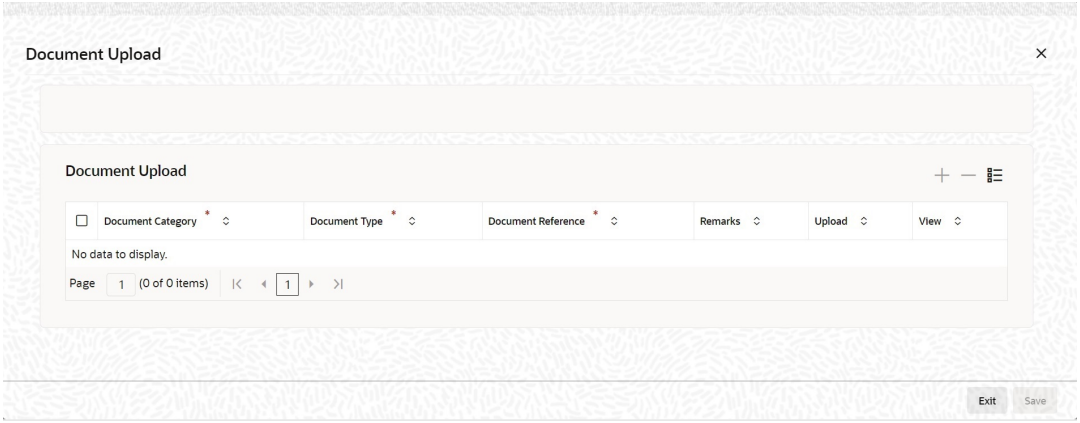


Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

25. On the **Document Upload** screen, click **Upload** button.

    You can to capture the customer related documents in central content management repository.

Figure 5-25 Document Upload



26. Specify the document field details and click **OK**.

    You can capture the customer related documents in central content management repository through the **Document Upload** screen.
    For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-14 Document Upload

Field	Description
Document Category	Specify the category of the document to be uploaded. This field is mandatory.
Document Type	Specify the type of document that is to be uploaded. This field is mandatory.
Document Reference	The system generates and displays a unique identifier for the document. This field is mandatory.
Remarks	Specify the additional information, if any. This field is mandatory.

27. Specify the corresponding document path and click the **Submit** button.

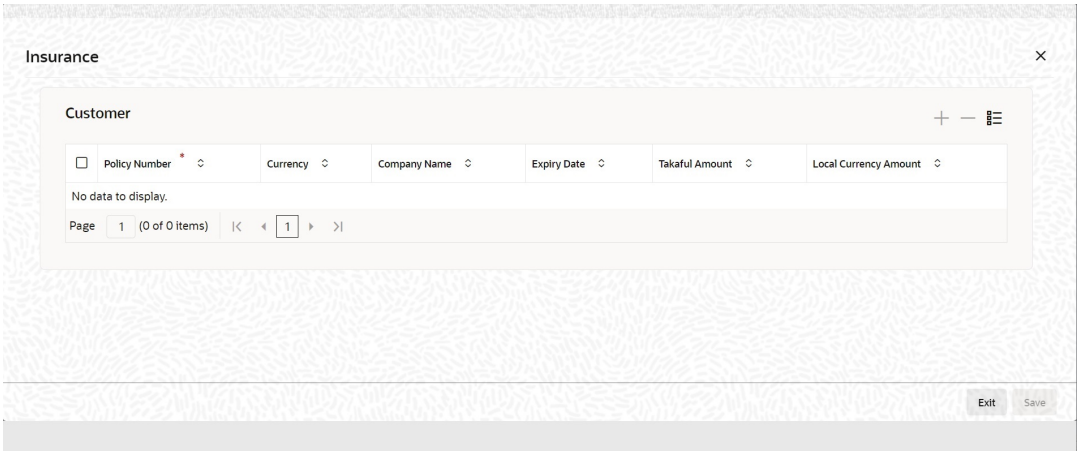
    Once the document is uploaded through the **Upload** button, the system displays the document reference.

28. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Takaful** button.

    The **Insurance** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-26 Insurance



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 5-15 Insurance

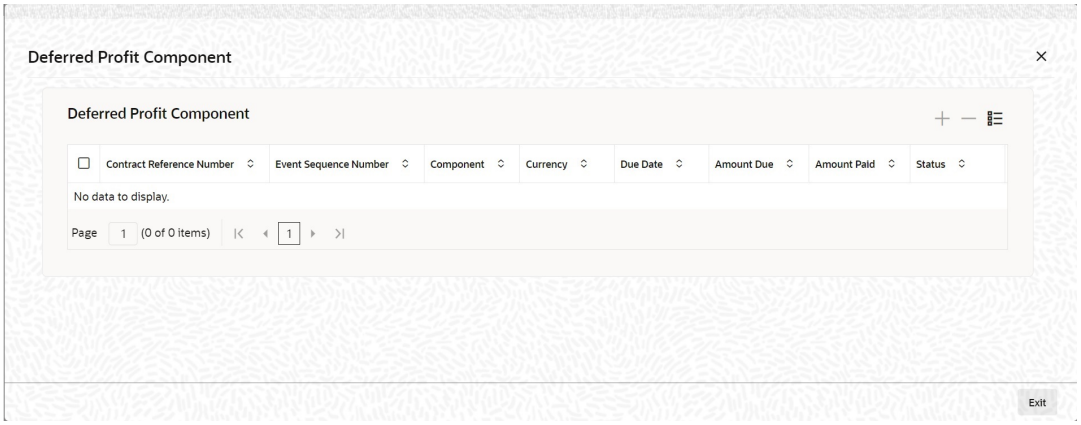
Field	Description
Policy Number	Specify the insurance policy number here. The option list displays all insurance policy codes maintained in the system. If you check the option 'Open Policy' the option list will display the open insurance policies maintained in the system. You can select the appropriate one. If you have checked the 'Open Policy' option and the policy number is specified here is invalid (i.e. not maintained in the 'Open Policy Maintenance' screen) or blank, the system will display an error message.
Currency	Specify the currency.
Company Name	Specify the Insurance Company to be associated with the Islamic LC.
Expiry Date	Enter the expiry date of the Policy.
Takaful Amount	Specify the takaful amount.
Local Currency Amount	Specify the local currency amount.

29. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Deferred Profit Component** button.

    The **Deferred Profit Component** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-27 Deferred Profit Component



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

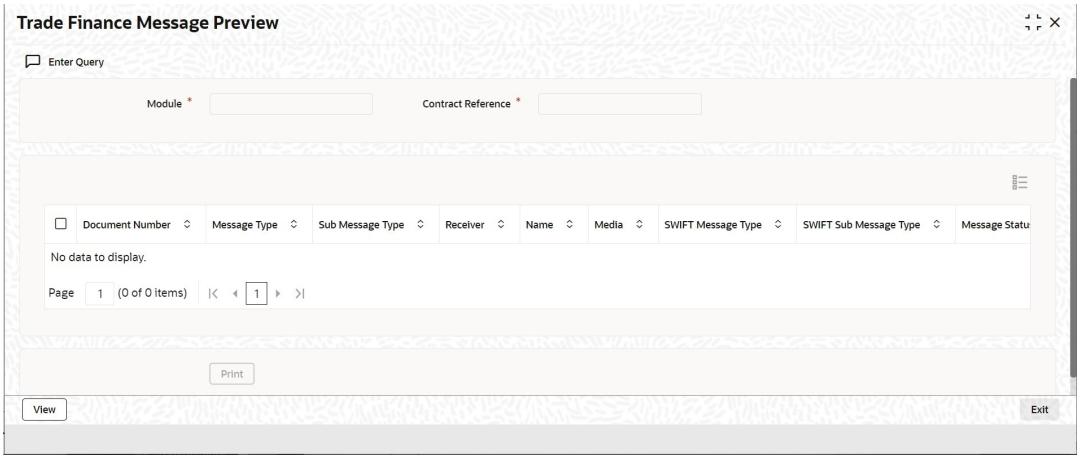
Table 5-16 Deferred Profit Component

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	The system displays the contract reference number.
Event Sequence Number	The system displays the event sequence number.
Component	The system displays the component.
Currency	The system displays the currency.
Due Date	The system displays the due date.
Amount Due	The system displays the amount due.
Amount Paid	The system displays the amount paid.
Status	The system displays the status.
Liquidation Date	The system displays the liquidation date.

30. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Message Preview** button.

For the contract, you can view the following details of the messages:

Figure 5-28 Trade Finance Message Preview



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- The document number generated for the message/advice
- Type of message generated for the event
- Customer ID of the receiver of the message/advice
- Name of the receiver of the message/advice
- Media of transmitting the message/advice (Mail/SWIFT)
- SWIFT message type of the message
- Status of the message/advice

You cannot preview the message after the authorization of the contract.

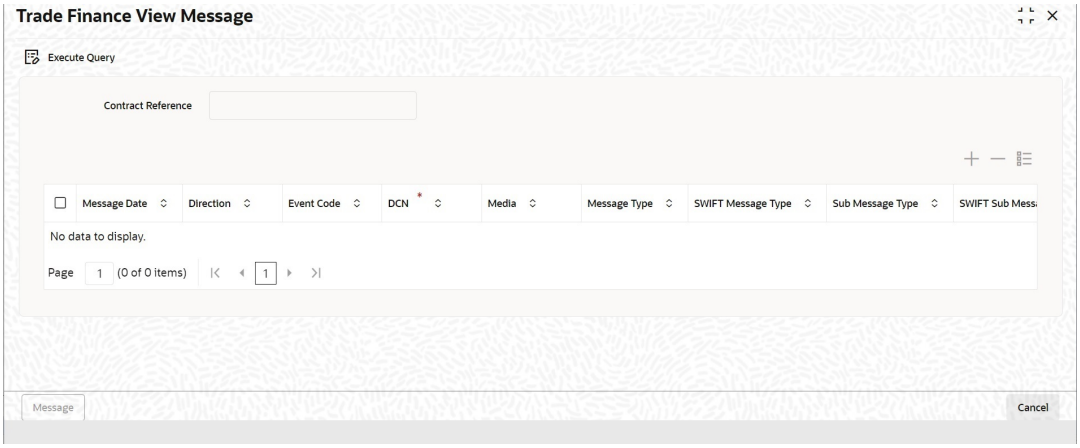
For preview of SWIFT MT700 and MT760 messages on hold, you need to view the Advices/ Settlement/Commission/ Charges/Interest or Collateral sub-screen after contract input. The system performs the required validations and after that, you can keep the contract on hold and view the message in 'Message Preview' sub-screen.

Message preview functionality is available on save for all the Islamic LC module transactions and preview available for MT700 and MT 760 for hold transactions also. Along with the preview option, you will also be allowed to print the required message/advice from the preview screen.

31. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **View** button.

The **Trade Finance View Message** screen is displayed. You can preview the messages/ advices.

Figure 5-29 Trade Finance View Message



You can view the following details:

- Reference number of the message/advice
- Document number generated for the message/advice
- Version number of the message/advice
- Receiver/sender of the message
- Type of the message
- Type of the SWIFT message
- Complete text of the message/advice

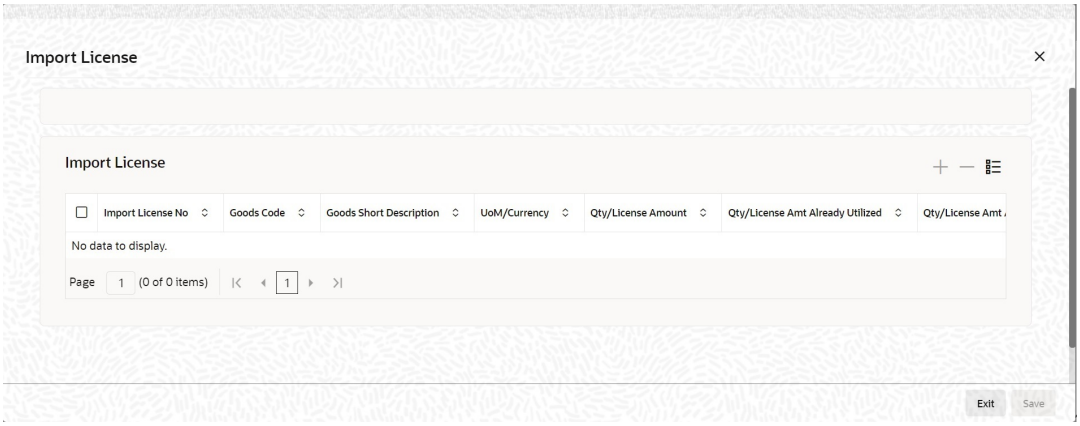
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Remarks, if any
- Reject reason, if any
- Message trailer

32. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Import License** button.

The **Import License** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-30 Import License



> **Note**
>
> You can capture import license details.You can link the import license to an import Islamic LC contract and update the utilization amount or quantity for the linked import licenses. You can utilize multiple import licenses for an import Islamic LC.

Table 5-17 Import License

Field	Description
Import License No	Select the import license number from the option list.The import licenses maintained for the party type Applicant in the Import License Maintenance screen is displayed in the option list. This field is optional.
Goods Code	Select the goods code from the option list. This field is optional.
Goods Short Description	The system displays the goods short description maintained in the Bills and Collections Commodity Code Maintenance screen. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-17 (Cont.) Import License

Field	Description
UoM/Currency	The system displays the unit of measurement or currency captured for the goods code of import license. **Note** If the basis is Quantity, then the system displays the UoM maintained for the goods code. If the basis is Amount, then the system displays the currency maintained for the import license. This field is optional.
Qty/License Amount	The system displays the Quantity or License Amount captured for the goods code of import license. This field is optional.
Qty/License Amt Already Utilized	The system displays the sum total of Quantity or License Amount already utilized for the goods code. This field is optional.
Qty/License Amt Already Reinstated	The system displays the sum total of Quantity or License Amount already reinstated for the goods code. This field is optional.
Available Qty/License Amt	The system displays either the Available Quantity or Available License Amount for the goods code. This field is optional.
Qty/License Amt Utilized	Specify the quantity or the license amount utilized. **Note** If the license utilization basis is Quantity, then the system defaults the License Amount Utilized as Quantity Utilized * Rate/Unit. This field is optional. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

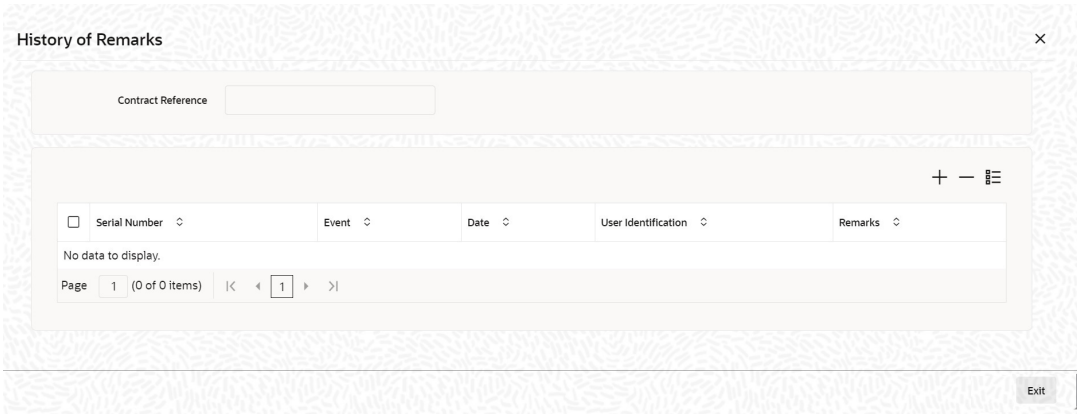
Table 5-17 (Cont.) Import License

Field	Description
Qty/License Amt Reinstated	Specify the quantity or the license amount reinstated. **Note** If the License Amount Utilized is maintained for an goods code of an import license, then the system allows reinstatement of the license amount. • The 'Qty/License Amt Reinstated' should be less than or equal to the sum total of Qty/License Amount Utilized - Qty/License Amt Reinstated. • You can enter either Qty/License Amount Utilized or Qty/License Amt Reinstated for a goods code. After authorization, you cannot modify or delete import licenses linked to a Islamic LC contract. The utilizations and re-instatements maintained for an import license in 'Import License Utilization' Screen and Import License sub-system will be differentiated by the system based on the 'Transaction Reference Number'. On authorization of reversal of a contract, the utilizations of all linked import licenses will also be reversed i.e. the value of Qty / License Amt Already Utilized - Qty / License Amt Already Reinstated will be posted as Qty / License Amt Reinstated for the respective goods codes and Available Qty / Available License Amt values will be re-computed. If an import licenses linked to an Islamic import LC contract is not completely availed i.e. sum total of availments are less than the liability amount of Islamic import LC, then at the time of closure of Islamic LC contract, the system will give an alert to reinstate un-utilized quantity / license amount of linked import licenses. If auto closure is enabled for such Islamic import LC contracts, then system will not perform the auto-closure. This field is optional.

33. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Remarks** button.

The **History of Remarks** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-31 History of Remarks



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> You can view the remarks entered at different stages of the contract.

Table 5-18 History of Remarks Upload

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	The system displays the contract reference number. This field is optional.
Serial Number	The system displays the serial number. This field is optional.
Event	The system displays the event code of the event. This field is optional.
Date	The system displays the date on which the instructions were captured. This field is optional.
User Identification	The system displays the user ID of the user who created the notes. This field is optional.
Remarks	The system displays the instructions that the user provides in the text box. This field is optional.

34. On the **Letters of Credit Contract Detailed** screen, click the **Common Group Message** button.

    The **Common Group Message Maintenance** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-32 Common Group Message Maintenance

> **Note**
>
> For field descriptions of the above screen refer the section ‘Common Group Message Maintenance’ in chapter titled ‘Defining Free Format Messages’ in ‘Messaging System User Guide’.

You can enter the details of the message and the message is saved when the contract is saved. The saved messages can be viewed in the message preview subsystem before authorization. On authorization of the contract, the message is generated. After authorization, the messages can be viewed from ‘All Messages’ subsystem and ‘Events’ subsystem.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The common group messages which are supported are listed below:

Table 5-19 Common Group Message Maintenance

MT	MT Name
n90	Advice of Charges, Interest and Other Adjustments
n91	Request for Payment of Charges, Interest and Other Expenses
n92	Request for Cancellation
n95	Queries
n96	Answers
n98	Proprietary Message
n99	Free Format

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

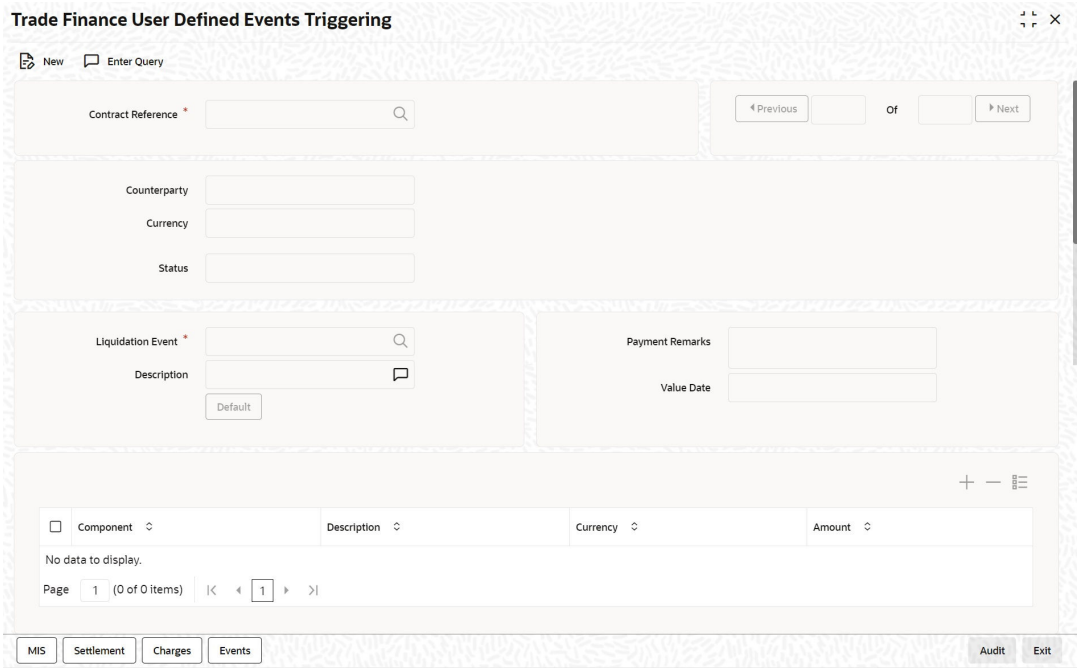
Figure 5-33 Common Group Message Maintenance

35. On Query from contract input screen click UDE to launch the **Trade Finance User Defined Events Triggering** screen (UDDTFEVT) and perform additional accounting entries for active and authorized contracts.

    The **UDE** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-34 Trade Finance User Defined Events Triggering



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table below:

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	On click of New the contract reference number defaults.
Counterparty	On click of New the counterparty defaults.
Status	On click of New the status defaults.
Currency	On click of New the currency defaults
Liquidation Event	Select the event from the adjoining option list.
Description	Description defaults on select of event from the field liquidation event
Payment Remarks	Specify remarks pertaining to the payment on the account.
Value Date	If the value date derivation rule has been maintained for the event code, the system will calculate the value date and display it here. However, you can change it

Click ‘Default’ to default the following details:

Amount Details: The system displays the following amount details

Component

Description

Description Currency

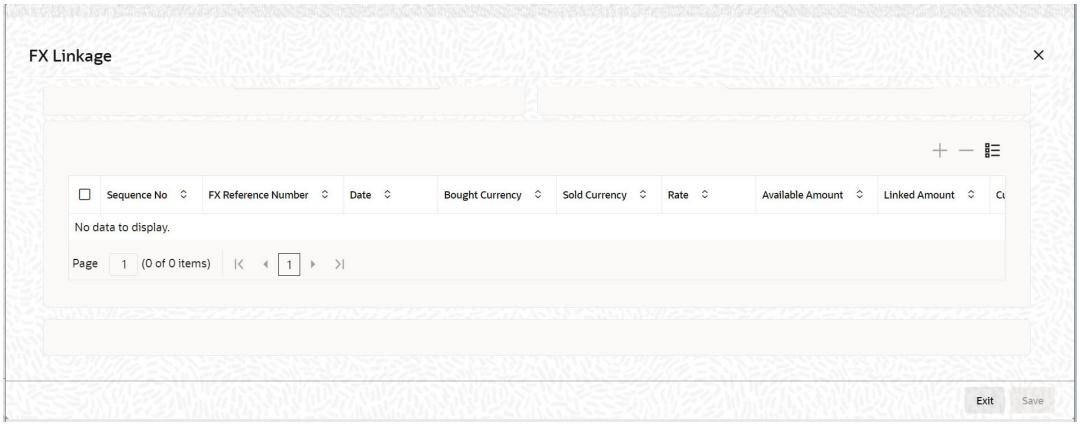
Amount

36. On the **Letters of Credit Contract Detailed** screen, click the **FX Linkage** tab.

The **FX Linkage** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-35 FX Linkage



This link invokes a screen in which you can link a LC involving a specific counterparty with FX deals involving the same counterparty.
You can link one or more FX deals to a bill. The value of an FX deal should not exceed the value of the bill it hedges. If you link several FX deals to a bill, the total value of all the deals should not exceed the bill amount.

Table 5-20 FX Linkage - Field Description

Field	Description
Sequence No	System generates the 'Sequence No' for linked FX contracts sequentially
FX Reference no	Indicates FX deal reference no. from treasury system
Date	Indicates FX deal value date. FX Value date should be greater or equal to LI Expiry Date
BOT/SOLD Currency	LC contract currency should be BOT currency of the FX transaction in case of an export LC or the SOLD currency in case of an Import LI. **Bought Currency:** Presents FX Deal Bought Currency. In case of export contract, LI contract currency should be same FX Bought Currency. **Sold Currency:** Presents FX Deal Bought Currency. In case of import contract, LI contract currency should be same FX Sold Currency.
Rate	Presents FX deal Exchange rate
Available Amount	Present FX available amount (i.e) FX contract amount minus total linked FX amount
Linked Amount	User will capture Linked amount at FX Linkage screen. Sum of Linked amount will not be greater than LI contract amount. Linked amount will not be greater than the available amount for linkage.
Current Utilized amount	Current Utilized amount will display the current amount utilized of the event.
Total Utilized amount	Total Utilized amount will display the total amount utilized of the contract.

- OBTF system initiates the link/delink
  1. During creation of an LC,OBTF system initiates Link request.
  2. During manual delink of FX at LC,OBTF system initiates delink request.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Delink of linked FX/Reduction of linked amount from the LC is allowed if the same is not attached to a BC contract.

37. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Customer Instructions** tab.

    The **Customer Instructions** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-36 Customer Instructions

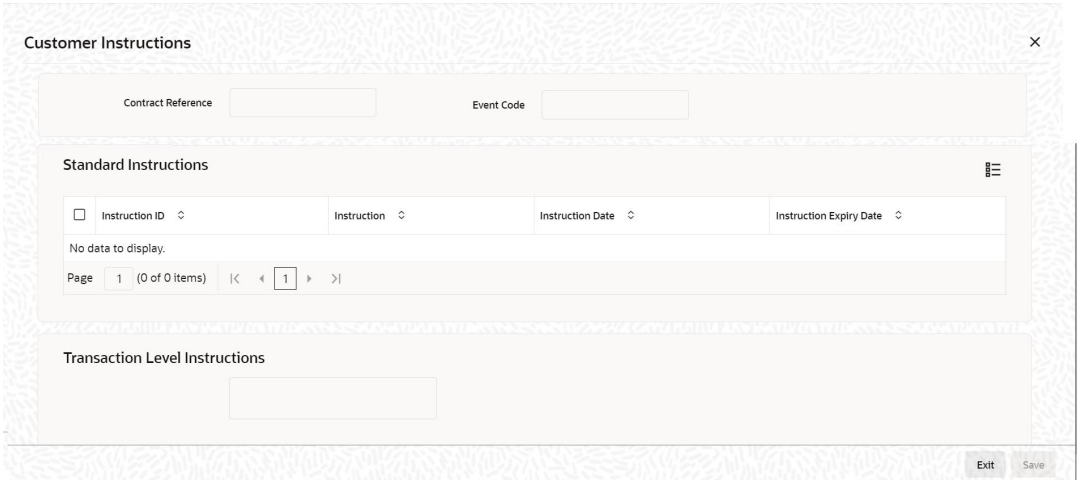


Table 5-21 Customer Instructions - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	System displays the contract reference number.
Event Code	
Standard Instructions Customer would want to give Standard instructions in advance to the bank that need to be referred by the bank while processing certain type of transactions.	
Instruction ID	System displays the Instruction ID.
Instruction	System displays the customer standard instruction.
Instruction Date	System displays the start date of the customer instruction.
Instruction Expiry Date	System displays the expiry date of the customer instruction.
Transaction Level Instruction	Enter the transaction level instructions for the event.

38. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click the **Save** button

    The details are saved.

39. On the **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, click **Hold** button.

    a. It support a New operation during Islamic LC Issuance from LIDTRONL.

    b. User can unlock contracts put on HOLD, modify details if required and **Save**. In the existing functionality of amendment, Save would continue ‘Deletion of Hold’ and ‘Hold of Hold’ support.

    c. Similar to Hold of New operation the system will perform only mandatory validations.

    d. Validations applicable during amendment, will be processed.

    The system is enhanced to support Hold during Islamic LC amendment.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> However, authorization is not supported for Contracts put on Hold.

5.2 View Islamic LC Contract Summary Details

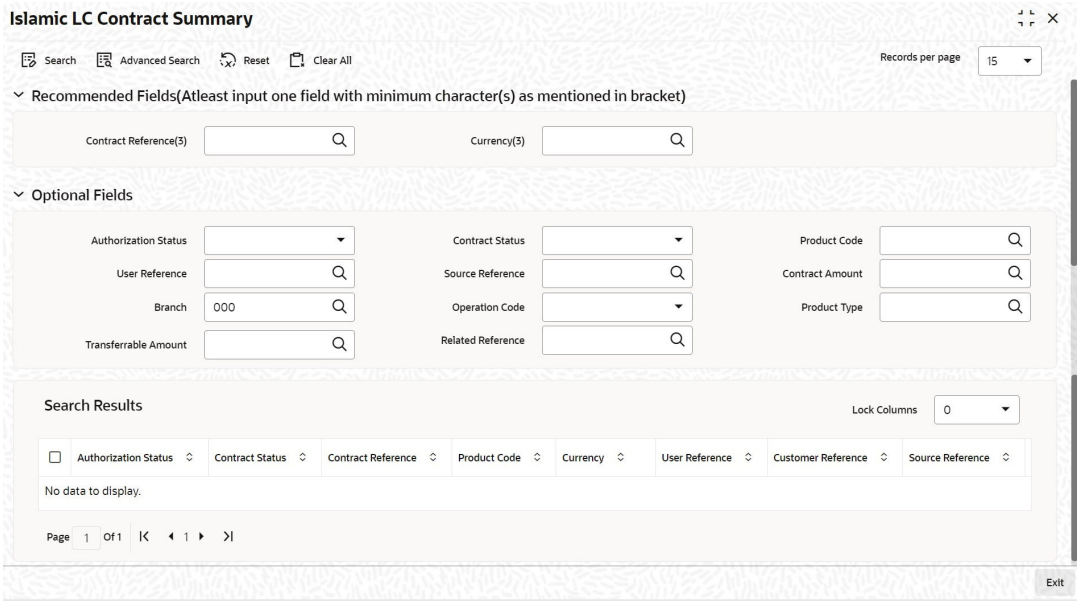
This topic provides the systematic instruction to view Islamic LC contract summary details.

On the homepage, type **LISTRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

1. On the **Islamic LC Contract Summary** screen, select appropriate Contract Reference from the option list and click on **Search**.

   The records matching the specified search criteria are displayed. The details of the contracts that you have entered is displayed in the tabular form on the **Islamic LC Contract Summary** screen.

Figure 5-37 Islamic LC Contract Summary



For more information on the fields, refer the Field Description table given below:

Table 5-22 Islamic LC Contract Summary

Field	Description
Authorization Status	Select the authorization status of the contract from the drop-down list.
Contract Reference	Select the contract reference number from the option list.
Currency	Select the currency of the transaction from the option list.
Branch	Select the branch code for which you want to check the contract from the option list.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 5-22 (Cont.) Islamic LC Contract Summary

Field	Description
Contract Status	Select the status of the contract for which you want to check the pending function from the drop-down list.
Product Code	Select the product code from the option list.
Contract Amount	Select the contract amount.
Operation Code	Select status of the operation code from the option list. For each record fetched by the system based on your query criteria, the following details are displayed: • Authorization Status • Contract Status • Contract Reference • Product Code • Currency • Contract Amount • User Reference • Source Reference • Customer Reference • Dated • Party Type • Issue Date • Expiry Date • Branch

Note

Now, open the existing contract by double clicking the contract. Provide the mandatory entries for the Islamic LC.

2. Click **Advanced Search** button to query a contract based on any of the following details:
   a. Authorization Status
   b. Contract Status
   c. Contract Reference
   d. Product Code
   e. Currency
   f. Contract Amount
   g. User Reference
   h. Source Reference
   i. Customer Reference
   j. Dated
   k. Party Type
   l. Issue Date
   m. Expiry Date
   n. Branch
   o. Amount In Local Currency

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Based on the criteria selected, the records are displayed.

- Operations on Islamic LC Contract
  This topic provides the systematic instruction you can perform on Islamic LC Contract.
- Create Contract

5.2.1 Operations on Islamic LC Contract

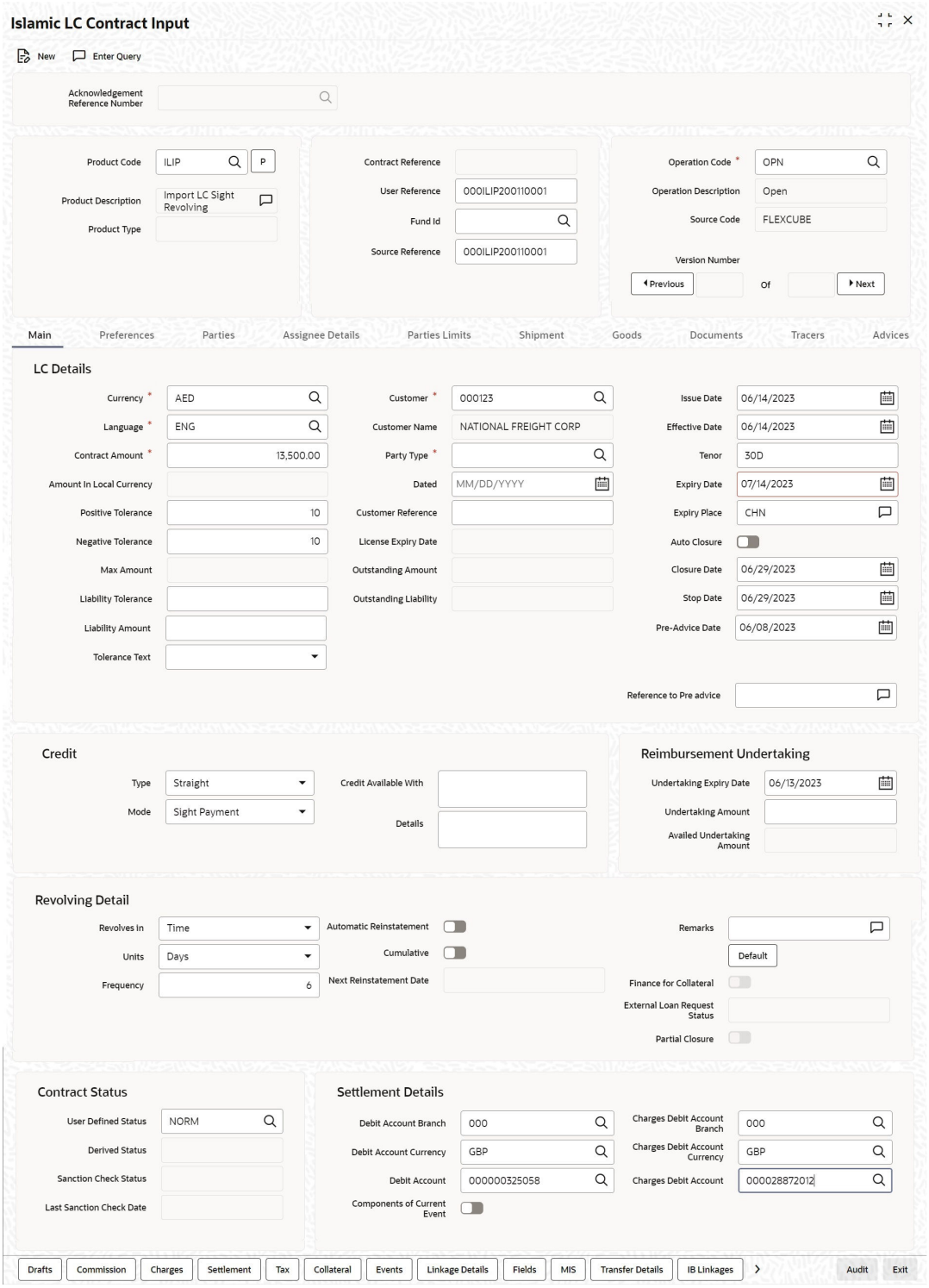
This topic provides the systematic instruction you can perform on Islamic LC Contract.

- On the existing **Islamic LC Contract Input** screen, you can perform the following operations:
  1. Create a new record
  2. Unlock a record
  3. Copy a record
  4. Print the details of a record
  5. Reverse a record
  6. Rollover the details of a record
  7. Reopen the details of a record
  8. Close a record

  You can create/copy/reopen/unlock/close/print/reverse/rollover the details of a record.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 5-38 Islamic LC Contract Input



5.2.2 Create Contract

Through the screens that follow in this section, you can process all types of Islamic LCs (import, export, invoice, clean, shipping guarantees). You can choose to enter the details of a contract using the following methods:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Copying the details from an existing contract and changing only the details that are different for the Islamic LC you are entering
- Using your keyboard or the option lists that are available at the various fields to enter the details of the LC afresh
  To facilitate quick input, you only need to input the product code. Based on the product code, many of the fields will be defaulted. Overwrite on these defaults to suit your requirement. You can add details that are specific to the Islamic LC like the Islamic LC amount, details of the buyer and the seller, etc.

5.3 Authorize a Contract

This topic provides the systematic instruction to authorize a contract.

Every Islamic LC transactions that you enter manually must be verified and authorized. Only a user who has appropriate rights can perform the verification and authorization functions. Such a user is called an authorizer.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

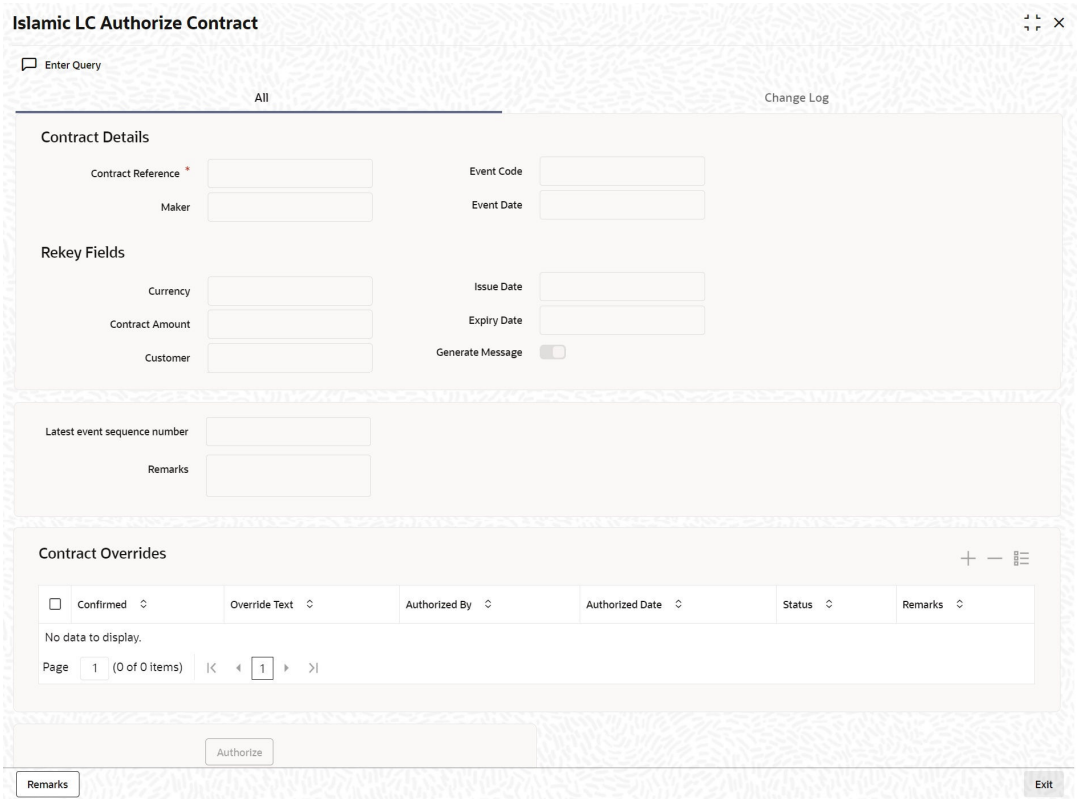
1. On the homepage, type **LIDTRAUT** text box, and click next arrow.

   The **Islamic LC Authorize Contract** screen is displayed.

2. On the **Islamic LC Authorize Contract** screen, specify the fields, and click the **Authorize** button.

   You have authorized a contract.

Figure 5-39 Islamic LC Authorize Contract



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

By default, the system displays all the fields based on the contract reference you select. You can specify remarks or instruction in the **Remarks** field.On the **Islamic LC Product Preferences screen**, if you have set the preference for **Rekey Requirements** as **Yes** then you need to provide **Rekey Fields** details.For more details on this screen refer the topic **Remarks** in this user manual.

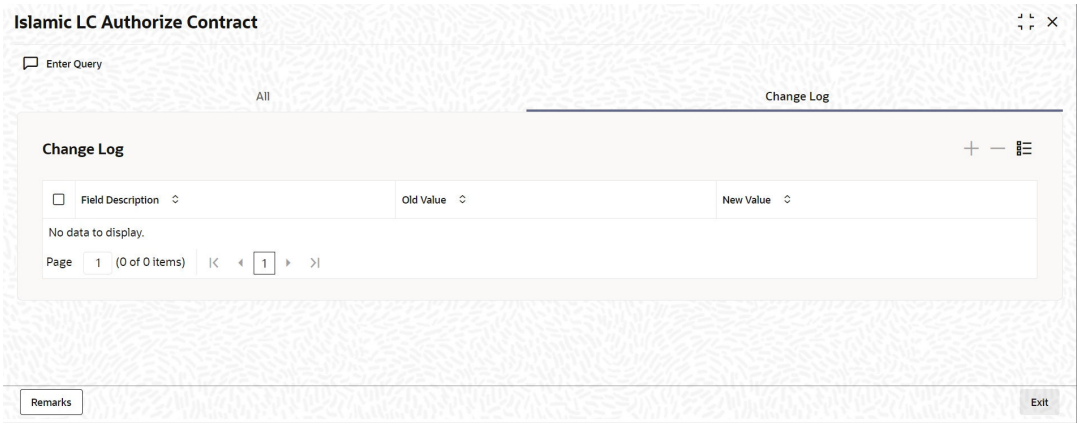
You cannot authorize a contract in the following cases:

- the contract has multilevel of authorization pending, the same will be done using the **Multilevel Authorization Detailed** screen
- the level of authorization is greater than or equal to 'N'
- the 'Nth' or the final level of the users authorisation limit is less than the difference between amount financed and sum of the limits of all the users involved in authorizing a transaction, this case holds good when the 'Cumulative' field is checked in the Product Transaction Limits Maintenance screen
- the transaction amount is greater than the authorizer's authorisation limit if the Cumulative field is unchecked in the Product Transaction Limits Maintenance screen.

3. On the **Letters of Credit Authorize Contract** screen, click **Change Log** tab.

The **Change Log** screen is displayed.

Figure 5-40 Islamic LC Authorize Contract



In **Change Log** Details, if there are any values changed in the contract, then the following details are displayed here:

- Field Description
- Old Value
- New Value

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6
Islamic LC Availment

6.1 Introduction

On receipt of the bills or on notification from the negotiating bank, you can record an availment under an LC. The availment on an LC can be made only up to the Maximum LC amount, specified in the Contract Main screen.

Once an availment is recorded, the current availability under the LC will be reduced and the outstanding liability updated automatically. It will be reduced by the availment amount. When an availment is recorded and there is cash collateral outstanding against the LC, invoke the cash collateral screen and specify the amount of cash collateral to be released.

6.2 Islamic LC Availment Input

1. Islamic LC Contract Availment
2. Islamic LC Liability Reversal
3. View Islamic LC Availed
4. Reversal of an Availment

- Islamic LC Contract Availment
  This topic provides systematic instruction to record an availment under an Islamic LC, upon receipt of bills or notification from the negotiating bank.
- Islamic LC Liability Reversal
- View Islamic LC Availed
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to view Islamic LC availed using **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen.
- Reversal of an Availment

6.2.1 Islamic LC Contract Availment

This topic provides systematic instruction to record an availment under an Islamic LC, upon receipt of bills or notification from the negotiating bank.

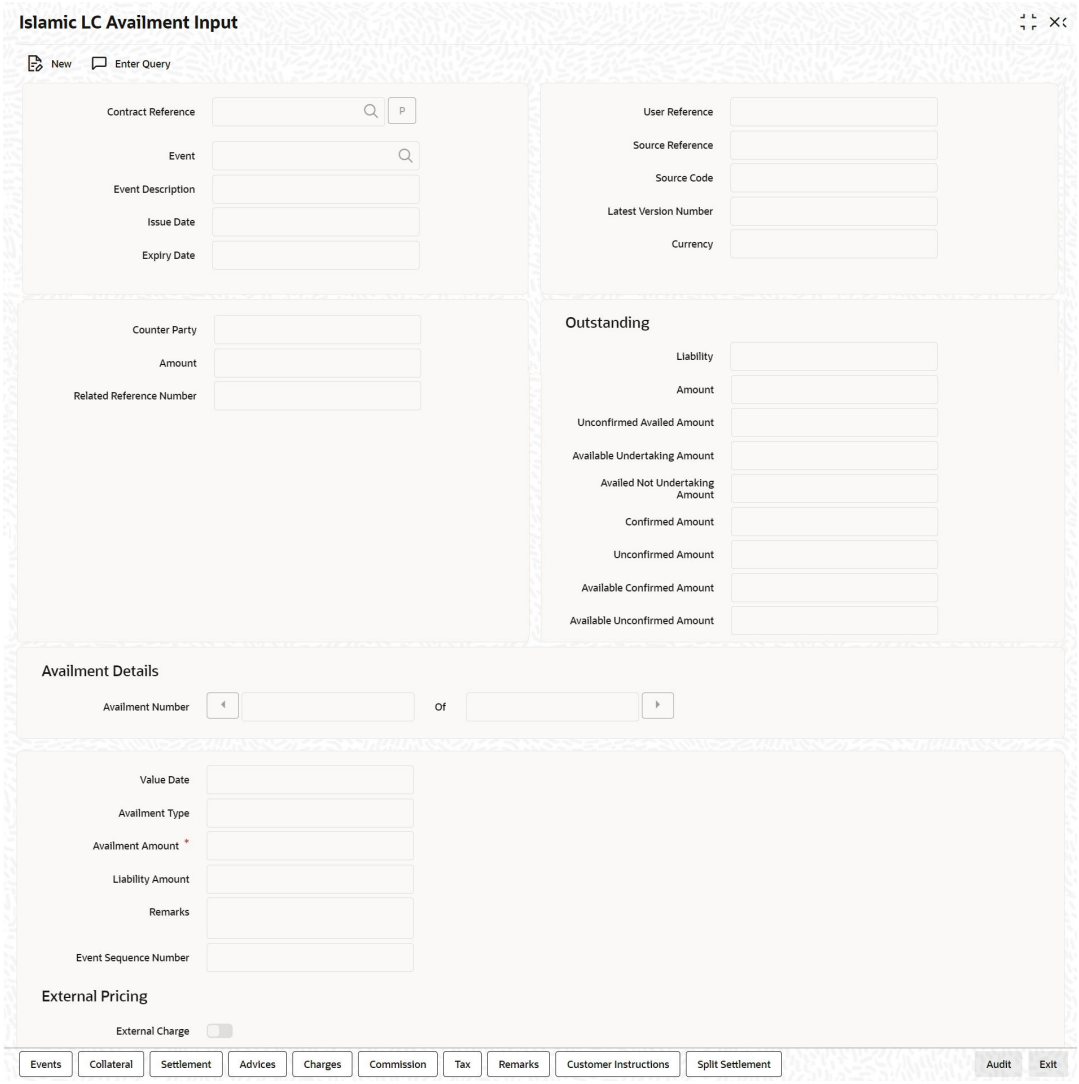
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the homepage, type **LIDAVMNT** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-1 Islamic LC Availment Input



2. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click **New**.

   The **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen is displayed with no details.
   Enter the field details and click **Save** to maintain the details.

   At the Contract Reference field, you can fetch the Islamic LC Contract on which you want to do an availment by either executing a query or through the option list available for the field.

   If you pick it up through the option list then press <F8> after you get the Islamic LC Contract on which you want to make the availment.

   For more information on fields, refer the Field Description table given below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-1 Islamic LC Availment Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Specify or select the contract reference number from the option list provided. Click 'P' button. This field is mandatory. The following contract details will be displayed: • Event • Event Description • Issue Date • Expiry Date • Counter Party • Amount • Related Reference Number • User Reference • Source Reference • Latest Version No • Currency • Liability
Availment Details	Specify the availment details.
Value Date	An availment can be made either as of a date in the past or today. By default, the system displays the current date. You can change it to a date in the past. This field is optional.
Availment Type	Specify the type of availment to be recorded under the LC. Click the drop-down list and select one of the following values: • Payment • Acceptance • Negotiation **Note** If the entry to this field does not adhere to the conditions specified above you will be prompted for an override. This field is optional.
Availment Amount	You can specify the amount being availed under the Islamic LC, in this screen. The availment amount that you specify cannot be greater than the Outstanding Islamic LC Amount displayed in this screen. Partial amounts can be availed against an Islamic LC. The availment thus need not always be the amount available under the Islamic LC. After an availment is made on an Islamic LC, the Islamic LC amount is automatically reduced. The Islamic LC amount after the availment is displayed in the Outstanding Islamic LC Amount field of the Islamic LC Contract screen. This field is mandatory.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-1 (Cont.) Islamic LC Availment Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Liability Amount	The Liability Amount refers to the customer's liability to the bank. For an availment you can specify the amount that should be reduced, from the Outstanding Liability amount. The Outstanding Liability amount can be reduced by an amount that is greater or less than the amount currently being availed. By default, the availment amount specified in the Availment Amount field will be defaulted here. **Note** The liability amount that you specify should not result in the Outstanding Liability Amount being less than the Outstanding LC Amount. If the values entered as the Availment Amount and the Liability Amount result in the liability amount being less than the LC amount, an error message will be flashed. The message will prompt you to re-enter values to the relevant fields. This field is optional.
Remarks	Click the icon and enter information about the availment in the window that pops up. This information is intended for the internal reference of your bank. These remarks will be displayed when the details of the availment are retrieved or printed. However, this information will not be printed on any correspondence with the customer This field is optional.
Event Sequence Number	The system displays the event sequence number. This indicates a number corresponding to the number of events for which the operation has been performed. This field is optional.
Outstanding	Specify the Outstanding details.
Liability	On clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number, the system displays the current liability amount. This field is optional.
Amount	On clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number, the system displays the current outstanding amount. This field is optional.
Unconfirmed Availed Amount	The system displays the Unconfirmed Availed Amount on clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number,
Available Undertaking Amount	The system defaults the latest availed undertaking amount on click of 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number.
Availed Not Undertaking Amount	The system defaults the latest availed non undertaking amount on click of 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number.
Confirmed Amount	On clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number, the system displays the current confirmed amount. This field is optional.
Unconfirmed Amount	On clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number, the system displays the current unconfirmed amount. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-1 (Cont.) Islamic LC Availment Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Available Confirmed Amount	On clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number, the system displays the current available confirmed amount. This field is optional.
Available Unconfirmed Amount	On clicking 'P' button after specifying the contract reference number, the system displays the current available unconfirmed amount. This field is optional.
External Pricing	Specify the external pricing details such as external charge.
External Charge	During the availment for a contract for which external charges is enabled at product level, external charges is fetched from external pricing and billing engine. This field is optional.

A horizontal array of buttons is displayed. These buttons invoke the various functions necessary to make an availment on an Islamic LC.

The buttons have been briefly described below:

Buttons	Description
Advices	Click this button to define the advices that will be generated for the availment.
Commission	This button invokes the Commissions service.
Charges	This button invokes the Charges and fees service. The chapter titled Processing Charges on Islamic LCs details the procedure of maintaining charge rules. It also deals with the application of the scheme on an availment.
Tax	This button invokes the availment tax services. The tax details applicable for the availment will be shown and you can choose to waive it, if necessary. The chapter titled Processing Tax for Islamic LCs details the procedure of maintaining tax rules and schemes. It also deals with the linking and application of the scheme on an availment.
Settlement	Click on this button to invoke the Settlement screens. You can specify settlement details for the availment like: • the accounts to be used for the availment • message details • party details Based on the details that you enter in the settlement screens, the availment will be settled. The details of these screens have been discussed under the head Maintaining Settlement Instructions in this chapter.
Collateral	Specify the adjustments that you want to make, on the cash collected as collateral.
Event	Click on this button to view the details of the events and accounting entries that an availment entails. This icon also gives the details of other events on the Islamic LC.
Remarks	Click this button to view the 'History of Remarks' screen.

Enter valid inputs into all the mandatory fields before you save the availment. Save the contract by either clicking on **Save** icon in the toolbar.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

On saving the availment, your User Id will be displayed in the ‘Entry By’ field at the bottom of the screen. The date and time at which you saved the record will be displayed in the ‘Date Time’ field.

A user bearing a different User ID should authorize an availment that you have entered, before the EOD is run. The ID of the user who authorized the availment will be displayed in the ‘Auth By’ field. The date and time at which the availment has been authorized will be displayed in the ‘Date Time’ field.

The current status of the Islamic LC contract on which you are processing the availment, is also displayed in the field ‘Contract Status’. The field will display one of the following:

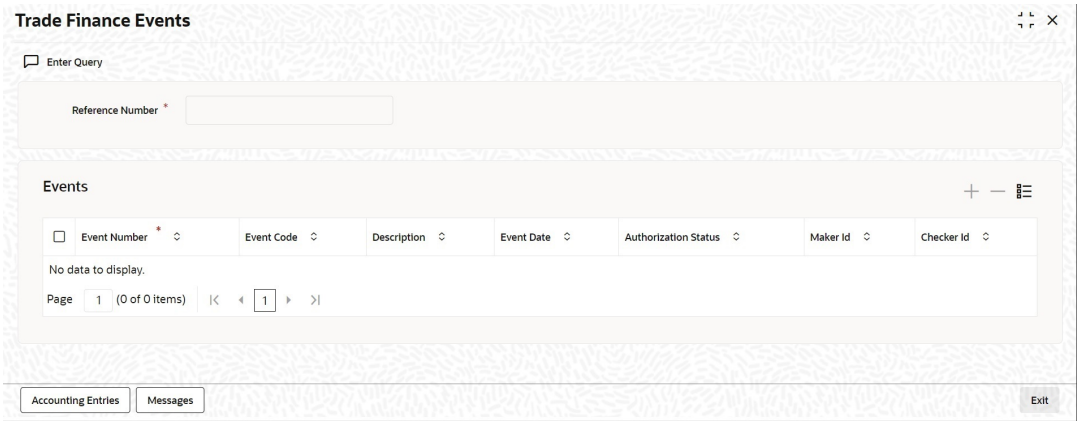
- Active
- Closed
- Reversed
- Cancelled
- Hold

3. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Events** button.

   The **Trade Finance Events** screen is displayed. You can view the details of the events and accounting entries that an availment entails.
   It also provides the details of other events on the Islamic LC.

> **Note**
>
> The details of events that have taken place on the contract including the last availment, that you are have just entered will be displayed. The date on which the event took place will also be displayed

Figure 6-2 Trade Finance Events



4. On the **Trade Finance Events** screen, click the **Accounting Entries**.

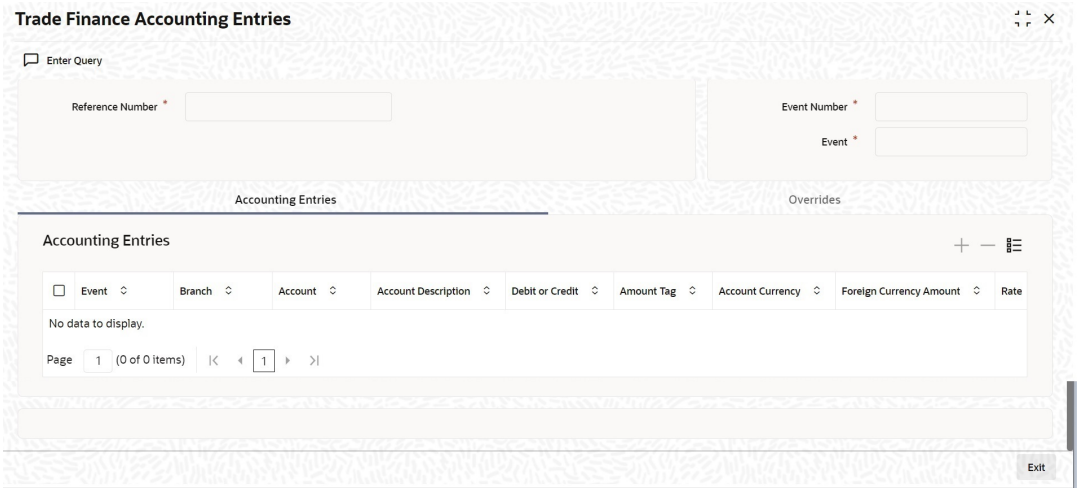
   The **Trade Finance Accounting Entries** screen is displayed.
   You can view the details of the accounting entries that were passed only for the event displayed in the availment - **View Events** screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> The system displays the reference number, event number and event by default.

5. Click on **Exit** to go back to the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen.

Figure 6-3 Trade Finance Accounting Entries



The following information is provided for each event:

- Event
- Branch
- Account
- Account Description
- Debit or Credit
- Amount Tag
- Account Currency
- Foreign Currency Amount
- Rate
- Local Currency Amount
- Date
- Value Date
- Txn Code
- All the overrides that were allowed for an event will also be displayed

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

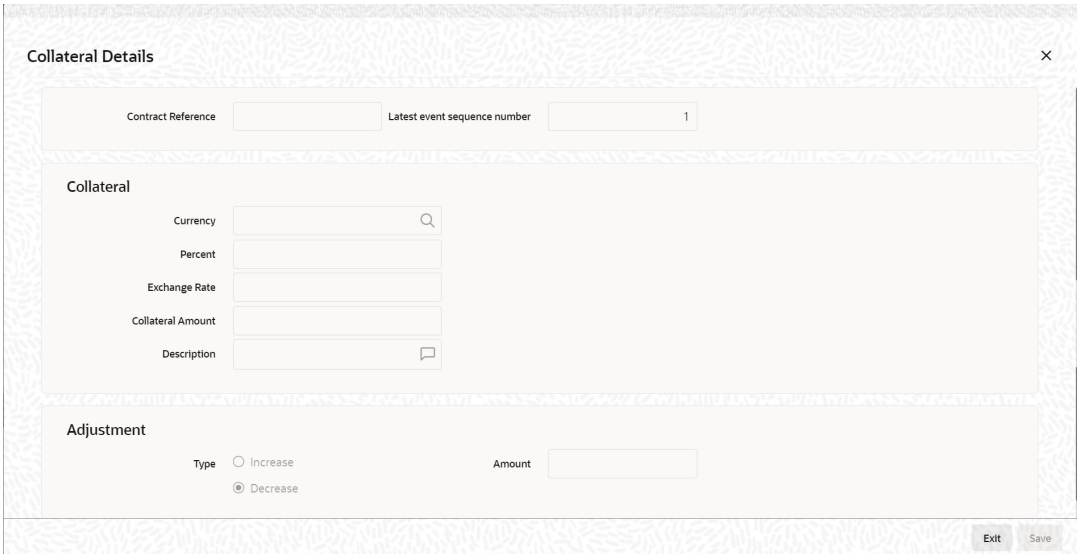
> **Note**
>
> The system will display an override message if the date when the availment is made i.e. the value date of the availment falls after the expiry date for the islamic LC issued. You may use your discretion to proceed or cancel the contract. You can also have this override configured as an error message in which case, the system will not allow you to proceed until you make the necessary changes.

6. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Collateral** button.

   The **Collateral Details** screen is displayed.
   If the Islamic LC that you are processing has been backed by cash collateral, you can specify the cash collateral to be released as a result of the availment.

   By default, the collateral amount proportional to the amount availed will be adjusted automatically. This default amount can be reduced or increased.

Figure 6-4 Collateral Details



If the LC that you are processing has been backed by cash collateral, you can specify the cash collateral to be released as a result of the availment.

By default, the collateral amount proportional to the amount availed will be adjusted automatically. This default amount can be reduced or increased.

For more information on fields, refer the Field Description table given below:

Table 6-2 Collateral Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	The system displays the contract reference number. This field is optional.
Latest Event Sequence Number	The system displays the latest even sequence number. This field is optional.
Collateral Details	Provide the collateral details:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

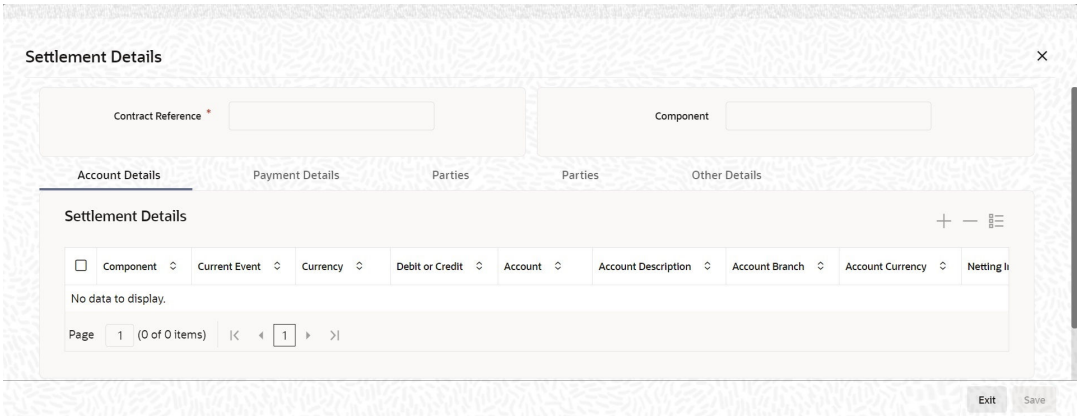
Table 6-2 (Cont.) Collateral Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	The currency of the collateral is displayed here. This field is optional.
Percent	The system displays the percentage of islamic LC amount that should be considered for the collateral amount. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	The exchange rate to be used in the conversion is displayed here. The value of the collateral is determined based on this exchange rate. This field is optional.
Collateral Amount	The collateral amount is displayed here.
Description	A brief description of the collateral is displayed here.
Adjustment Details	Specify the Adjustment Details. This field is optional.
Type	You can increase the collateral amount that is calculated by default. Choose 'Increase' option and enter the amount by which the cash collateral should be increased. You can decrease the collateral amount that is calculated by default. Choose the Decrease option and enter the amount by which the cash collateral should be decreased. If you are adjusting the collateral against an availment, you should have defined the appropriate accounting entries for the event code AVAL. Not invoking the Cash Collateral screen during the availment session will mean that you do not want to adjust the collateral. This would be so even if you have defined the accounting entries for availment reduction. An override to this effect will be displayed when you save the availment. This field is optional.
Amount	You can increase the collateral amount that is calculated by default. Choose Increase option and enter the amount by which the cash collateral should be increased. This field is optional.

7. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Settlement** button.

   The **Settlement Details** screen is displayed.

Figure 6-5 Settlement Details



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Account details - The details about the accounts involved in the availment that have to be either debited or credited in your branch
- **Current Event:**
  Current event of settlements will be checked for the amount tags pertaining to the current event and will be unchecked for the amount tags not pertaining to the current event.
- Payment details - The details about the payments involved in the availment.
- Party details - The details about the various parties involved in the transfer, to be a part of the message generated.
- Other Details - Other details about the contract is included.

8. On the **Settlement Details** screen, click the **Account Details** tab.
9. Specify the field details and click **Ok**.
10. On the **Settlement Details** screen, click the **Payment Details** tab.

    The **Payment Details** screen is displayed.
    The **Payment Details** screen is displayed.

    A Letter of Credit can be settled either in the form of an instrument or a Message (a SWIFT, TELEX or Mail message to be sent to the concerned party). The details regarding the instrument or message have to be specified in the **Message Details** screen.

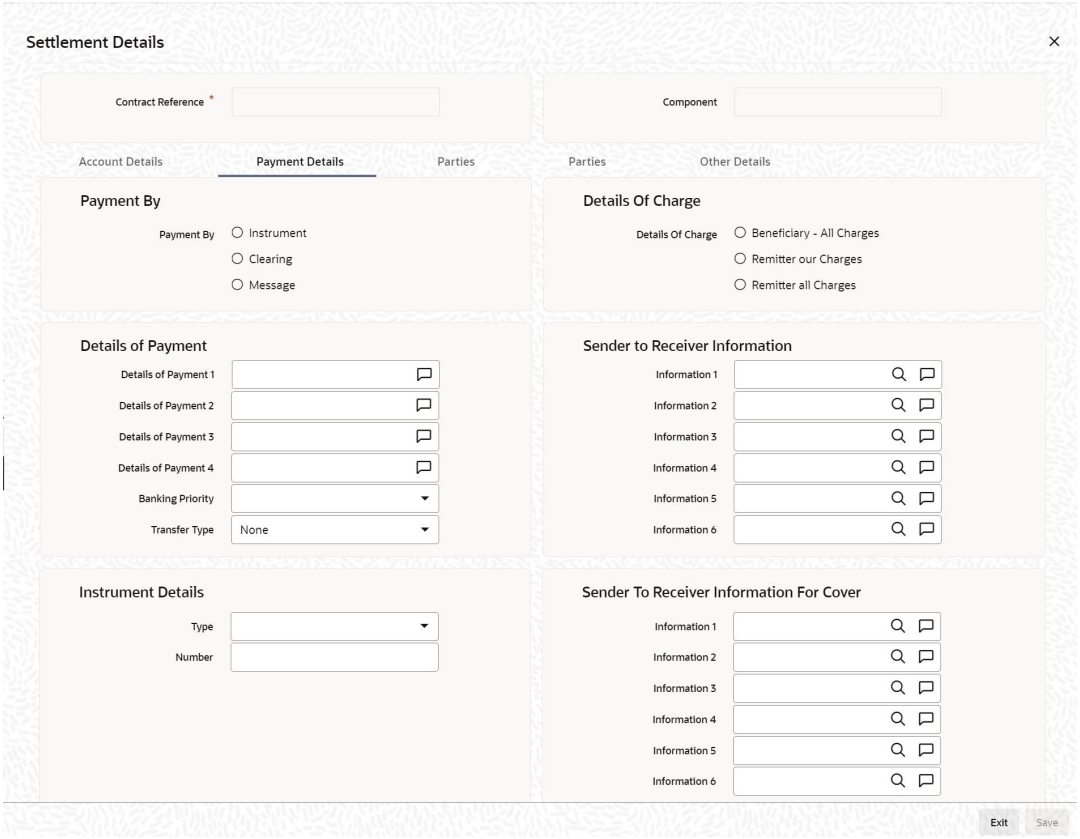
    The Islamic that you specify in this screen are applicable only for SWIFT type of SWIFT message that is generated depends on the parties involved in the Islamic LC.

    Based on the method of settling the Islamic LC, you should input either Instrument or Message details.
11. On the **Settlement Details** screen, specify the method of settling the Islamic LC.

    You should input either Instrument or Payment details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-6 Payment Details



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 6-3 Payment Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Instrument Details	Specify the following details. This field is optional.
Instrument Type	If the payment is through an instrument, indicate the type of instrument. It could be Manager's Check, Check or a Demand Draft. This field is optional.
Number	Specify the number that will identify the instrument. This number will be printed on the instrument. If the settlement is through an instrument, the party details cannot be specified for the transfer. Typically, an Islamic LC availment entails the debiting or crediting of the customer account, for the settlement amount. If the customer is being credited (in the case of your customer being the beneficiary, of the availment,) you may want to generate an instrument. This field is optional.
Details of Charge	Specify who should bear charges for the message. Choose one of the following options: • Remitter all Charges • Beneficiary all Charges • Remitter our Charges This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-3 (Cont.) Payment Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Message Details	For a SWIFT message, you have to specify the following: • Whether a Cover has to be sent to the Reimbursement Bank, along with the payment message to the receiver • Bank to bank payment details (these can be in the form of instructions or additional information to any of the parties involved in the transfer) • Sender to Receiver information. The 72 tag will be used to specify the sender to receiver information. This tag is applicable to MT740 message type
Details of Payment 1 to 4	Specify bank to bank payment details (these can be in the form of instructions or additional information to any of the parties involved in the transfer). This field is optional.
Sender to Receiver Information 1 to 6	Tag 72 will be used to specify the sender to receiver information. This tag is applicable to MT740 message type. This field is optional.
RTGS Payment	Check this box to indicate the payment mode is RTGS. This field is optional.
RTGS Network	Specify the RTGS Network used for the transaction. This field is optional.
Banking Priority	Indicate the priority for the payment. Choose any one of the following options: • Highly Urgent Payments • Urgent Payment • Normal Payment This field is optional.
Transfer Type	Specify the type of transfer. It can be any one of the following: • Bank Transfer • Customer Transfer • Bank Transfer for own A/c • Direct Debit Advice • MCK • Customer transfer with cover • None This field is optional.

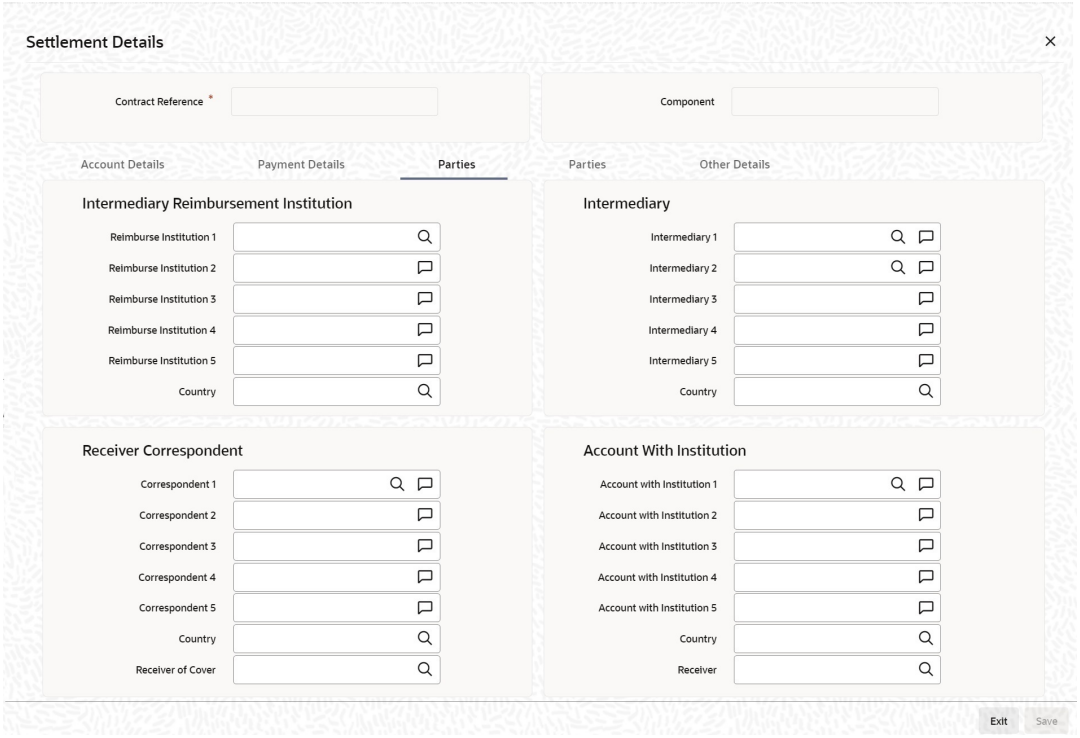
12. On the **Settlement Details** screen, click the **Parties** tab.

    The **Parties** screen is displayed.
    To process an availment on an Islamic LC, the funds may have to pass through a series of banks, before it actually reaches the Ultimate Beneficiary. Through the Parties screen you can capture details of all the parties that are involved in the transfer of funds. The details you enter in these screens depend on the type of LC being processed.

    An Intermediary Reimbursement Institution is the financial institution between the Sender's Correspondent and the Receiver's Correspondence.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-7 Parties



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 6-4 Parties1 - Field Description

Field	Description
Reimburse Institution 1 to 5	Specify the institution through which reimbursement of the funds should take place. This field is optional.
Intermediary 1 to 5	The Intermediary in a Islamic LC refers to the financial institution, between the Receiver and the Account With Institution through which the funds must pass.The Intermediary may be a branch or affiliate of the Receiver or the account with Institution or an altogether different financial institution. This field corresponds to field 56a of S.W.I.F.T. Here you can enter either the: • ISO Bank Identifier Code of the bank • Name and address of the bank This field is optional.
Receiver's Correspondent 1 to 5	The Receiver's Correspondent is the branch of the Receiver or another financial institution, at which the funds will be made available to the Receiver. This field corresponds to field 54a of SWIFT. You can enter one of the following: • ISO Bank Identifier Code of the bank • The branch of the Receiver's Correspondent • Name and address of the Receiver's Correspondent This field is optional.
Country	Select the country from the list.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-4 (Cont.) Parties1 - Field Description

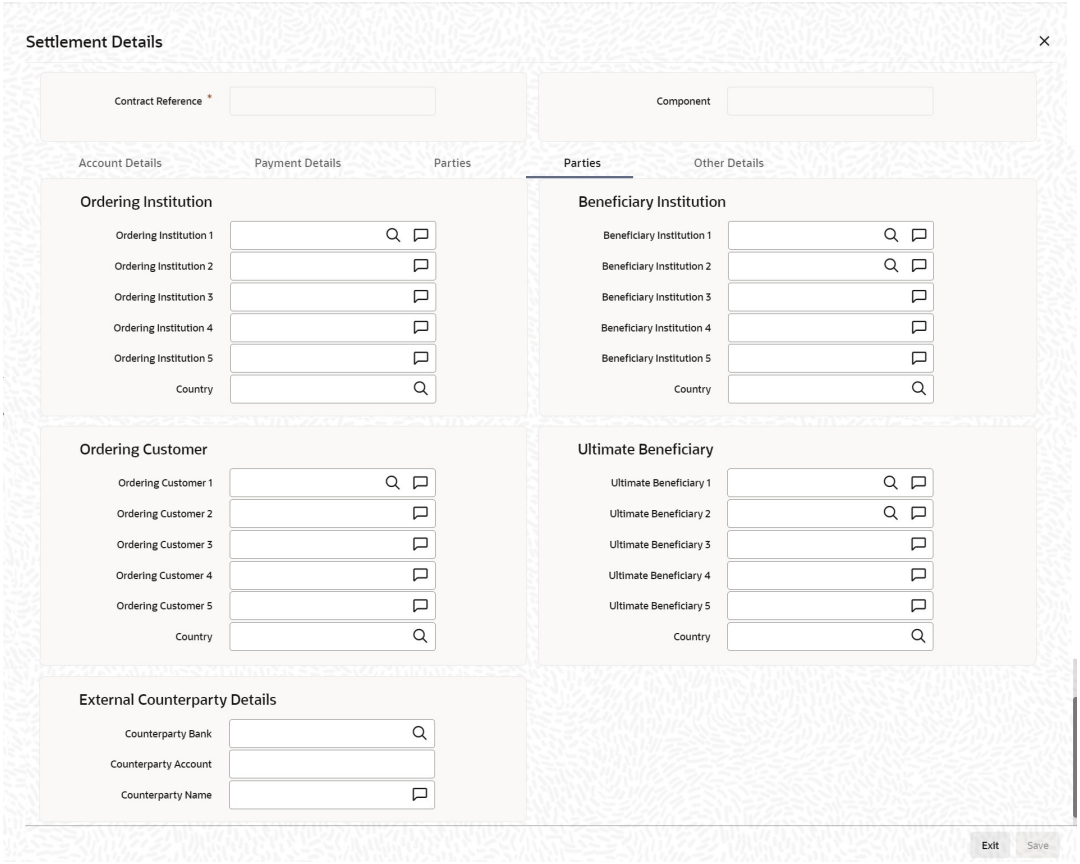
Field	Description
Account With Institution 1 to 5	An Account With Institution refers to the financial institution at which the ordering party requests the Beneficiary to be paid. The Account With Institution may be a branch or affiliate of the Receiver, or of the Intermediary, or of the Beneficiary Institution, or an entirely different financial institution. This field corresponds to field 57a of SWIFT. This field is optional.
Country	Select the country from the list.
Receiver of Cover	You can enter one of the following: ISO Bank Identifier Code of the bank • The branch of the Receiver's Correspondent • Name and address of the Receiver's Correspondent • Other identification codes (for example, account number) This field is optional.
Receiver	The ID of the receiver in the transaction will be displayed. You can change the same. This field is optional.
Specifying Intermediary Reimbursement Institution Details	An Intermediary Reimbursement Institution is the financial institution between the Sender's Correspondent and the Receiver's Correspondence. The reimbursement of the funds will take place through this institution.
Intermediary Details	The Intermediary in an Islamic LC refers to the financial institution, between the Receiver and the Account With Institution through which the funds must pass. The Intermediary may be a branch or affiliate of the Receiver or the account with Institution or an altogether different financial institution. This field corresponds to field 56a of SWIFT Here you can enter either the: • ISO Bank Identifier Code of the bank • Name and address of the Bank
Country	Select the country from the list.
Receiver's Correspondent Details	The Receiver's Correspondent is the branch of the Receiver or another financial institution, at which the funds will be made available to the Receiver. This field corresponds to field 54a of SWIFT You can enter one of the following: • ISO Bank Identifier Code of the bank • The branch of the Receiver's Correspondent • Name and address of the Receiver's Correspondent
Account With Institution Details	An Account With Institution refers to the financial institution at which the ordering party requests the Beneficiary to be paid. The 'Account With Institution' may be a branch or affiliate of the Receiver, or of the Intermediary, or of the Beneficiary Institution, or an entirely different financial institution. This field corresponds to field 57a of SWIFT. You can enter one of the following: • ISO Bank Identifier Code of the bank • The branch of the Receiver's Correspondent • Name and address of the Receiver's Correspondent • Other identification codes (for example, account number)
Country	Select the Country from the list.
Receiver	Select the Receiver from the list.

13. On the **Settlement Details** screen, click **Parties**.

    he **Parties** details is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-8 Parties 2- Field Description



For more information on the fields, refer the Field Description table given below:

Table 6-5 Parties 2- Field Description

Field	Description
Ordering Institution 1 to 5	The Ordering Institution is the financial Institution that is acting on behalf of itself, or a customer, to initiate the transaction. This field corresponds to 52a of SWIFT. In this field, you can enter one of the following: • The ISO Bank Identifier Code of the Ordering Institution • The branch or city of the Ordering Institution • The Name and address of the Bank This field is optional.
Country	Select the country from the list.
Ordering Customer	Specify the Ordering Customer details.
Ordering Customer 1 to 5	The Ordering Customer refers to the customer ordering the transfer. Here you can enter the name and address or the account number of the Customer, ordering the transaction. This field corresponds to field 50 of SWIFT. You will be allowed to enter details in this field only if you have initiated a customer transfer (MT 100 and MT 102). This field is optional.
Country	Select the country from the list.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-5 (Cont.) Parties 2- Field Description

Field	Description
Ultimate Beneficiary Details	The Ultimate Beneficiary refers to the Customer to whom the availment amount is to be paid. This field refers to field 59 of SWIFT Entries into this field are permitted only for a customer transfer (MT 100 and MT 202). The number of banks involved in the transfer would therefore depend on the following: • Relationships and arrangements between the sending and receiving banks • Customer instructions • Location of parties • The banking regulations of a country This field is optional.
Beneficiary Institution 1 to 5	In this field you can enter details of the institution in favor of which the payment is made. It is in reality the bank that services the account of the Ultimate Beneficiary. This field corresponds to field 58a of SWIFT. Entries into this field are permitted only for Bank Transfers (when the remitter and beneficiary of the transfer are financial institutions - MT 100 or MT 202). Here you can enter either of the following: • The ISO Bank Identifier Code of the Beneficiary Institution • The Name and Address of the Beneficiary Institution This field is optional.
Ultimate Beneficiary 1 to 5	The Ultimate Beneficiary refers to the Customer to whom the availment amount is to be paid. This field refers to field 59 of SWIFT. Entries into this field are permitted only for a customer transfer (MT 100 and MT 202). The number of banks involved in the transfer would therefore depend on the following: • Relationships and arrangements between the sending and receiving banks • Customer instructions • Location of parties • The banking regulations of a country This field is optional.
Country	Select the country from the list.
Beneficiary Institution For Cover 1 to 5	Select the institution in favor of which the payment is made, from the option list. If you click on the button, a notepad editor emerges. You can specify further details about the institution here. This field is optional.
Counterparty Bank	The clearing bank code here gets populated with the value specified in the contract screen. However you can change it. Select the relevant clearing bank code from the option list. This field is optional.
Counterparty Account	Specify the counterparty account. All the counterparty accounts pertaining to the selected Counterparty Bank will appear for selection in the adjoining option list. On selecting the Counterparty Account, the system will default the Counterparty Name as maintained for that account. If at the time of selecting Counterparty Account, Counterparty Bank is Null, then the Counterparty Bank will also appear by default. This field is optional.
Counterparty Name	Specify the name of the counterparty. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

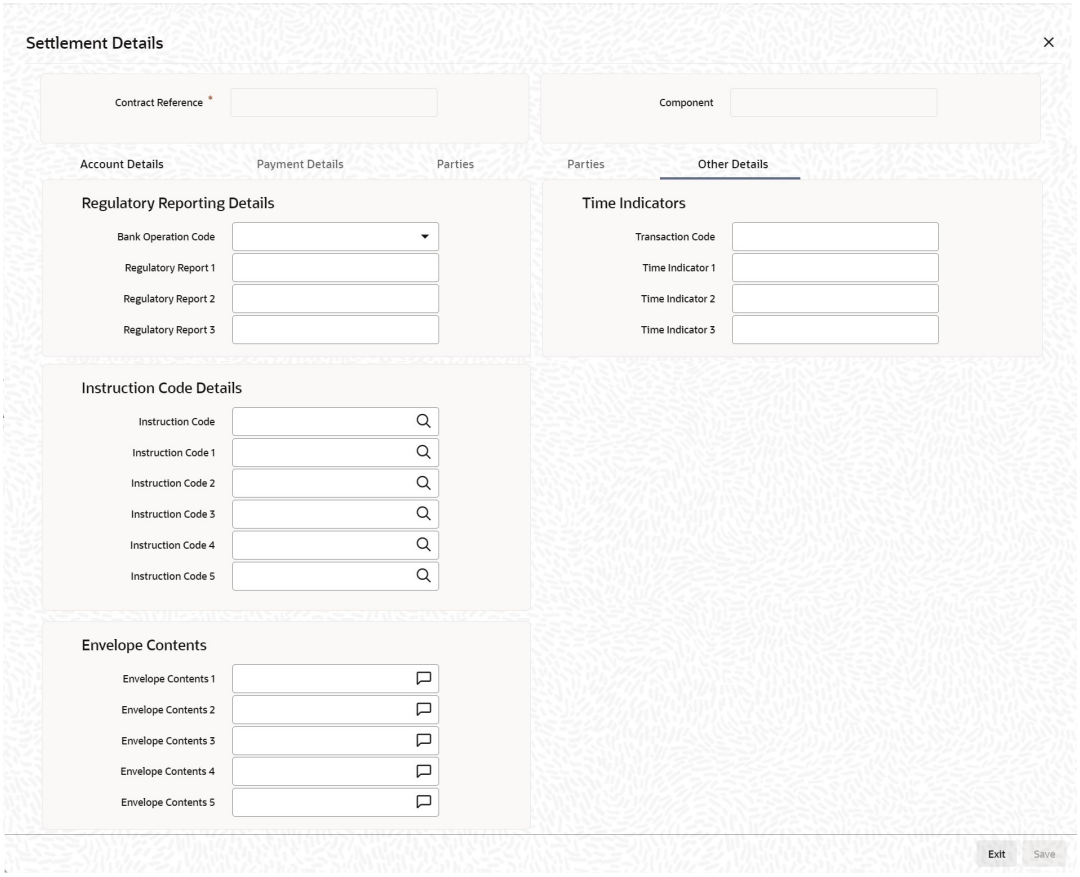
Table 6-5 (Cont.) Parties 2- Field Description

Field	Description
Agreement Identification	For processing direct debits on transactions you will also need to capture the Agreement ID of the counterparty in order to facilitate a cross-referencing between the contract payment and the direct debit instruction when a reversal of payment is carried out due to rejection of the outbound DD. Specify the Agreement ID in this field. Typically, you will need to specify this only for the Receive leg. This field is disabled for the Pay leg. This field is optional.
Clearing Network	Specify a clearing network during settlement instruction maintenance for the Pay Leg.
Post Accounting	Check this option to indicate that accounting entries maintained for the product should be posted. This field is optional.

14. On the **Settlement Details** screen, click the **Other Details** tab.

The **Other Details** is displayed.

Figure 6-9 Other Details



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-6 Other Details- Field Description

Field	Description
Bank Operation Code	Select the bank operation code that should be inserted in field 23B of an MT103 message, from the drop-down list. The list contains the following codes: • SPRI • SSTD • SPAY • CRED This specification is defaulted from the settlement instructions maintained for the customer, currency, product, branch and module combination. However, you can change it. This field is optional.
Regulatory Report 1 to 3	Select the Regulatory Reporting Details from the drop-down list displaying the following values: • /BENEFRES/ • /ORDERRES/ This field is optional.
Transaction Code	The transaction code maintained in the settlement instructions is defaulted here. However, you can change the code. This field is optional.
Time Indicator 1 to 3	Time Indication, specifies one or several time indication(s) related to the processing of the payment instruction. Select the time indication code from the following values available in the option list: /CLSTIME/ - Time by which funding payment must be credited, with confirmation, to the CLS Bank's account at the central bank, expressed in CET. /RNCTIME/ - Time at which a TARGET payment has been credited at the receiving central bank, expressed in CET /SNDTIME/ - Time at which a TARGET payment has been debited at the sending central bank, expressed in CET This field is optional.
Instruction Code 1 to 6	Select the instruction code that should be inserted in field 23E of an MT103 message involving the customer of the contract, from the adjoining drop-down list. This list contains the following codes: • CHQB • TELE • PHON • PHOI • REPA • INTC • TELI • SDVA • PHOB • TELB • HOLD • CORT • BONL This specification is defaulted from the settlement instructions maintained for the customer, currency, product, branch and module combination. However, you can change it. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-6 (Cont.) Other Details- Field Description

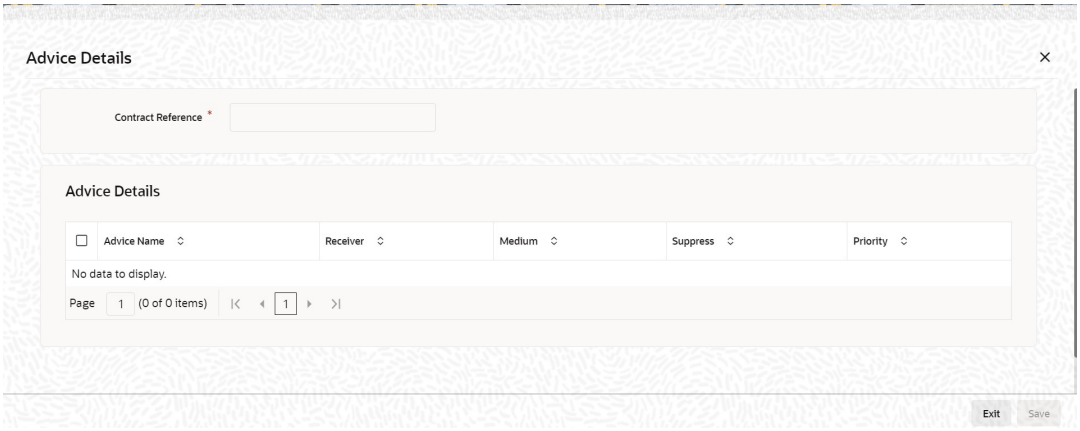
Field	Description
Description	Specify additional information that should be inserted to qualify the Instruction Code in field 23E of an MT103 message involving the customer of the contract. For instance, if the Instruction Code is REPA and the description is “Repayment” then the text ‘REPA/ Repayment’ will be inserted in Field 23E. You can give a description for the following instruction codes only: • PHON • PHOB • PHOI • TELE • TELB • TELI • HOLD • REPA This specification is defaulted from the settlement instructions maintained for the customer, currency, product branch and module combination. However, you can change it. This field is optional.
Envelope Contents 1 to 5	Specify details of envelope contents, if required. This field is optional.

15. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Advices** button.

    The Advice Details is displayed.

> **Note**
>
> You can view advices generated for the contract during availment.

Figure 6-10 Advice Details

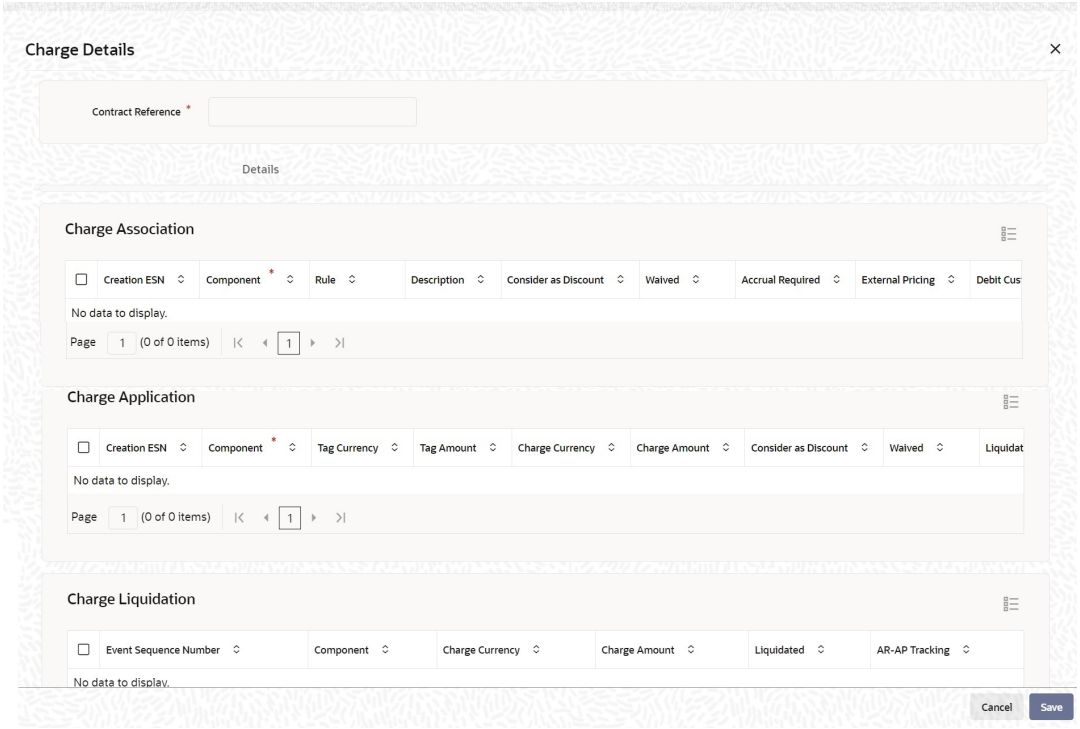


16. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Charges** button.

    The **Charge Details** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-11 Charge Details



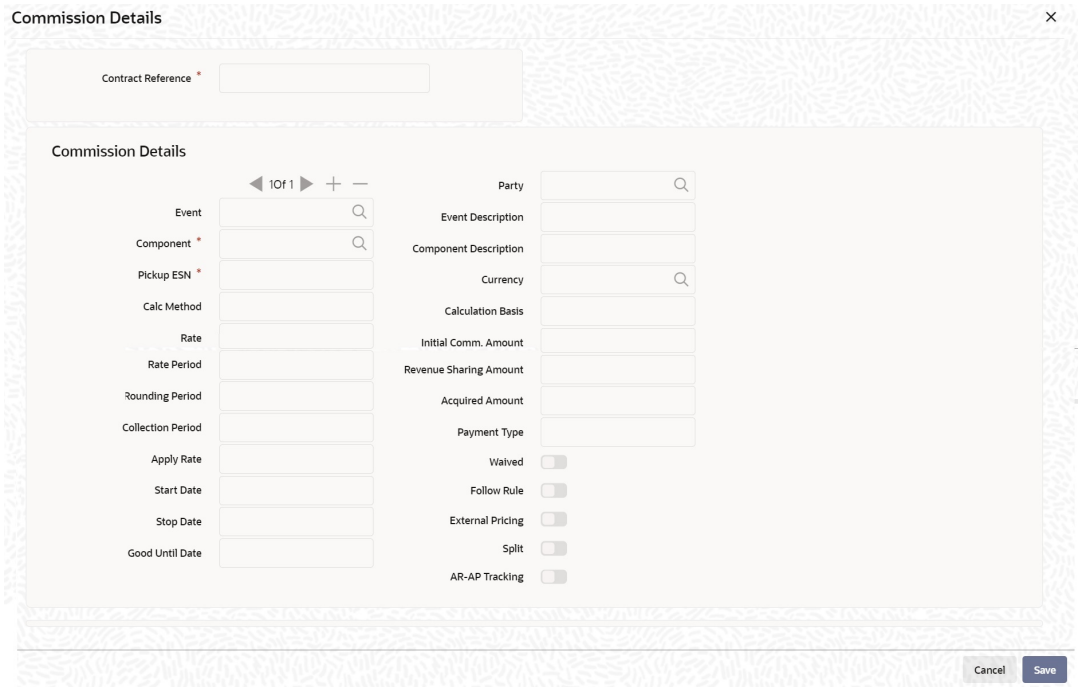
> **Note**
>
> Refer the Charges and Fees User Manual under Modularity for further details about charge maintenance.

17. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Commission** button.

    The **Commission Details** screen is displayed

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-12 Commission Details



Refer the Commission User Manual under Modularity for further details about commissions processing.

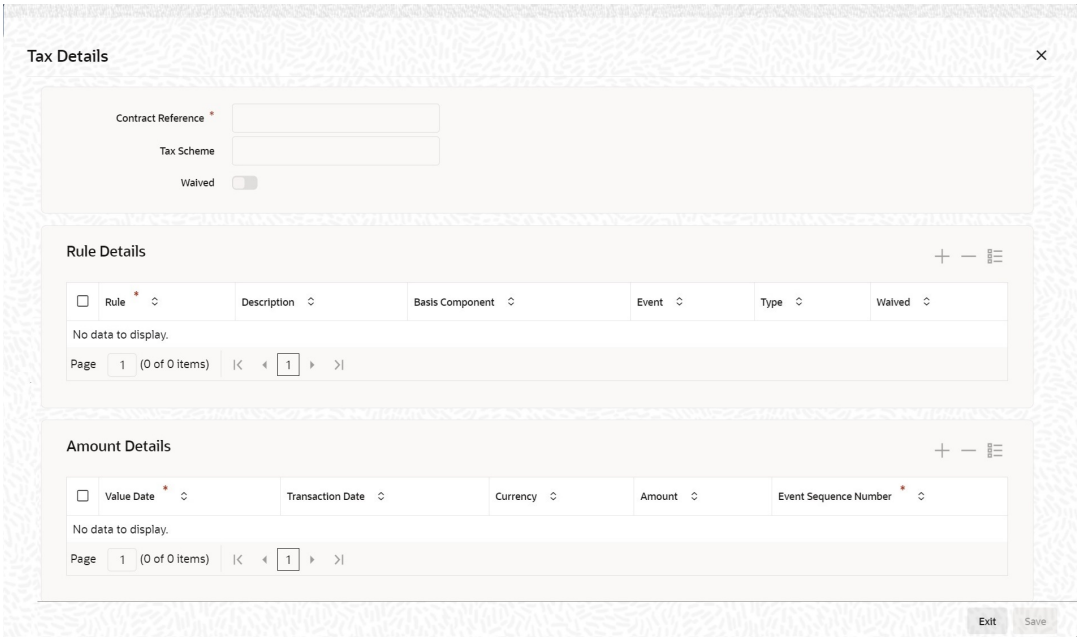
18. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Tax** button.

    The **Tax Details** screen is displayed.

> **Note**
>
> Refer the Tax User Manual under Modularity for further details about tax processing.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-13 Tax Details

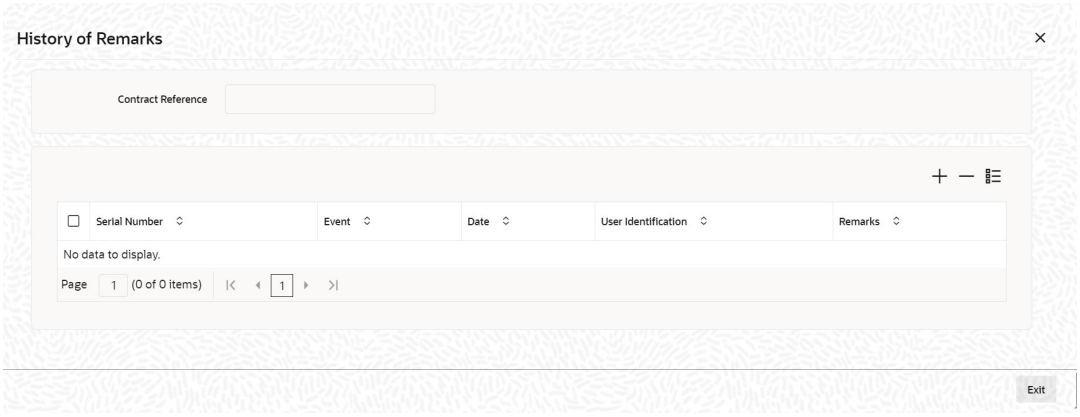


> **Note**
>
> Refer the **Tax User Manual** under **Modularity** for further details about tax processing.

19. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Remarks** button.

    The **History of Remarks** screen is displayed. You can view all the instructions captured on every transaction of the contract.

Figure 6-14 History of Remarks - Field Description



For more details on this screen, refer Remarks in this user manual.

20. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click **Save**.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The contract details are saved. On saving the availment, your User Id will be displayed in the Entry By field at the bottom of the screen. The date and time at which you saved the record will be displayed in the Date/Time field.

21. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click **Authorize** icon.

    The ID of the user who authorized the availment will be displayed in the Auth By field. The date and time at which the availment has been authorized will be displayed in the Date/ Time field. The current status of the Islamic LC contract on which you ares processing the availment, is also displayed in the field Contract Status.

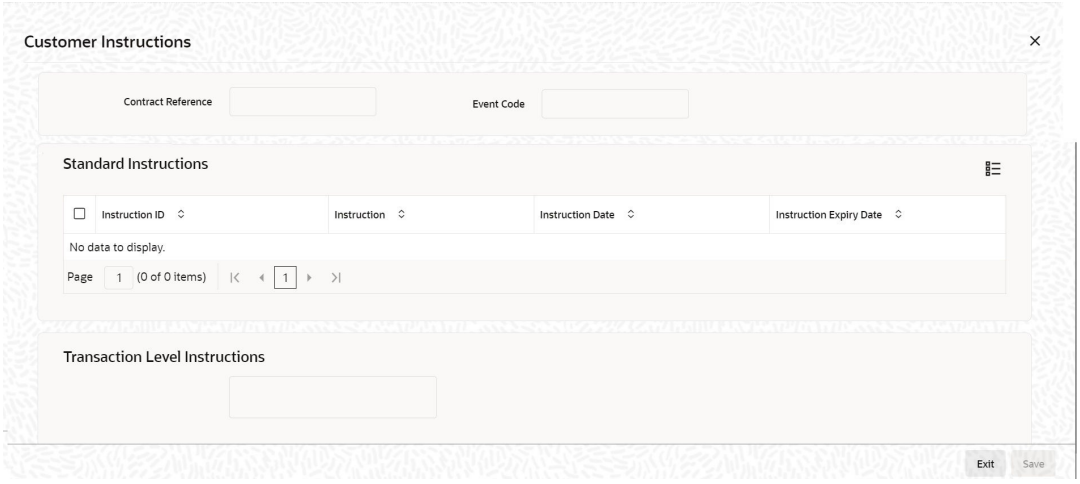
> **Note**
>
> A user bearing a different User ID must authorize an availment that you have entered, before the EOD is run. You cannot authorize an availment from the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen in the following cases:

- the contract has multilevel of authorization pending, the same will be done using the Multilevel Authorization Detailed screen
- the level of authorization is greater than or equal to ‘N’
- the ‘Nth’ or the final level of the users authorization limit is less than the difference between amount financed and sum of the limits of all the users involved in authorizing a transaction, this case holds good when the Cumulative field is checked in the **Product Transaction Limits Maintenance** screen.
- the transaction amount is greater than the authorizer’s authorization limit if the Cumulative field is unchecked in the **Product Transaction Limits Maintenance** screen.

22. On the **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen, click the **Customer Instructions** tab.

    The **Customer Instructions** screen is displayed.

Figure 6-15 Customer Instructions



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-7 Customer Instructions - Field Description

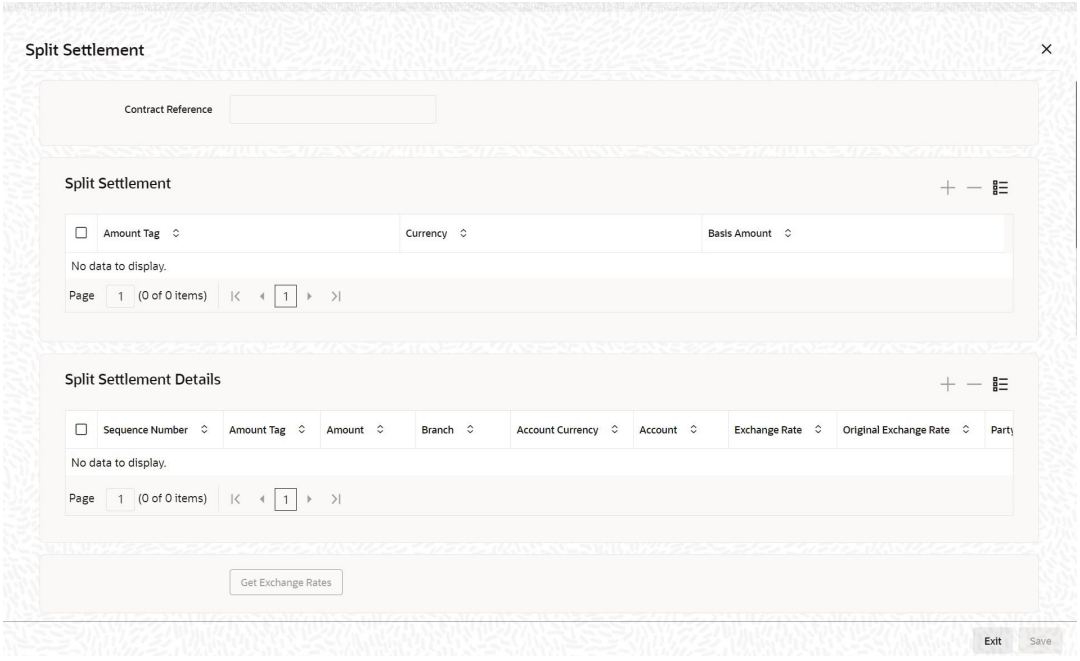
Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	System displays the contract reference number.
Event Code	System displays the Event Code of the contract.
Standard Instructions Customer would want to give Standard instructions in advance to the bank that need to be referred by the bank while processing certain type of transactions.	
Instruction ID	System displays the Instruction ID.
Instruction	System displays the customer standard instruction.
Instruction Date	System displays the start date of the customer instruction.
Instruction Expiry Date	System displays the expiry date of the customer instruction.
Transaction Level Instruction	Enter the transaction level instructions for the event.

23. On the **Islamic Letters of Credit Availment Detail** screen, click the Split Settlement button.

Split Settlement Master and details get populated for the Cash collateral based upon the Availment amount.User cannot modify the details.

The **Split Settlement** screen is displayed.

Figure 6-16 Split Settlement



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-8 Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Field Description
Specify Settlement Split Master	You can specify the details of the settlement split master in the following fields:
Basis Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag involved in the contract. The option list displays all valid amount tags maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. For example, on booking a new contract, the only tag allowed is PRINCIPAL. This is referred to as the basis amount tag. This field is optional.
Currency	The system displays the currency associated with the amount tag. This field is optional.
Basis Amount	The system displays the basis amount associated with the amount tag. contract would be displayed against the amount tag PRINCIPAL. The amount is in terms of the currency associated with the amount tag. You can use Get Exchange Rate button to get the original exchange rates defaulted in the screen. This field is optional.
Specify Settlement Split Details	For each split amount tag, you need to specify the following details: This field is optional.
Amount	Specify the amount for the split amount tag. This amount should not be greater than the amount of the corresponding basis amount tag. The split amount is in the currency of the basis amount tag. This is a mandatory field and you will not be allowed to save the details if you do not specify the amount. This field is optional if percentage of proceeds is provided. Amount will be derived based upon the percentage.
Branch	Specify the branch. The list displays all valid values.This field is mandatory.
Account Currency	Specify the account currency. This field is mandatory.
Account	Specify the account. This list displays all the accounts. For Cash Collateral the account should be account of the counterparty. If the account selected is other than counterparty account, then system will throw error. This field is mandatory.
Loan/Finance Account	Check this box to indicate that the specified account should be the loan account. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	Specify the exchange rate that must be used for the currency conversion. Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The base or the actual exchange rate between the contract currency and collateral currency gets displayed here.
Customer	Select the customer number from the list.
Percentage of Proceeds	Specify the percentage of proceeds.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-8 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Field Description
Negotiated Rate	Specify the negotiated cost rate that should be used for foreign currency transactions between the treasury and the branch. You need to specify the rate only when the currencies involved in the transaction are different. Otherwise, it will be a normal transaction. The system will display an override message if the negotiated rate is not within the exchange rate variance maintained at the product. This field is optional.
Negotiated Reference	Specify the reference number that should be used for negotiation of cost rate, in foreign currency transaction. If you have specified the negotiated cost rate, then you need to specify the negotiated reference number also. **Note** Oracle Banking Trade Finance books then online revaluation entries based on the difference in exchange rate between the negotiated cost rate and transaction rate. This field is optional.

6.2.2 Islamic LC Liability Reversal

When an Islamic LC is availed using a Bill (or using the Availment function from the Browser), the Availment Amount and the Liability Percentage specified for the underlying Islamic LC contract, will be used in computing the default Liability Amount. The default value that is displayed can be changed.

Note

During availment, the Positive Tolerance Percentage specified for the Islamic LC is not taken into account to compute the default value of the Liability Amount.

6.2.3 View Islamic LC Availed

This topic provides the systematic instruction to view Islamic LC availed using **Islamic LC Availment Input** screen.

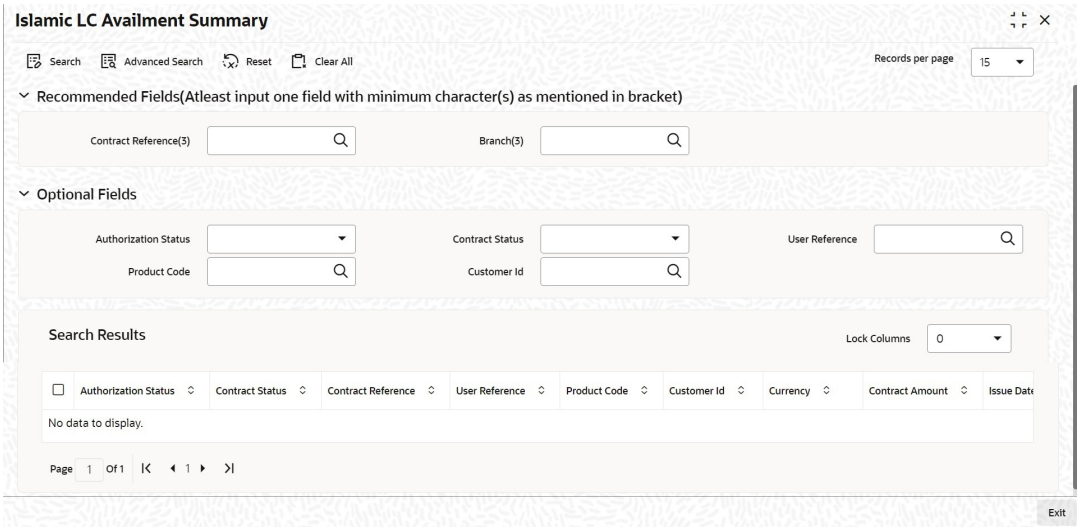
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to the Homepage.

1. On the homepage, type **LISAVMNT** in the text box, and click next arrow.

   The **Islamic LC Availment Summary** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 6-17 Islamic LC Availment Summary



2. Select either **Contract Reference** or **Branch** from the option list and click **Search**.

   The records matching the selection criteria are displayed.

> **Note**
>
> Click **Reset** to clear the records.

3. Select the required filter criteria from the following table and click **Search**.

   The records matching the selection criteria are displayed.
   For more information on the filter criteria, refer the Field Description table given below:

Table 6-9 Islamic LC Availment Summary - Field Description

Field	Description
Authorization Status	Select the authorization status of the contract from the drop-down list.
Contract Reference	Select the contract reference number from the option list.
Product Code	Select the product code from the option list.
Branch	Select the branch code for which you want to check the contract from the option list.
Contract Status	Select the status of the contract for which you want to check the pending function from the drop-down list.
User Reference	Select the user reference number from the option list.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 6-9 (Cont.) Islamic LC Availment Summary - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer Identification	Select the customer identification number from the option list. When you click **Search** button the records matching the specified search criteria are displayed. For each record fetched by the system based on your query criteria, the following details are displayed: • Authorized • Contract Status • Contract Reference • Product Code • Currency • Contract Amount • User Reference • Source Reference • Date • Party Type • Issue Date • Expiry Date • Branch

4. Click **Advanced Search** button to query a contract based on any of the following details.
   a. Currency
   b. Contract Amount
   c. Issue Date
   d. Effective Date
   e. Expiry Date
   f. Closure Date
   g. Customer Type
   h. Customer Reference
   i. Customer Reference Date
   j. Max Amount
   k. Liability Amount
   l. Amount
   m. Outstanding Amount
   n. Settlement Method
   o. Latest Shipment Date
   p. External Reference Number
   q. Branch

   The search results are displayed.

(Optional) Enter the result of the procedure here.

6.2.4 Reversal of an Availment

When an Islamic BC contract under an Islamic LC contract is reversed, the system will automatically reverse the corresponding availment on the Islamic LC contract. When a

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Reversal of availment (RAVL) event is triggered on the Islamic LC contract, Islamic LC outstanding amount and the Islamic LC Liability amount is updated.

You can manually reverse the availment made under Islamic LC. All availment made on the Islamic LC will be displayed. You can select an availment for reversal in the availment screen.The system will not allow the manual reversal of availments, triggered by Islamic BC contract from the availment screen.

To reverse the details of an Islamic LC, click on ‘Reverse’ icon in the tool bar. On reversing an availment on an Islamic LC, the system passes reversal entries for the availment.

When a bill booked under an Islamic LC is partially or fully liquidated and the Islamic BC is reversed, the system will reverse the corresponding availment automatically and update the Islamic LC outstanding and liability amounts.

When an Islamic BC contract booked under an Islamic LC revolving by time and non cumulative is reversed after the reinstatement of the Islamic LC, the system will not reverse the availment. Similarly for Islamic LCs revolving by value, the system will not reverse availment if the BC contract is reversed after reinstatement of the Islamic LC.

Reversal of Islamic LC Liability

When an Islamic LC is availed using a Bill (or using the Availment function from the browser), the Availment Amount and the Liability Percentage specified for the underlying Islamic LC contract will be used in computing the default Liability Amount. This default value can be changed.

> **Note**
>
> During availment, the Positive Tolerance Percentage specified for the Islamic LC is not taken into account to compute the default value of the Liability Amount.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7

Amend Details of an Islamic LC

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Introduction
2. Procedure to Amend an Islamic LC
3. Islamic LC Amendment Details
4. Operations on Confirmation Record
5. Upload Islamic LC Amendment

- Introduction
- Procedure to Amend an Islamic LC
- Islamic LC Amendment Details
- Operations on Confirmation Record
- Upload Islamic LC Amendment

7.1 Introduction

An amendment to an Islamic Letter of Credit (Islamic LC) signifies any change made to the terms of an Islamic LC after it has been authorized. An amendment can be made after an Islamic LC has been authorised.

The following are some examples when you would amend the details of an Islamic LC:

- You, as the issuing bank, have received an application from your customer to change the terms of the Islamic LC
- You as the advising bank have received instructions from the issuing bank to amend an Islamic LC as advised.

7.2 Procedure to Amend an Islamic LC

While in the detailed view of the Islamic LC, you can amend the details of the contract depending on whether:

- The Islamic LC has been authorized
- The Islamic LC has not been authorized even once after it was input

Depending on the authorization status of an Islamic LC contract, you can amend its details as follows:

When you have captured the details of a contract and it is not yet authorized, its attributes, financial as well as non-financial, is changed, even if the details have been saved. If accounting entries are involved in the change, the old entries are deleted and new ones passed.

Once a contract has been authorized, additional entries are passed, depending on the nature of amendment.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For each amendment, a new version of the Islamic LC are generated. Different versions of the Islamic LC will also be generated by events like reinstatement and reopening. In the ‘Contract Detailed View screen, you can view the different versions by clicking on back for the previous version and forward on the screen for the next one. When a customer requests for changes in the terms of the contract, the details of the Islamic LC are amended accordingly and an amendment instrument is generated. The amendment of the following details of an Islamic LC, result in the generation of an amendment instrument:

- An amendment in the Islamic LC amount
- An amendment in the expiry date
- A change in the latest shipment date
- Any change to the free format instructions for the Islamic LC

If there are changes in the terms of the Islamic LC other than IN the amount, the expiry date or latest shipment date, indicate the same in the form of a free format instruction, for the amendment instrument.

In the case of an amendment, you have the option to reissue the Guarantee. If you choose to do so, the REIS (Reissue of Guarantee) event are triggered.

The system checks for any previous amendment. In case no amendment has been performed, the system displays the message as “Do you want to Reissue the Guarantee?”

Click on OK to reissue the Guarantee or click on Cancel to process the amendment of Guarantee.

The system checks if the REIS event is maintained for the product. If the event is maintained, the system does not allow any further change in the Islamic LC contract details apart from FFT fields, which is modified/added but you cannot delete the existing data.

The system creates a new version for the Reissue event and the event inherits all the contract information defined for the authorized BISS event. The version also inherits the information from the subsystem excluding Charges and Commission. No commission is associated with the Reissue event and charges are maintained for the REIS event, which is processed along with the reissue event.

When the Reissue event is authorized, the advices maintained in the REIS event are processed.

- Indicate a Change of Value for a Field
- Commission and Charges for the Amendment
- Amendment of an Unauthorized Islamic LC

7.2.1 Indicate a Change of Value for a Field

When the Islamic LC amount is being changed, the new amount of the Islamic LC should be indicated after the amendment.

For example, the original Islamic LC amount was USD 100,000 and you want to make it USD 150,000. In the Islamic LC amount field, during amendment, enter the amount as USD 150,000. The system will calculate the increase in amount and pass the appropriate entries.

The Islamic LC amendment instrument will have both the old and new values.

The original Islamic LC amount was USD 100,000 and you want to change it to USD 75,000. In the Islamic LC amount field, during amendment, enter the amount as USD 75,000. The system will calculate the decrease in amount and pass the appropriate entries. The Islamic LC

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

amendment instrument will have both the old and new values. When you are changing the expiry date or the latest shipment date, you should enter the new date in their respective fields.

7.2.2 Commission and Charges for the Amendment

While amending the details of an Islamic LC, you can specify the commissions and charges that you want to levy for processing the amendment. These are effective from the date of amendment. It will not affect the booking commission in any way.

Amendment commission is computed based on the Claim Expiry Date for bank guarantee and advice of guarantee.

Refer to the chapter Commission calculation for details on how commission is calculated, for an amendment.

7.2.3 Amendment of an Unauthorized Islamic LC

The amendment of an unauthorized Islamic LC is considered as a modification. When an Islamic LC that you have entered is not yet authorized, you can change all its details except the details in the header (contract reference number, the product and type of operation). To change any detail on an Islamic LC that has been stored and not authorized, delete the Islamic LC and input a new one.

After amending the details of the unauthorized Islamic LC, save the contract with the new information. On saving the amendment, all the accounting entries that were passed during the input of the contract and the earlier accounting entries specified for the Islamic LC, are deleted. A fresh set of accounting entries are passed for the amended Islamic LC contract.

As the advices to be generated for an Islamic LC, are generated only at the time of authorization, no action needs to be taken regarding messages.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note

The system will not allow you to amend the following fields in the ‘Islamic LC Contract’ screen:

- Their Reference Number for Party Types ABK, BEN, COB and ISB (in the ‘Parties’ tab)
- Issue Date (in the ‘Main’ tab)
- Expiry Date (in the ‘Main’ tab)
- Islamic LC Amount (in the ‘Main’ tab)
- Positive and Negative Tolerance (in the ‘Main’ tab)
- Additional Amount Covered message (in the ‘Others’ tab)
- Shipment From (in the ‘Ship/Docs’ tab)
- Shipment To (in the ‘Ship/Docs’ tab)
- Port of Loading (in the ‘Ship/Docs’ tab)
- Port of Discharge (in the ‘Ship/Docs’ tab)
- Latest date of shipment (in the ‘Ship/Docs’ tab)
- Shipment period (in the ‘Ship/Docs’ tab)
- Sender to receiver information (in the ‘Parties’ tab)

However, you can amend the above fields in the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen. This screen is explained in the following section.

7.3 Islamic LC Amendment Details

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Confirm the Islamic LC Amendment
2. Authorize Amendment Details
3. Confirm Amended Details
4. Islamic LC Amendment Details
5. Amend details using the Contract screen

- Confirm the Islamic LC Amendment
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to Confirm the Islamic LC Amendment.
- Authorize Amendment Details
- Confirm Amended Details
- Amend details using the Contract screen
- Reject Amended Details
- Islamic LC Amendment Details
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to view Islamic LC Amendment Details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7.3.1 Confirm the Islamic LC Amendment

This topic provides the systematic instructions to Confirm the Islamic LC Amendment.

The option to amend these fields is also available in the **Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input** screen. However, the amendments will become effective only upon receiving the confirmation from the beneficiary.

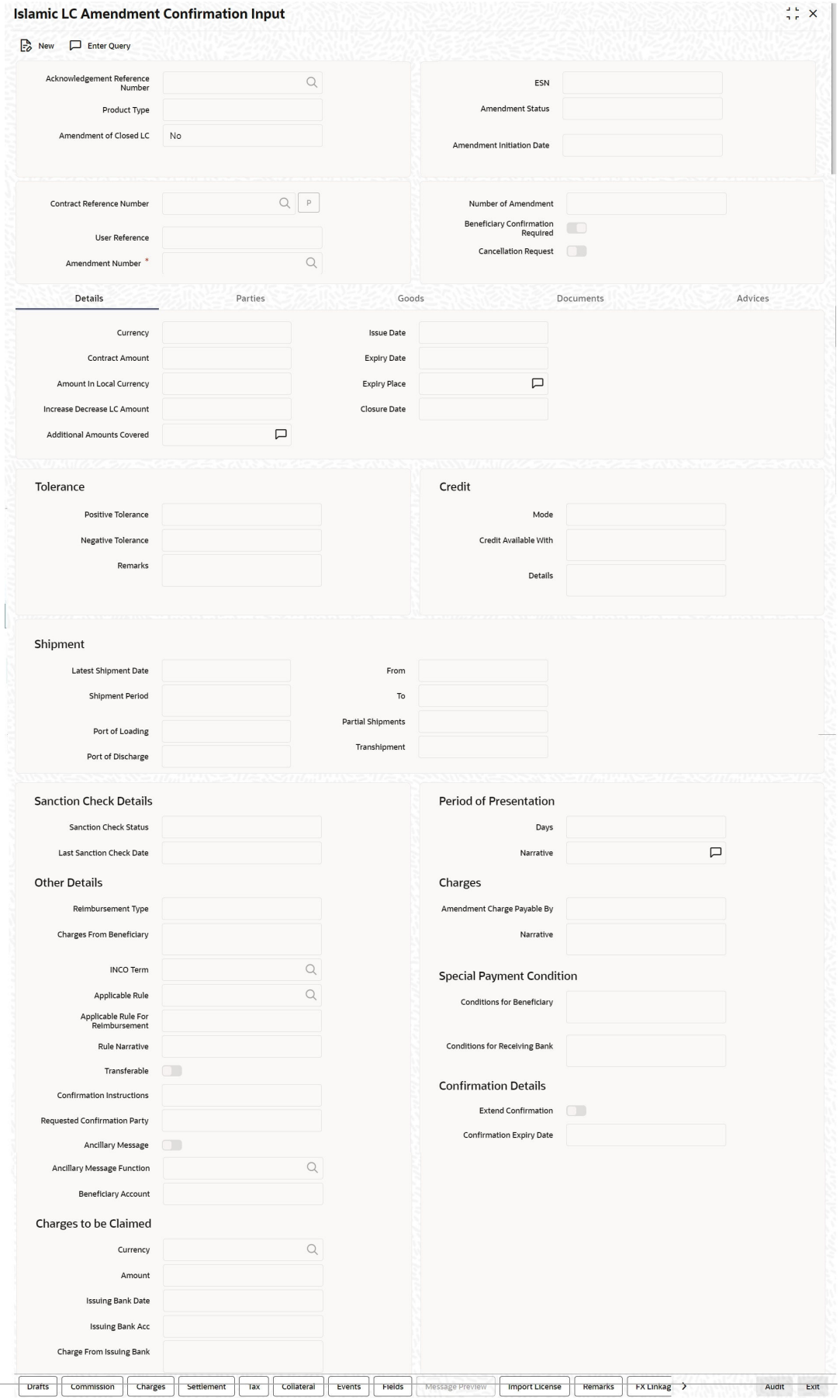
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDAMEND** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-1 Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. On the **Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input**, Click **New**.
3. On the **New** tab, specify the details as required.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 7-1 New tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Acknowledgment Reference Number	Specify the acknowledgment reference number. Alternatively, you can select the reference number from the option list. The list displays all the acknowledgment reference numbers for contract amendment registered in the system. **Note** Registration status is updated as Processed when the amendment request is processed by selecting Acknowledgment Reference Number.
ESN	The system displays the event sequence number.
Product Type	The system displays the product code.
Amendment Status	The system displays the amendment status.
Amendment Initiation Date	The system displays the amendment initiation date.
Contract Reference Number	Select the reference number of the contract to be amended from the option list provided. This option list will display all contracts that are authorized.
Number of Amendment	The system displays the number of amendments based on the contract reference number. You can amend an LC multiple times before the previous amendment is confirmed or rejected.
User Reference	The system displays the contract reference number as user reference number.
Amendment Number	The system displays the amendment number
Beneficiary Confirmation Required	The system checks this box by default. When amendment is initiated with 'Beneficiary Confirmation Required' enabled, then the event AMNV is triggered and MT 707 is generated. If amendment is initiated without enabling 'Beneficiary Confirmation Required', then the system triggers AMND on save.
Cancellation Request	Check this box to request cancellation. If Cancel flag is checked, only cancel information shows a message on authorization of amendment. If Cancel flag is enabled, other field amendments are not considered and CANCEL event is triggered on amendment confirmation. An override message "Cancellation Request flag is checked, Islamic LC is canceled on Confirmation" is displayed on confirmation.
Amendment of closed LC	If Amendment of closed LC value is 'Y' then Contract reference no LOV will display the closed contract else it will display only active contracts. If the Amendment of closed LC is initiated with beneficiary confirmation AMNV event is triggered. After beneficiary confirmation ACON and ROPN event is triggered. If the Amendment of closed LC is initiated is initiated without beneficiary confirmation ROPN event will get triggered.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-1 (Cont.) New tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Amount in Local Currency	When FCY amount is given in 'Contract Amount' field for Islamic LC during Amendment, system converts in local currency and respective value is displayed in this screen. This field is mandatory for FCY contracts
If the following data elements are amended during the previous amendments and the beneficiary consent has not been updated in the system for these amendment, then the system will not allow to proceed with the current amendment: • Expiry Date • Contract Amount • Positive Tolerance/Negative Tolerance • Additional Amounts Covered • From Place • Port of Loading • Port of Discharge • To • Latest Shipment Date • Shipment Period	

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-1 (Cont.) New tab - Field Description

Field	Description
The system displays an error message in the following cases: • If beneficiary confirmation is pending for an amendment and LC amount is modified for that amendment and if the user is initiating a fresh amendment with a change in tolerance value. • If beneficiary confirmation is pending for an amendment and Expiry Date is modified for that amendment and if the user is initiating a fresh amendment with a change in Latest Shipment Date or Shipment Period. • If beneficiary confirmation is pending for an amendment and Latest Shipment Date is modified for that amendment and if the user is initiating a fresh amendment with a change in Expiry date. • If beneficiary confirmation is pending for an amendment and Latest Shipment Date is modified for that amendment and if the user is initiating a fresh amendment with a change in Shipment Period. Upon selection of the contract, the following details are displayed in editable mode: • Currency – The contract currency • Version Number • Contract Amount - The amount that is availed under the Islamic LC • Issue Date - The date on which the Islamic LC is issued. You cannot specify a future date here. • **Expiry Date -** The date on which the Islamic LC is scheduled to expire. On confirmation of guarantee amendment, revised Expiry Date is propagated to '**LIDTRONL**'. System derives Claim Expiry date based on the new Expiry Date. • **Closure Date –** This the date Islamic LC is scheduled to be closed. You can modify this particular value. • **Additional Amounts Covered -** This indicates the value to be carried in field 39C of the SWIFT messages MT700 and MT740 • **Increase Decrease of Islamic LC Amount -** A display field which indicates the amount of Islamic LC increased or decreased. • **Latest Shipment Date -** The last date by which the shipment of the goods has to take place. This date should not be earlier than the Issue Date of the Islamic LC or later than the expiry date • **Shipment Period -** The extension of the shipping period. You can enter the Shipment Period only if you have not specified the Latest Shipment Date • **Port of Loading –** The port from where the goods transacted under the Islamic LC are loaded. • **Port of Discharge –** The destination port to which the goods transacted under Islamic LC should be sent • **From Place -** The place from where goods are to be dispatched or transported • **To Place -** The final destination to which goods are to be transported/delivered • **Positive Tolerance%** - The percentage that is to be added to the Islamic LC amount to arrive at the Maximum Islamic LC amount • **Negative Tolerance%** - The percentage that should be subtracted from the Islamic LC amount. • **Applicable Rule For Reimbursement** - Select the applicable rule for reimbursement. • **Confirmation Instructions** - Select the confirmation option to indicate that the Islamic LC can have an associated confirmation message. In Islamic LC if Confirm/May Confirm option is checked cannot be amended to uncheck. • **Requested Confirmation Party** - Specify the confirmation party type (Advising Bank, Advice Through Bank or Confirming Bank). • **Party details in the 'Parties' tab of the screen** – You can amend 'Their Reference Number' and the 'Dated' fields values only. • Free Format Text details in the 'FFT' tab of the screen • **Beneficiary Account** - Specify the account details of beneficiary. This field is read only. • **Sanction Check Status** - The system displays the sanction check process • **Last Sanction Check Date** - The system displays the last sanction check date. For more information on processing sanction check refer 'Processing Sanction Check' section in LC user manual.	

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-1 (Cont.) New tab - Field Description

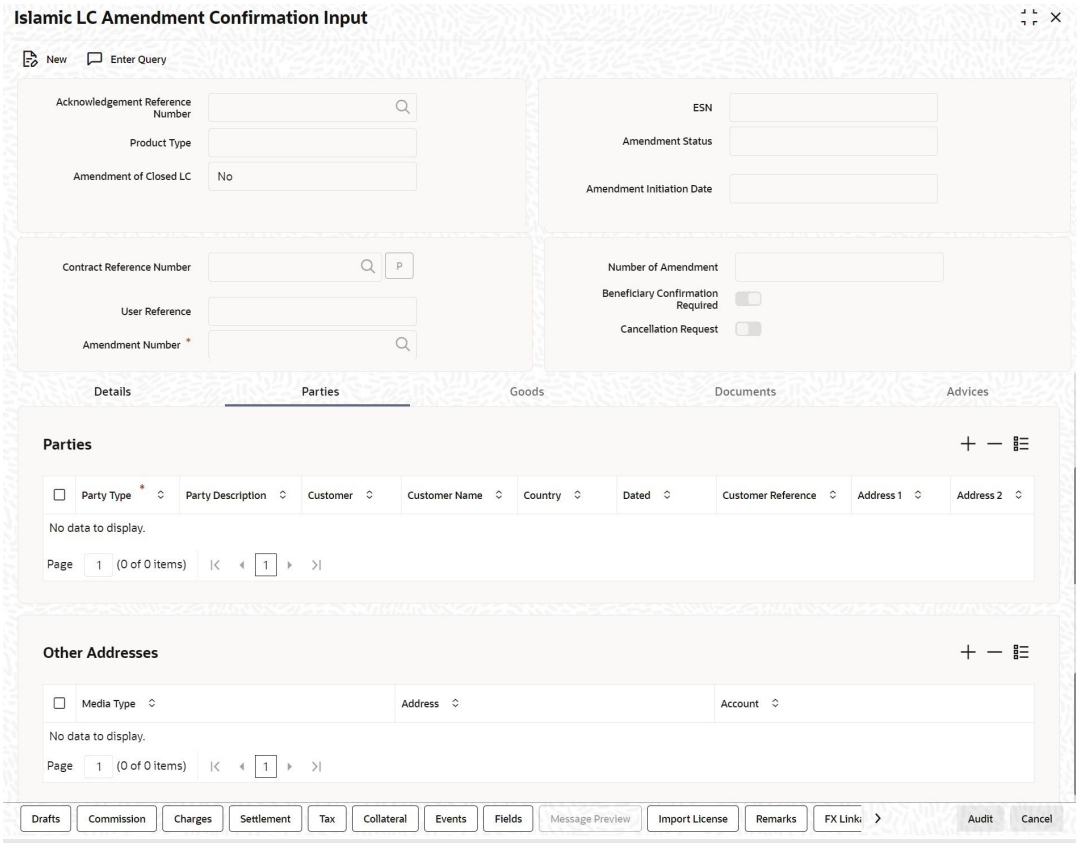
Field	Description
Make the necessary amendments. Save the changes. To save, click save icon in the toolbar of the screen. On Save system validates if there are any unsettled claims and provides appropriate override.	
The system will update the following details in the audit trail of the screen: • **Input By** – Your login id • **Date Stamp** – The date and time at which you saved the contract • **Amendment Status** – The status will always be 'Unconfirmed' • **Auth Status** – The status will always be 'Unauthorized' For details on the amendable fields, refer the chapter 'Processing an Islamic LC contract' in this User Manual.	
Settlement, Commission and Tax Subsystems Amendment	Settlement, Commission and Tax subsystems are introduced in LIDAMEND for amendments with and without beneficiary confirmation.System is enhanced to support the same. Amendment confirmation is modified as two stage process. User are provided with the facility to modify subsystems during amendment confirmation.
Confirmation Expiry Date	The system displays the confirmation expiry date for the confirmed or silent confirmed Export contracts. System populates this field as below For the confirmed Export LC contracts, a. if the Extend Confirmation is checked and if the expiry date is modified then it will display the modified expiry date in Subsystem pickup or save. b. if the Extend Confirmation is unchecked and if the expiry is modified, it will display the old expiry date in Subsystem pickup or save.
Extend Confirmation	This option indicates to extend the confirmation for confirmed or silent confirmed Export LC.By default this checkbox will be enabled for confirmed or silent confirmed export LC.User can uncheck the same.

4. On the **Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Parties**.

   Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input - Parties screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-2 Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input - Parties



5. On the **Parties** tab, specify the details as required.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 7-2 Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Party Type	The system defaults the party type. The user can edit the party type using the adjoining option list that displays all the party types available for the Islamic LC.
Customer	The system defaults the customer number. However, you can modify it. Specify the 'Customer' for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC Code is not mapped with that customer number then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining list.
Customer Name	The system defaults the customer name. However, you can modify it.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-2 (Cont.) Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Country	The system defaults the country of the customer. However, you can modify it.
Party Description	The system defaults the party description. However, you can modify it.
Dated	The system defaults the date on which the party joined. However, you can modify it.
Customer Reference	The system defaults the customer reference number. However, you can modify it.
Address 1 to 4	The system defaults the address of the party.
Language	The system defaults the language in which advices are sent to the customer.
Issuer Bank	The system defaults the name of the issuer bank.
Media Type	The system defaults the media type. You can select a different medium from the adjoining option list.
Address	The system defaults the other address of the party. However, you can edit this field.
Account	The system defaults the account number. However, you can edit this field.

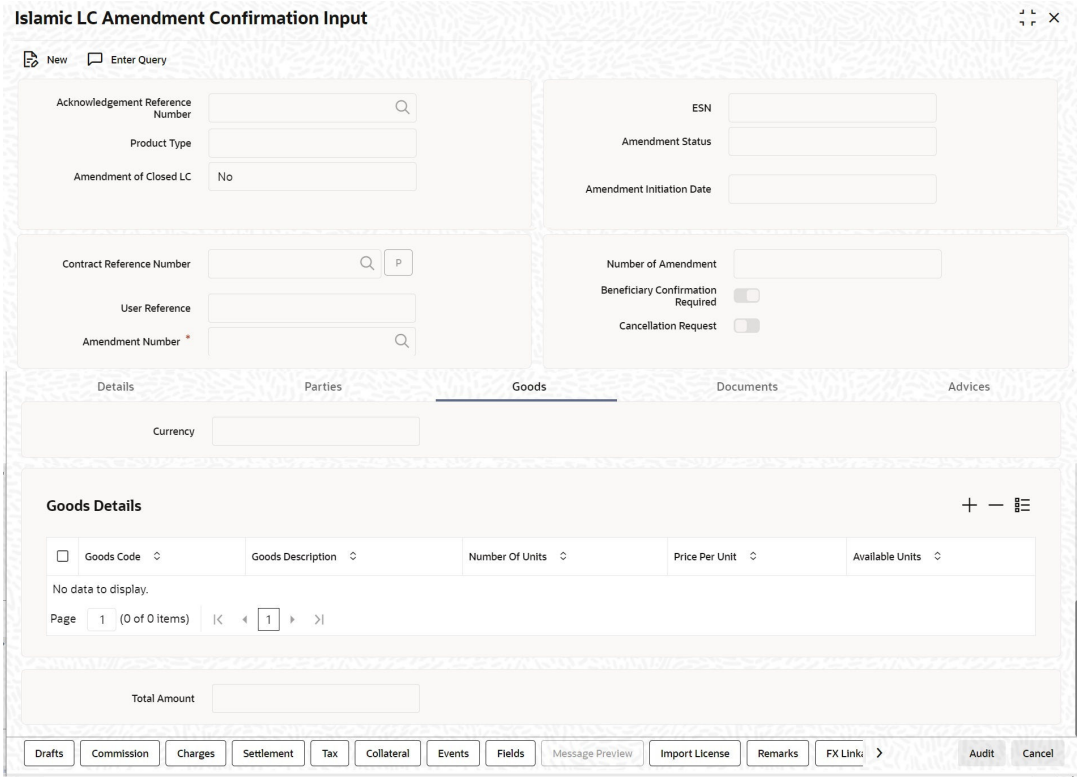
6. On the **Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click the **Goods** tab.

   The **Goods Details** is displayed. The **Goods** tab maintains multiple goods details.

7. Click on add icon to add the goods details.

   A new row is added. You can specify the goods details.

Figure 7-3 Goods



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For more information on the fields, refer the Field Description table given below:

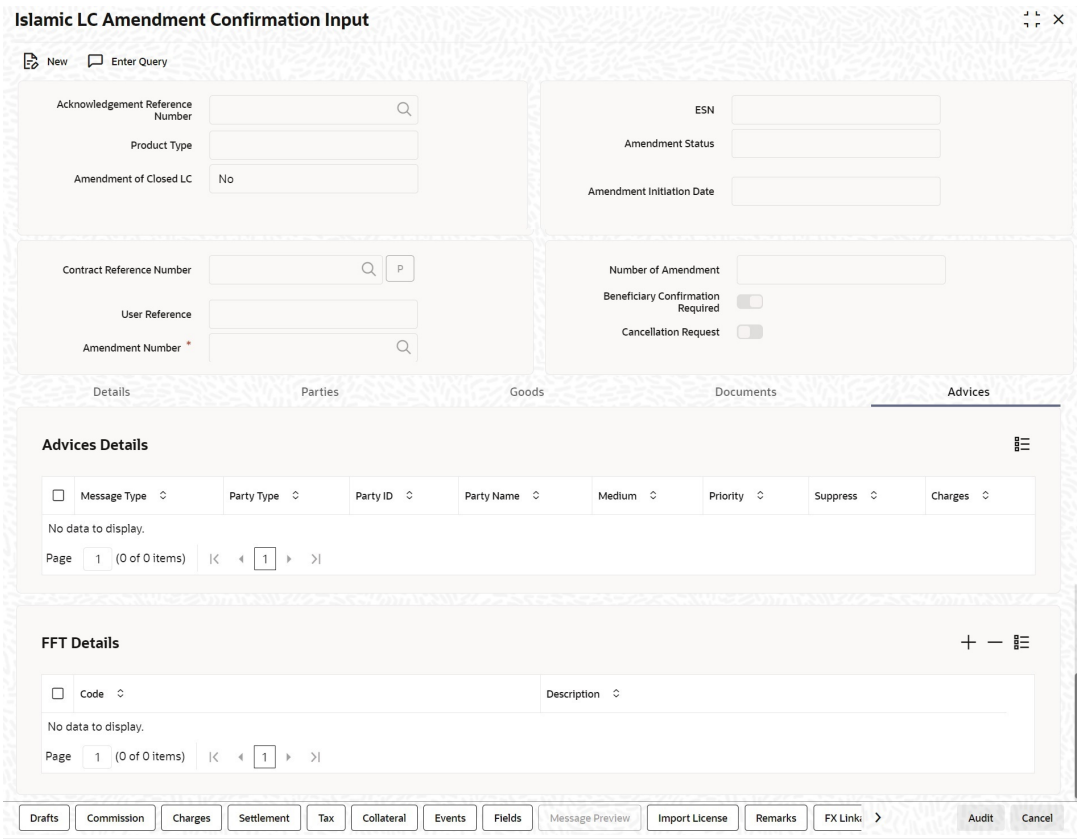
Table 7-3 Goods- Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	The system displays the currency by default once you select the contract reference number.
Goods Details	Specify the Goods Details: This field is optional.
Goods Code	Select the Goods Code from the list provided. This field is optional.
Goods Description	The system displays the description of the Goods. This field is optional.
Number of Units	The system displays the number of units. This field is optional.
Price Per Unit	The system displays the price per unit. This field is optional.
Available Units	The system displays the available units of the goods.

8. On the **Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Advices**.

Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input screen with Advices tab details is displayed.

Figure 7-4 Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input screen - Advices



9. On the **Advices** screen, specify the details as per requirement

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-4 Advices - Field Description

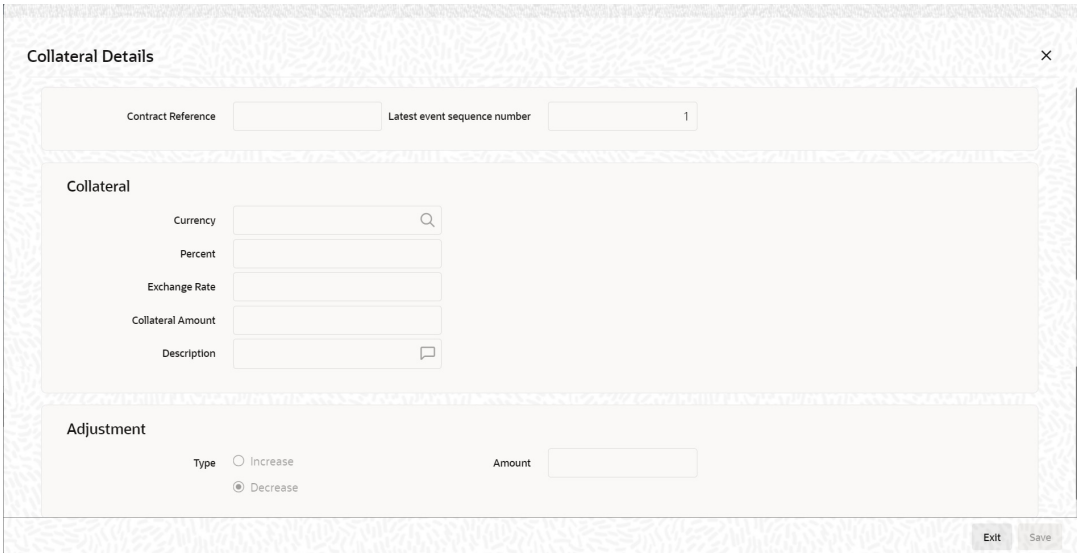
Field	Description
Message type	Check the box to view the advice details.
Party type	The system displays the party type for which the advice is generated.
Party Id	The system displays the party id for which the advice is generated.
Party Name	The system displays the name of the party for which the advice is generated.
Medium	The system displays the medium through which the advice is sent. The user can select a different medium from the list. If the medium is modified, the user must provide the new address in the 'Other Addresses' section, in the 'Parties' tab.
Priority	The system displays the priority of sending the advice. However, you can change the priority.
Suppress	The system displays if the advice is suppressed or not. However, you can edit this field.
Charges	The system displays the charges involved. However, you can edit the charges.
FFT Details	The user can select a message from the 'Advices Details' section and associate a code and a description to it.
Code	The user can select the appropriate code from the adjoining option list.
Description	The system displays the description of the selected code. However, you can modify this description. **Note** Advices for a party are sent to the default media maintained in the Customer Addresses table. However, you can send the advices through a different medium by doing the following: • Maintaining media details in 'Other Address' in Parties screen • Indicating the medium in the Advices screen • Suppressing the Advices which is 'N' by default.

10. On the **Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Collateral**.

Collateral Detail screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-5 Collateral Detail



11. On the **Collateral Details** screen, specify the details as required.

    For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 7-5 Collateral Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	Specify the currency in which cash is offered as collateral.
Percent	If you specify the cash that is to be collected as collateral as a percentage of the Islamic LC amount, the equivalent amount is displayed. This amount is taken to be in the currency, defined as the collateral currency.
Exchange Rate	If the collateral currency and the currency in which the Islamic LC is issued are different, you should also specify an exchange rate to be used in the conversion. The value of the collateral is determined based on this exchange rate.
Amount	You can specify the cash collateral as an amount. In this case you do not need to specify a percentage. However if you specified the collateral as a percentage of the Islamic LC amount, the actual amount is computed in the collateral currency by the system.
Description	Enter a brief description of the collateral.
Type	At any time during the lifecycle of an Islamic LC, you may want to increase or decrease the value of the cash, accepted as collateral on Islamic LC. This is done by way of an amendment to the Islamic LC. The cash collateral may increase or decrease, without changing the Islamic LC amount. On the other hand, a change in the Islamic LC amount may necessitate a change to the collateral amount. If you wish to increase the collateral amount, indicate Increase on this screen and enter the amount by which, you want to increase the cash accepted as collateral. If you wish to decrease the collateral amount that you have collected while issuing an Islamic LC, indicate decrease on this screen. Enter the amount by which you want to decrease the cash accepted as collateral.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-5 (Cont.) Collateral Details - Field Description

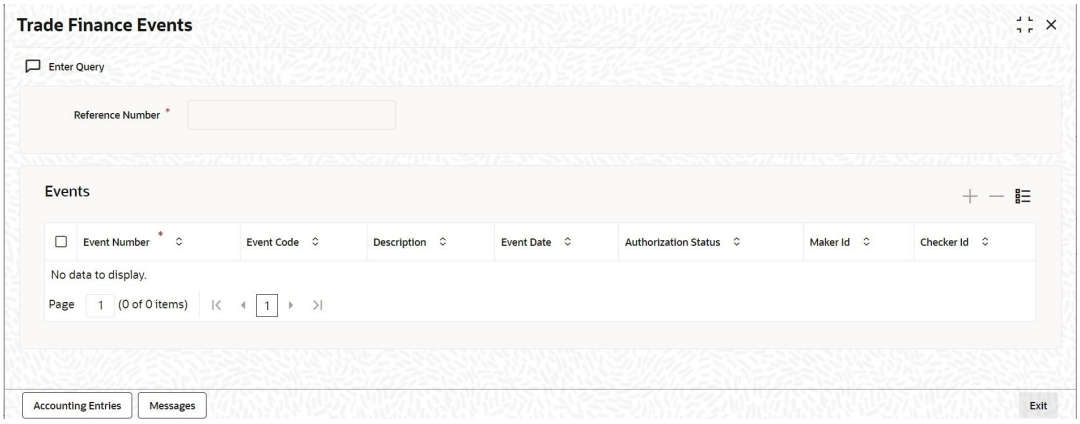
Field	Description
Amount	Enter the amount by which you want to decrease the cash accepted as collateral. The collateral deposit account will automatically increase or reduce based on the specifications you make.

12. On the **Islamic Letters of Credit Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Events**.

    The details of events that have already taken place on the contract are displayed, along with the date on which the event took place.

    Main screen with Events details is displayed.

Figure 7-6 Main

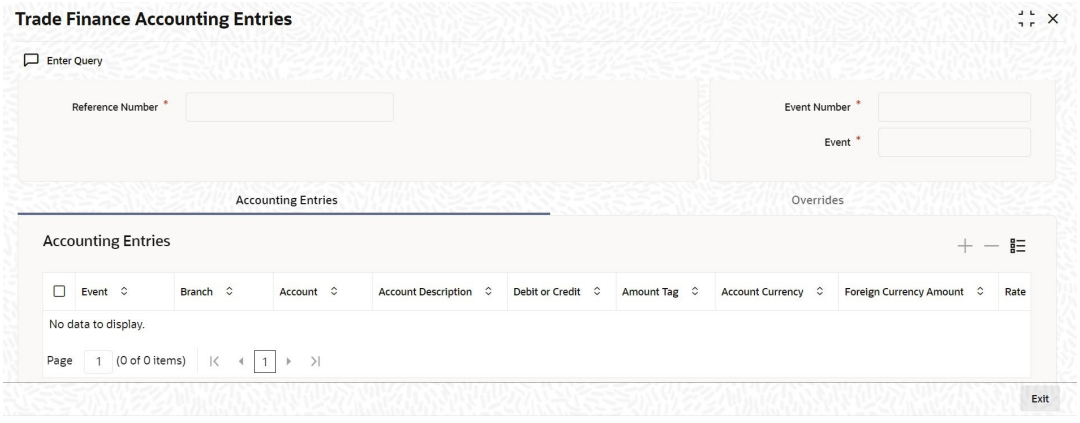


13. On the **Events** Screen, click **Account Entries**.

    Accounting Entries for the Event that is highlighted is displayed.

    Accounting Entries screen is displayed.

Figure 7-7 Accounting Entries



14. View the Details as per Requirement.

    The following information is provided for each event:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

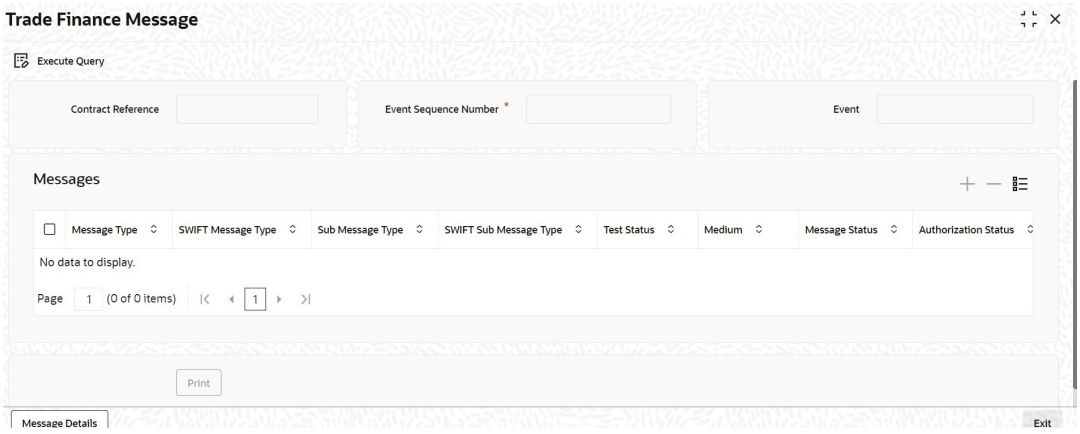
- Branch
- Account
- Transaction Code
- Booking Date
- Value Date
- Dr/Cr indicator
- Currency
- CCY (Currency)
- Amount in contract CCY
- Amount in local currency
- All the overrides that were given for an event will also be displayed.

15. On the **Main** Screen, click **Message**.

    List of advices applicable to a particular event in the lifecycle of Islamic LC is displayed.

    Message screen with messages applicable to the event is displayed.

Figure 7-8 Message



16. View the Details as per Requirement.

    The following information is provided for each event:

    - The message type
    - The Name and ID of the recipient of the message
    - The status of the message

17. Click **Ok** to save the details OR **Exit** to close the screen.
18. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Fields**.

    Fields screen is displayed.

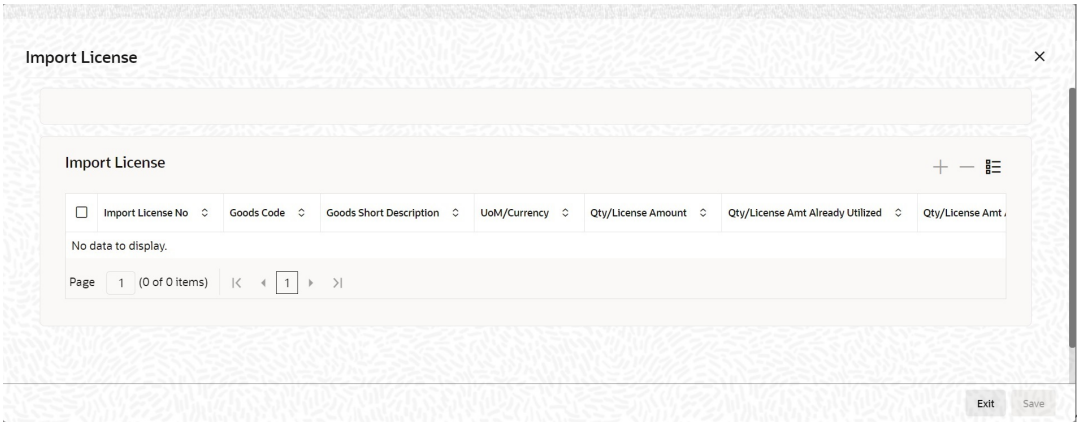
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-9 Fields

19. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Import License**.

    The **Import License** screen is displayed.

Figure 7-10 Import License



20. On the **Import License** screen, specify the details as required.

    For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 7-6 Import License - Field Description

Field	Description
Import License No	Select the import license number from the adjoining option list.
Goods Code	Select the goods code from the adjoining option list.
Goods Short description	The system displays the goods code description maintained in the 'Bills and Collections Commodity Code Maintenance' screen.
UoM/Currency	The system displays the unit of measurement or currency captured for the goods code of import license.
Qty/License Amount	The system displays the Quantity or License Amount captured for the goods code of import license.
Qty/License Amt Already Utilized	The system displays the sum total of Quantity or License Amount already utilized for the goods code.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

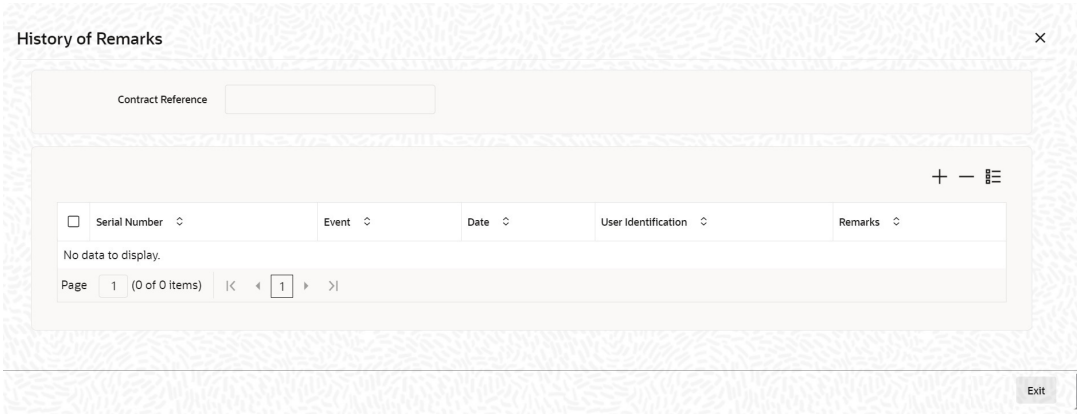
Table 7-6 (Cont.) Import License - Field Description

Field	Description
Qty/License Amt Already Reinstated	The system displays the sum total of Quantity or License Amount already reinstated for the goods code.
Available Qty/License Amt	The system displays either the Available Quantity or Available License Amount for the goods code.
Qty/License Amt Utilized	Specify the quantity or the license amount utilized.
Qty/License Amt Reinstated	Specify the quantity or the license amount reinstated. After authorization, you cannot modify or delete import licenses linked to an Islamic LC contract. The system allows utilization details only for an import license linked to an Islamic import LC contract. The system displays an error message if reinstatement details are specified. The utilization maintained for an import license is updated on save of an amendment capture. Subsequently if the amendment is marked as 'rejected', then the system automatically reinstates the utilization captured. If reinstatement details are captured for an import license, then the same should be captured while marking the amendment status as confirmed. During status marking, the system displays the Islamic import LC contract information in the Islamic LC Contract Input screen and the Import License sub-system in the screen might be accessed for input of reinstatement details. The system displays an empty Import License sub screen where the user can input or add new rows to reinstate. When a reduction in Islamic LC amount is performed as an amendment for an Islamic import LC contract with import licenses, then the system will validate whether reinstatement details are entered for the linked import licenses. If not, the system displays an override message as “Reinstatement details are not entered”. When a utilization for an import license is already entered as part of an amendment capture and if utilization details are captured again while marking the amendment status as 'confirmed' in Islamic LC Contract screen, the system displays an override message as “Utilization is already marked as a part of amendment capture”.

21. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Remarks**.

History of Remarks screen is displayed.

Figure 7-11 History of Remarks



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

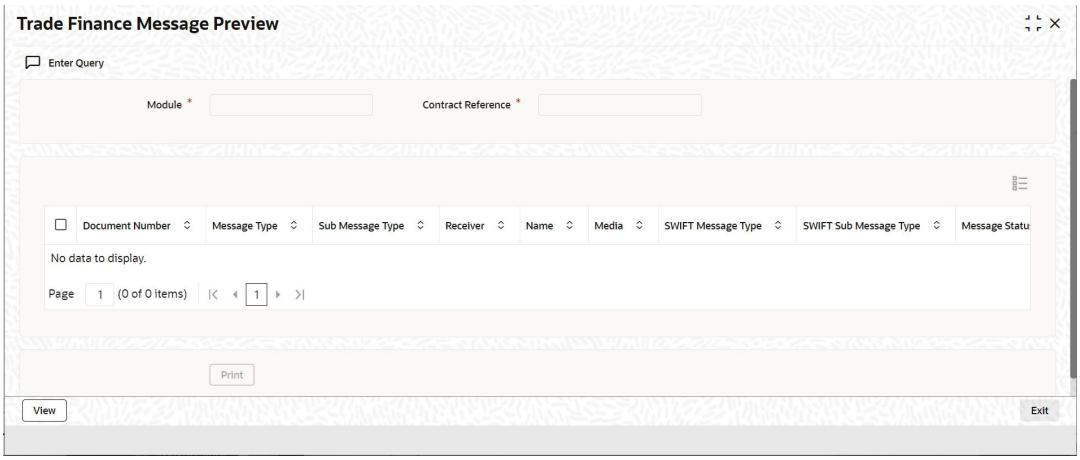
22. On the **History of Remarks** screen, specify the details as required.

    For more details on this screen refer to the section Remarks in this user manual.

23. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, click **Message Preview**.

    Message Preview screen is displayed.

Figure 7-12 Message Preview



24. On the **Message Preview** screen, specify the details as required.

    For the contract, you can view the following details of the messages:

    - The document number generated for the message/advice
    - Type of message generated for the event
    - Customer ID of the receiver of the message/advice
    - Name of the receiver of the message/advice
    - Media of transmitting the message/advice (Mail/SWIFT)
    - SWIFT message type of the message
    - Status of the message/advice

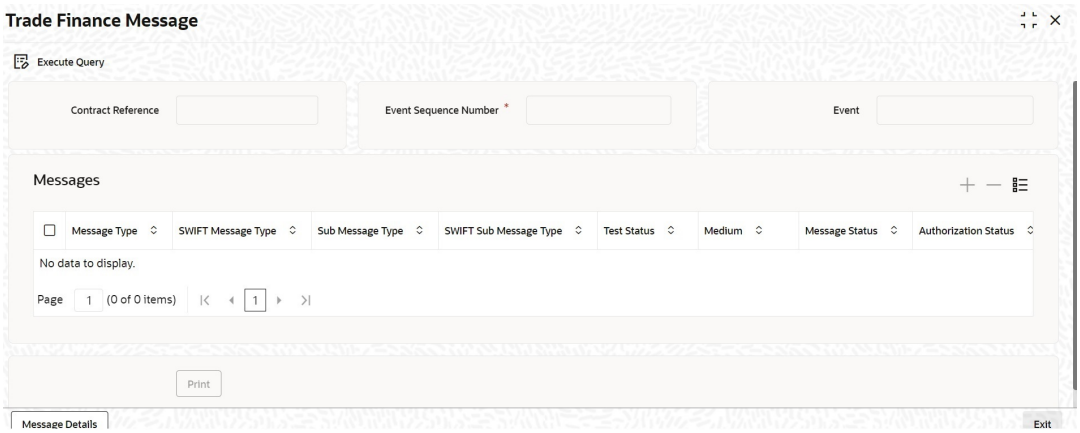
    You cannot preview the message if the contract has been authorized. The ‘Message Preview’ is disabled in that case.

25. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Amendment Confirmation Input** screen, Select a Message and click **View**.

    Message screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

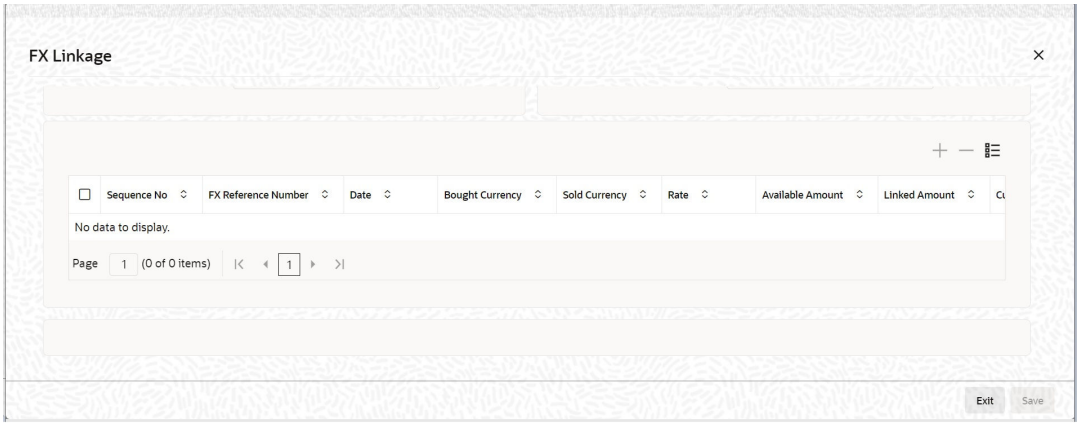
Figure 7-13 Message



26. On the **Letters of Credit Contract Amend Confirmation** screen, click the **FX Linkage** button.

The **FX Linkage** screen is displayed.

Figure 7-14 FX Linkage



This link invokes a screen in which you can link a LC involving a specific counterparty with FX deals involving the same counterparty.

You can link one or more FX deals to a bill. The value of an FX deal should not exceed the value of the bill it hedges. If you link several FX deals to a bill, the total value of all the deals should not exceed the bill amount.

Table 7-7 FX Linkage - Field Description

Field	Description
Sequence No	System generates the ‘Sequence No’ for linked FX contracts sequentially
FX Reference no	Indicates FX deal reference no. from treasury system
Date	Indicates FX deal value date. FX Value date should be greater or equal to LI Expiry Date

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-7 (Cont.) FX Linkage - Field Description

Field	Description
BOT/SOLD Currency	LC contract currency should be BOT currency of the FX transaction in case of an export LC or the SOLD currency in case of an Import LI. **Bought Currency:** Presents FX Deal Bought Currency. In case of export contract, LI contract currency should be same FX Bought Currency. **Sold Currency:** Presents FX Deal Bought Currency. In case of import contract, LI contract currency should be same FX Sold Currency.
Rate	Presents FX deal Exchange rate
Available Amount	Present FX available amount (i.e) FX contract amount minus total linked FX amount
Linked Amount	User will capture Linked amount at FX Linkage screen. Sum of Linked amount will not be greater than LI contract amount. Linked amount will not be greater than the available amount for linkage.
Current Utilized amount	Current Utilized amount will display the current amount utilized of the event.
Total Utilized amount	Total Utilized amount will display the total amount utilized of the contract.

- OBTF system initiates the link/delink
  1. During creation of an LC,OBTF system initiates Link request
  2. During manual delink of FX at LC,OBTF system initiates delink request

  Delink of linked FX/Reduction of linked amount from the LC is allowed if the same is not attached to a BC contract.Reduction of LC contract amount is restricted, when the contract amount goes below the FX linkage amount.
- If LC Amendment is pending for beneficiary confirmation with FX changes and system, will not allow another amendment and only during amendment confirmation FX request will be processed in external system.

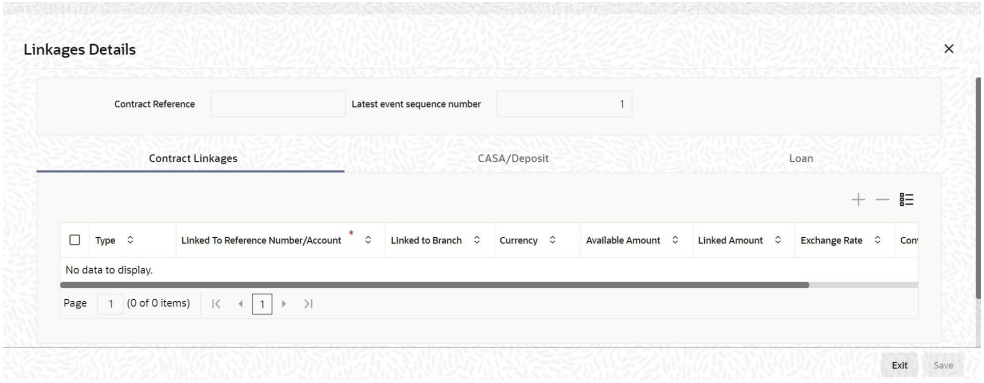
27. On the **Islamic Letters of Credit Contract Amendment Detailed** screen, click the **Linkage Details** button.

    In the **Linkage Details** screen, specify the type of linkage

    - **Contract Linkage**
      Linkage type grouped under contract linkages are:
      - Shipping guarantee
      - LI
      - EL

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-15 Linkage Details-Contract Amendment Linkage



For export LC, note the following:

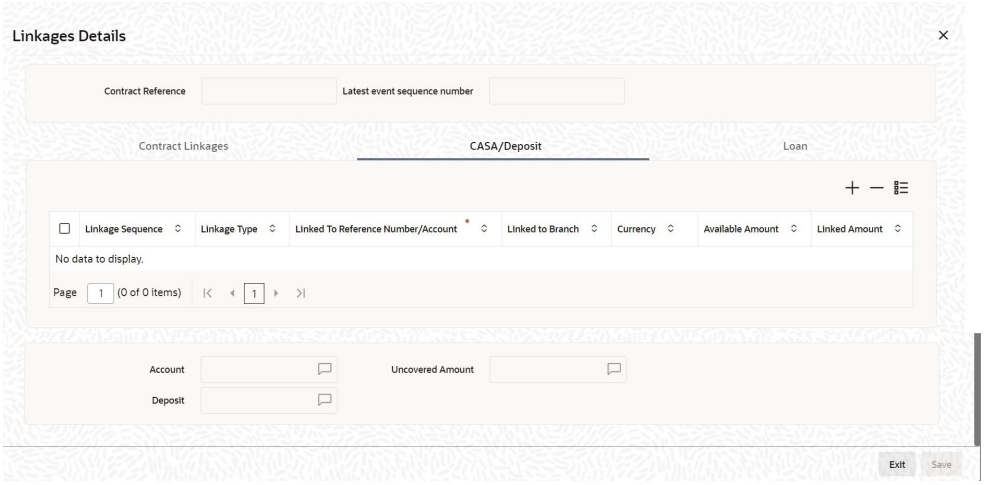
- Export type of LC is the only option displayed in the option-list.
- The system allows Export LC for linkage only for bills under reimbursement type of LC.

28. An overriding message is displayed if any outstanding advising charges are collected at the time of bill lodgment or liquidation. This override message is only for Import Bills under LC. Link the export LC from the Linkages Details screen and perform the charges transfer.

> **Note**
>
> For shipping guarantee, if the bill amount is less than the shipping guarantee amount, an error will be displayed. In case the bill amount is more than the shipping guarantee amount, an overriding message is displayed.

- **CASA/Deposit**
  Linkage type grouped under CASA/ Deposit linkages are:
  - CASA
  - CD

Figure 7-16 CASA/Deposit

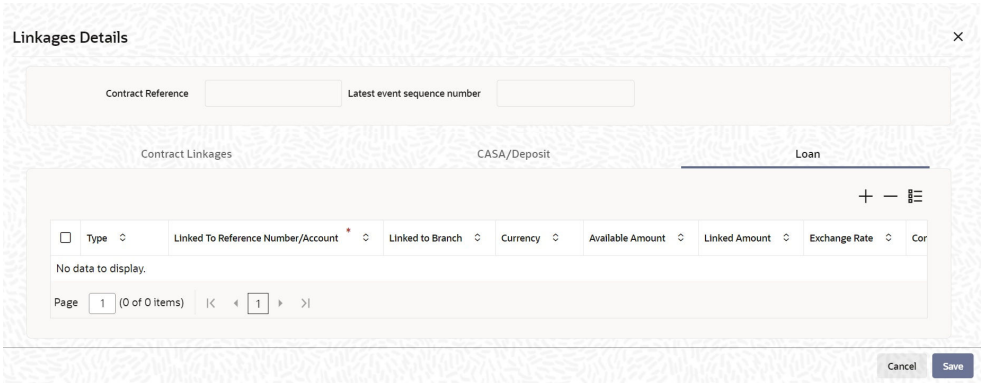


Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

CASA/Deposit tab links one or more active, authorized deposit or CASA accounts.

- **Loans**
  Linkage type grouped under Loans linkages are:
  - OL
  - CL
  - CI
  - Buyers Credit Reference

Figure 7-17 Loans



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 7-8 Linkage Details - Contracts Amendment Linkages - Field Description

Field	Description
Linkage Sequence	The Linkage Sequence number of a linked type.
Type	In the Contract Linkages screen, you can specify the type of linkage. The possible values are: LinkageType grouped under contract linkages are: • Shipping Guarantee • LC • LI • EL Linkage Type grouped under CASA/Deposit are: • CASA • CD Linkage Type grouped under CASA/Deposit are: • OL • CL • CI • Buyers Credit Reference
Linked To Reference Number/Account	Specify the contract/account to which you wish to link the LC.
Currency	The currency of the linkage type to which the LC is linked is displayed once the linkage details are specified.
Available Amount	The system displays the amount available against the linked contract or account.
Linked Amount	Specify the linked amount linked to trade contract

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-8 (Cont.) Linkage Details - Contracts Amendment Linkages - Field Description

Field	Description
Exchange Rate	Exchange rate denotes the rate applied to convert the linked amount in trade currency.
Converted Linked Amount	If the linked contract is in a different currency (than that of the bill), the system will convert the account/contract amount into the billing currency and display it here.
Account/Deposit	The system displays the amount linked to each contract or account. This displays only for CASA/Deposit.
Uncovered Amount	The system displays the contract amount that has not been linked, in the case of a partial linkage. This displays only for CASA/Deposit.

- Create Deposit/Create amount block request is send on linking the Deposit contract or CASA accounts
- Close Deposit/Close amount block request is send on delinking the deposit contracts or CASA accounts.
- Linkages will be delinked automatically during Closure/Cancel/Rollover/Contract reversal.
- Close Deposit /Close amount block followed by Create Deposit/Create amount block is send when there is change in linked amount either manually or proportionate change based on events(availment/amendment/ claim lodgment of LC/Guarantee)

29. View the details as required.

    You can view the following details:

    - Reference number of the message/advice
    - Document number generated for the message/advice
    - Version number of the message/advice
    - Receiver/sender of the message
    - Type of the message
    - Type of the SWIFT message
    - Complete text of the message/advice
    - Remarks, if any
    - Reject reason, if any
    - Message trailer

        a. From the ‘Message Preview’ screen, you can print a message/advice using ‘Print’. Select the message/advice and click ‘Print’ to print the message/advice.

30. On the **Islamic Letters of Credit Contract Amendment Detailed** screen, click the **Customer Instructions** tab.

    The **Customer Instructions** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-18 Customer Instructions

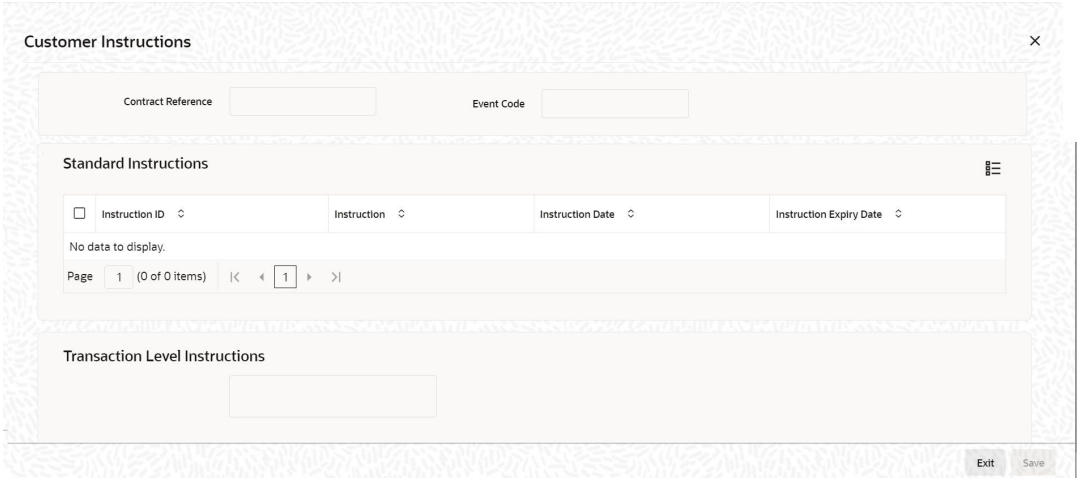


Table 7-9 Customer Instructions - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	System displays the contract reference number.
Event Code	System displays the Event Code of the contract.
Standard Instructions Customer would want to give Standard instructions in advance to the bank that need to be referred by the bank while processing certain type of transactions.	
Instruction ID	System displays the Instruction ID.
Instruction	System displays the customer standard instruction.
Instruction Date	System displays the start date of the customer instruction.
Instruction Expiry Date	System displays the expiry date of the customer instruction.
Transaction Level Instruction	Enter the transaction level instructions for the event.

31. On the Islamic Letters of Credit Contract Amendment Detailed screen, click the Split settlement button.

Split Settlement Master and details get populated for the Cash collateral based upon on the LC Issuance collateral split details.User can modify the details.
Split Settlement Master and Split Settlement Details get populated for the Charge and Commmission component based upon LC Issuance split details if split details available for the charges and commission component during LC Issuance or Advise.

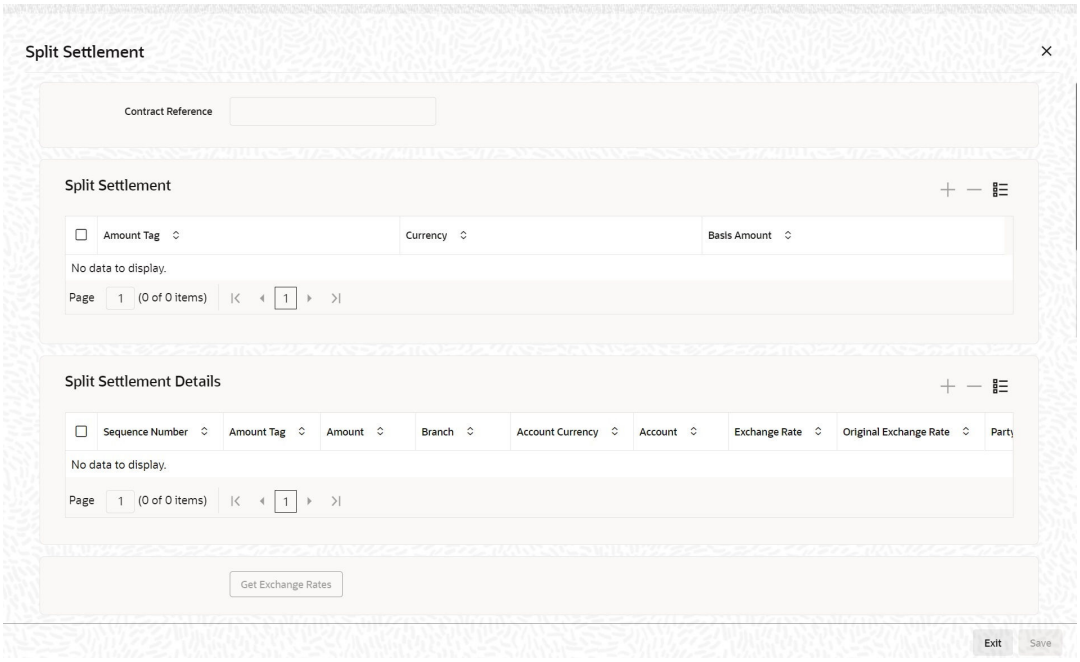
If Split details is not available for Issuance or Advice then Split Settlement Master and Split Settlement Details get populated for the Charges and Commmission component if split flag is checked in the respective subsystems. System will default the split settlement details with two splits for a charge/commission component one for counterparty and another one for Other party.System will default split amount 50% of charge/commission component between parties.User can modify the amount and and percentage will be derived based on modified amount. If AR-AP is unchecked for a component then Split account will default with settlement instructions of Customer and Split Account can be modified to another valid account of the Customer.If AR-AP is checked then Split account will be defaulted with AR-AP GL and Split account cannot be modified.Maximum of two splits is allowed for Charges and Commission components.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-10 Party Type Derivation for Charges and Commission

Category	Counter Party	Other Party	Other Party Resolution
Import LC Amendment	APP	BEN/ABK	If Beneficiary is a bank customer else Advising bank
Export LC Amendment	BEN	APP/ISB	If Applicant is a bank customer else Issuing bank

Figure 7-19 Split Settlement



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 7-11 Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Specify Settlement Split Master	You can specify the details of the settlement split master in the following fields:
Basis Amount Tag	The option list displays all valid amount tags maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. For example, on booking a new contract, the only tag allowed is PRINCIPAL. This is referred to as the basis amount tag. This field is optional.
Currency	The system displays the currency associated with the amount tag. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-11 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Basis Amount	The system displays the basis amount associated with the amount tag. For example, the amount involved in the contract would be displayed against the amount tag PRINCIPAL. The amount is in terms of the currency associated with the amount tag. You can use Get Exchange Rate button to get the original exchange rates defaulted in the screen. This field is optional.
Specify Settlement Split Details	For each split amount tag, you need to specify the following details: This field is optional.
Amount	Specify the amount for the split amount tag. This amount should not be greater than the amount of the corresponding basis amount tag. The split amount is in the currency of the basis amount tag. This is a mandatory field and you will not be allowed to save the details if you do not specify the amount. This field is optional if percentage of proceeds is provided. Amount will be derived based upon the percentage.
Branch	Specify the branch. The list displays all valid values.This field is mandatory.
Account Currency	Specify the account currency. This field is mandatory.
Account	Specify the account. This list displays all the accounts. For Cash Collateral the account should be account of the counterparty. If the account selected is other than counterparty account, then system will throw error. This field is mandatory.
Loan/Finance Account	Check this box to indicate that the specified account should be the loan account. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	Specify the exchange rate that must be used for the currency conversion. Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The base or the actual exchange rate between the contract currency and collateral currency gets displayed here.
Party Type	System defaults this field for Charges and Commission components if split flag is checked in respective components.This field is applicable only for charges and commission components.
AR-AP Tracking	System defaults this field for charges and commission components based upon the AR-AP tracking selection in charges and commission component when split flag is checked in respective components. This field is applicable only for Charges and Commission components.
Customer	Select the customer number from the list.
Percentage of Proceeds	Specify the percentage of proceeds.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 7-11 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Negotiated Rate	Specify the negotiated cost rate that should be used for foreign currency transactions between the treasury and the branch. You need to specify the rate only when the currencies involved in the transaction are different. Otherwise, it will be a normal transaction. The system will display an override message if the negotiated rate is not within the exchange rate variance maintained at the product. This field is optional.
Negotiated Reference	Specify the reference number that should be used for negotiation of cost rate, in foreign currency transaction. If you have specified the negotiated cost rate, then you need to specify the negotiated reference number also. **Note** Oracle Banking Trade Finance books then online revaluation entries based on the difference in exchange rate between the negotiated cost rate and transaction rate. This field is optional.

7.3.2 Authorize Amendment Details

While saving the amendment details, the amended amount is validated against the product transaction limit and the user input limit maintained in the system. If the amount exceeds the allowed input limit or the product transaction input limit, an appropriate override/error message is displayed.

The system will convert the contract amount using the standard mid rate to the transaction limit currency and check against the transaction limit amount maintained for the product if the contract currency is different from the transaction limit currency.

You have to get a contract authorized by your supervisor. Follow the steps given below to authorize:

- Click authorize icon in the toolbar of the screen. The following screen are displayed:
- Click ‘OK’ to proceed. The system will seek a confirmation for generating the messages. Click ‘OK’ to proceed.
- Click ‘Cancel’ to return to the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen. The system will display a message to confirm successful authorization of the record. The audit trail of the screen will now display the following details:
  - Checker ID – Login id of the authorizer
  - Checker Dt Stamp - The date and time at which you authorized the contract
  - Auth Status – The status will updated to ‘Authorized’

7.3.3 Confirm Amended Details

Once authorized, you will not be allowed to modify these details. The system will provide option for confirming or rejecting the amendment details. To confirm the details, do the following:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Click confirm icon in the toolbar of the screen. The system will display the following override message to proceed:
- Do you want to confirm the record? OK to proceed.
- Click ‘OK’ in the message window to proceed. The system will display the following message to confirm the confirmation:
- The Record is successfully confirmed.
- Click ‘OK’ in the message window and this takes you the Islamic LC contract online screen. The charges are waived using this screen. Note that the ‘Amnd Status’ is updated to ‘Confirmed’ and the ‘Auth Status’ is updated to ‘Unauthorized’ (in the audit trail of the screen).

7.3.4 Amend details using the Contract screen

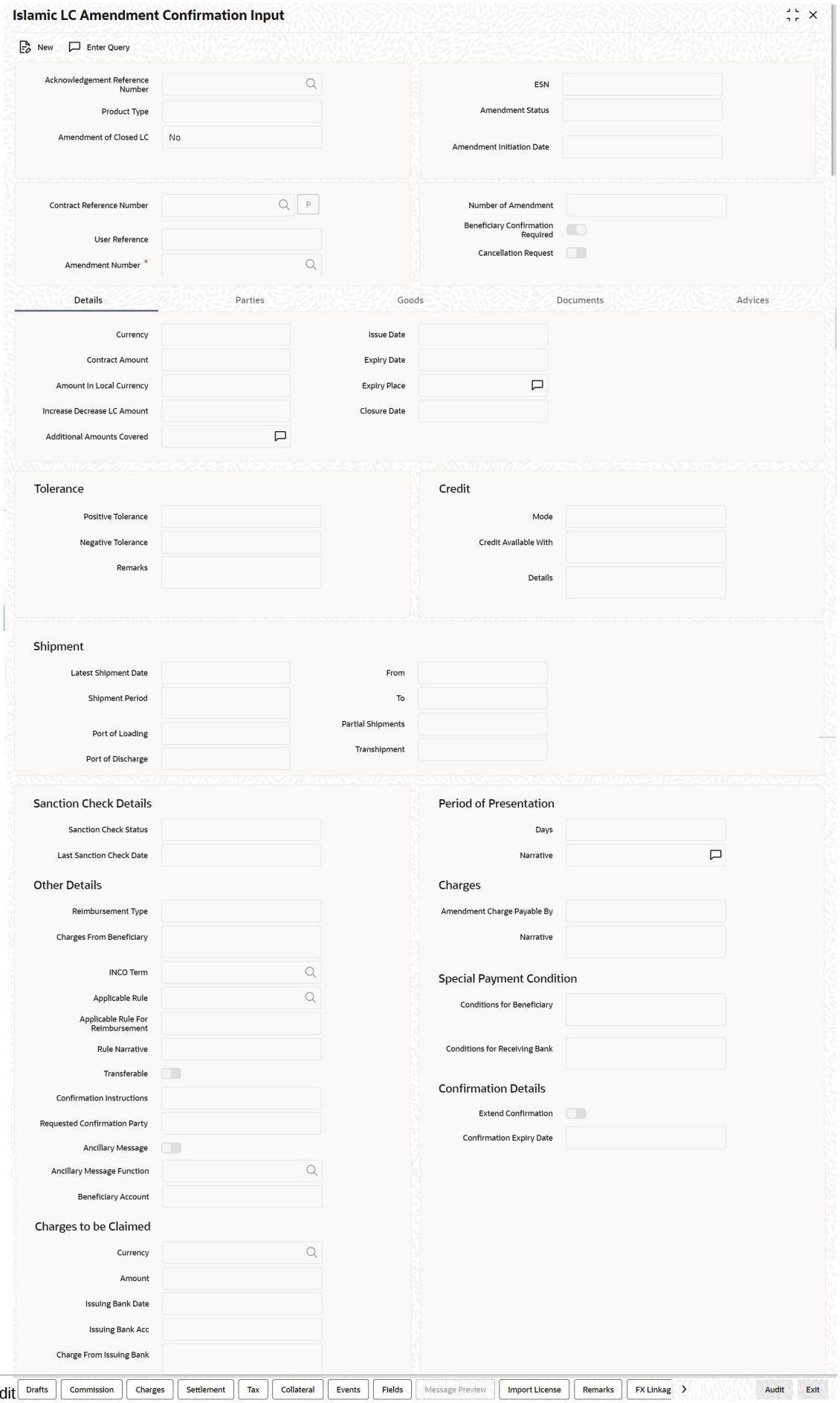
You can unlock the Islamic LC contract screen after clicking ‘OK’ in the message window above. The Islamic LC contract online screen is used for modifying details after confirmation of the amendment action. The system creates an amendment on the Islamic LC once the proposed amendment is confirmed. When this amendment is created the confirmation and amendment events are both left in an unauthorized state. This allows unlocking of the Islamic LC contract to make the necessary amendments.

Once the confirmation is saved on the amendment screen, the Islamic LC contract online screen is launched with the data modified, and this is unlocked and modified, or closed as chosen by the user. These changes are directly made by launching the Islamic LC contract screen. However the amendment can only be deleted by using the amendment screen as described above.

The following Islamic LC contract screen is launched when the amendment is confirmed in the Islamic LC amendment confirmation input screen

Figure 7-20 Islamic LC amendment confirmation input

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The amendment cannot be deleted using the Islamic LC contract screen, and can only be deleted using the amendment screen as part of the confirmation. This is done by deleting the confirmation using the amendment screen

Hence the process is carried out as follows:

- The amendment is confirmed using the Islamic LC Credit Amendment confirmation screen. It is completed by clicking C and saving the confirmation.
- The Islamic LC contract screen is launched once the confirmation is saved. This screen contains the details of the amendments done in the confirmation input screen.
- This screen is unlocked and the details are made available for modification. Subsystem details like charges and commission is modified or waived as required.
- During an auto authorization of Amendment Confirmation, the amendment created by this confirmation is also authorized
- Authorize Confirmation

7.3.4.1 Authorize Confirmation

Your supervisor now needs authorize the confirmation to view the changes made. The steps to authorize are given below:

- After logging in, invoke the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen and navigate to the record that needs to be authorized.
- Click authorize icon in the toolbar of the screen. The system will create a new version of the contract and display the details of the contract in the ‘Islamic LC Contract’ screen, as shown below.
- After confirming the changes, click save icon in the toolbar of the screen to save the details.

> **Note**
>
> You can delete the amendment if the ‘Amnd Status’ of the contract is ‘Confirmed’ but unauthorized.

7.3.5 Reject Amended Details

To reject the amendment details, do the following:

- Click the close icon in the toolbar of the screen. The system will display the following message to confirm the rejection:
- Are you sure you want to reject the current record?
- Click ‘OK’ in the message window to return to the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen. The system will display a message to confirm successful rejection of the record
- The ‘Amend Status’ are updated to ‘Rejected’.
- Authorize Rejection

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7.3.5.1 Authorize Rejection

Your supervisor now needs authorize the rejection. The steps to authorize are given below:

- After logging in, invoke the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen and navigate to the record that needs to be authorized.
- Click authorize icon in the toolbar of the screen.
- In the next screen, click ‘OK’ icon to proceed. You will return to the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen and the system will display a message to confirm successful authorization of the record.
- The ‘Amnd Status’ of the record is ‘Rejected’ while the ‘Auth Status’ is updated to ‘Authorized’.

> **Note**
>
> If a contract is amended and confirmed, you can amend it again by creating a new amendment record in ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen for already amended Islamic LC contracts.
>
> The system will not allow you to perform any operations on an Islamic LC pending confirmation or rejection.
>
> The amended details will take effect only after confirmation from the beneficiary.
>
> If the amendment is rejected, the system will retain the original or the last amended confirmed Islamic LC.
>
> You can amend the same contract several times in ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen as long as the amendment is not authorized.

7.3.6 Islamic LC Amendment Details

This topic provides the systematic instructions to view Islamic LC Amendment Details.

You can view the summary of Islamic LC amendment details through ‘Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Summary’ screen.

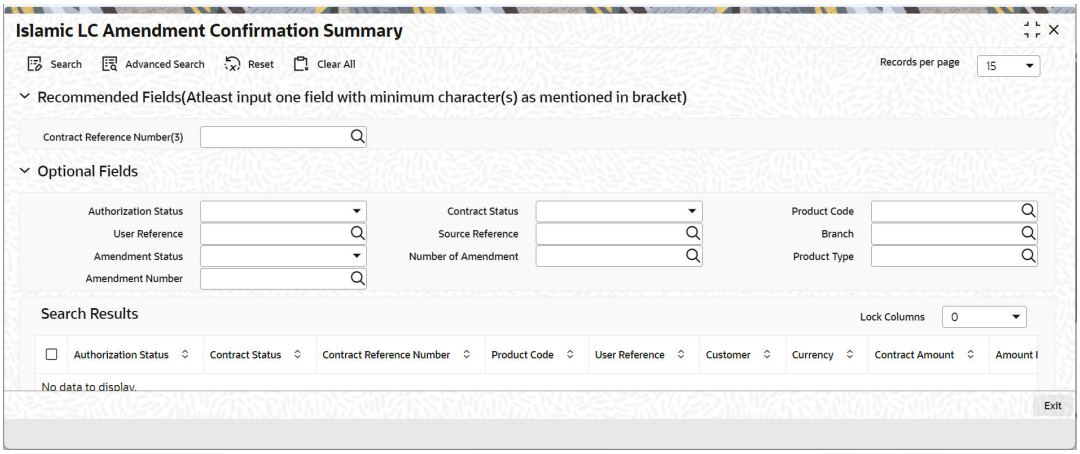
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISAMEND** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Summary screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 7-21 Islamic LC Amendment Confirmation Summary



2. View the details as required.

   You can search for the records based on one or more of the following parameters:

   - Authorization status
   - Contract Reference Number
   - Branch Code
   - Contract Status
   - Product Code
   - Amendment Status
   - Number of Amendment
   - Authorization status

   Once you have specified the parameters, click **Search**. The system displays the following details of all records that match the search criteria.

   - Authorization status
   - Contract Status
   - Contract Reference Number
   - Product Code
   - User Reference
   - Customer
   - Amendment Status
   - Number of Amendment
   - Amount In Local Currency

7.4 Operations on Confirmation Record

In addition to the operations discussed above (Save, Authorize, Confirm), you can perform the following operations in the ‘Amendment Confirmation’ screen:

- New
- Delete

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Close
- Unlock

7.5 Upload Islamic LC Amendment

While uploading an amendment, the system checks the user reference number in the contract with the external reference number of the incoming message. If a contract exists with the reference number and its status is ‘Authorized’ and ‘Active’, then the system will amend it provided the upload action is ‘AMND’.

If upload action is ‘NEW’ and the external reference number exists, the system will display an error message. In case of contract amendment through STP of MT707, the following fields are updated:

- Expiry date (31E field)
- Islamic LC amount (34B field)
- Tolerance details (Negative and positive tolerance) (39A field)
- Liability amount (39B field)
- Additional amounts covered (39C field)
- Shipment from (44A field)
- Shipment to (44B field)
- Latest date of shipment (44C field)
- Shipment period(44D field)
- Issuing bank amendment date(30 field)

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8

Islamic Letter of Credit Registration

This chapter contains the following topics:

1. Introduction
2. Islamic Letter of Credit Registration
3. Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input

- Introduction
- Islamic Letters of Credit Registration
- Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input details.

8.1 Introduction

The details of an Islamic Letter of Credit are captured through the Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input screen. No accounting entries are passed nor will any charges be levied during the registration of an LC. An LC is registered based on the first set of documents (original or duplicate) received. On registration, an acknowledgment reference number is allocated to the LC. At the time of processing an LC that has already been registered, you need to specify the acknowledgment reference number. All the details entered at the time of registration will automatically be picked up and defaulted to the main contract screen.

This topic contains the following subtopics:

8.2 Islamic Letters of Credit Registration

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Details
2. Islamic LC Registration Input Summary

- Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Details
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Details.
- Islamic LC Registration Input Summary
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to view the Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Summary screen.

8.2.1 Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Details

This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Details.

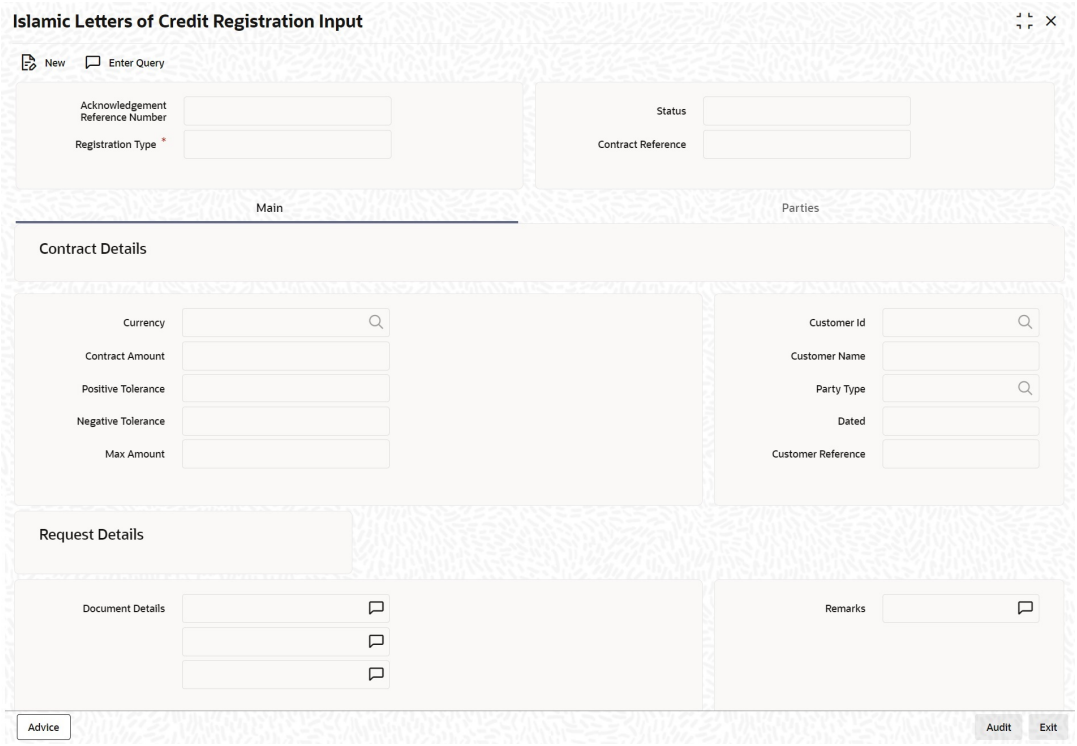
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDREGIN** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The **Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input** screen is displayed.

Figure 8-1 Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input



2. On the **Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input** screen, click **New**.
3. On the **Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input - New** screen, specify the details as required.
4. Click **Save** to save the details OR **Cancel** to close the screen.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 8-1 Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Acknowledgment Reference Number	The system displays the unique acknowledgment reference number generated for the registration on save.
Status	The system displays the status of the registration. The options are: • Registered - When the registration details are captured and saved • Processed - When acknowledge reference number is captured at the contract screen and the new contract is created • Closed - When the user processes close operation in the registration screen
Registration Type	Specify the type of registration from the drop-down list. The options are: • LC Issue • BG Issue • SG Issue
Contract Reference	The system displays the contract reference number.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

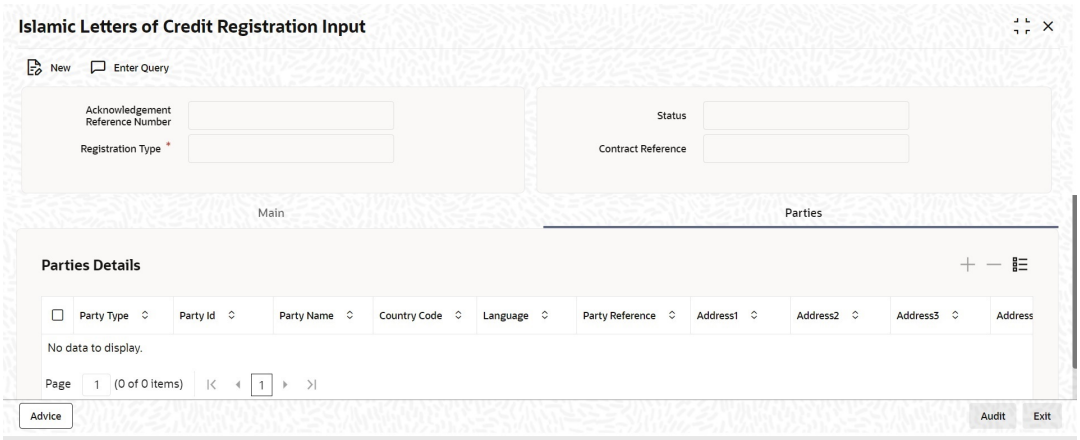
Table 8-1 (Cont.) Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	Specify the currency of the instrument (LC/SG/BG). Alternatively, you can select the currency from the option list. The list displays all authorized and open currency codes from currency maintenance.
Customer ID	Specify the 'Customer Id 'for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select that 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC code is mapped with that customernumber.If the BIC Code is not mapped with that customer number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining option list.
Contract Amount	Specify the amount of the instrument (LC/SG/BG)
Customer Name	The system displays the name of the customer linked to the customer ID.
Positive Tolerance	Specify the positive tolerance for the instrument value.
Party Type	Specify the party type.
Negative Tolerance	Specify the negative tolerance for the instrument value.
Dated	Specify the date of customer request.
Max Amount	The system defaults the Maximum Amount of the instrument (LC/SG/BG). This is the sum of contract amount and (%(tolerant) of contract amount).
Customer Reference	Specify the customer reference number.
Document Details	Specify the details of the documents received with request.
Remarks	Specify any remarks to be mentioned.

5. On the **Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input** screen, click **Parties**.

   The **Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input- Parties** screen is displayed.

Figure 8-2 Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input - Parties



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. On the **Parties** tab, Specify the details as required.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

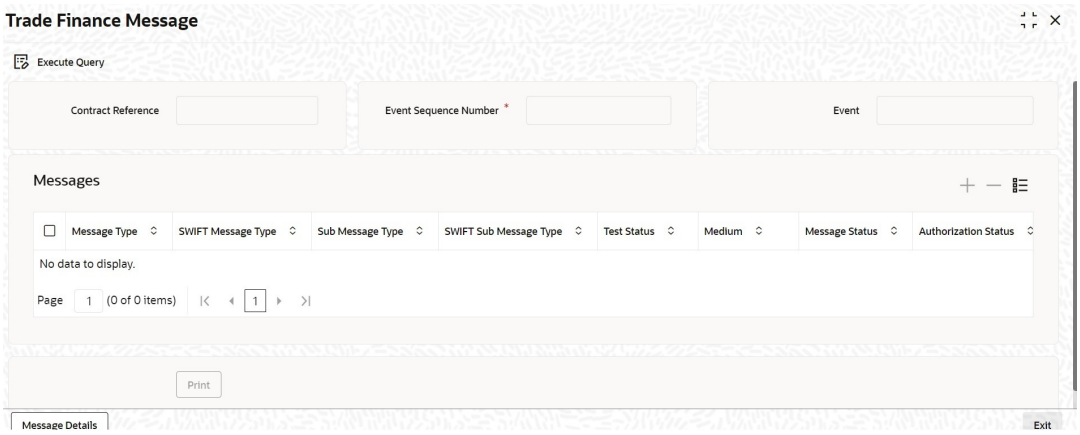
Table 8-2 Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input- Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Party Type	Specify the party type. Alternatively, you can select the party type from the option list. The list displays all the valid party types maintained in the system.
Party ID	Specify the Party ID for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC Code is not mapped with that customer number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining option list. The list displays all the valid parties maintained in the system. On selecting the party ID, the following details are displayed: • Party Name • Country • Language • Party Reference • Address

7. On the **Islamic Letter of Credit Registration Input** screen, click **Advices**. (Alternatively, you can display the Message screen by typing **CSDTFMVW** in the text box of the Application tool bar and click the next arrow).

   The **Messages** screen is displayed.

Figure 8-3 Messages



8. On the **Messages** screen, specify the details as required.

   The following details are displayed in this screen:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Contract Reference
- Message Type
- Swift Message Type
- Medium
- Message Status
- Authorization Status
- Receiver
- Receiver Name
- DCN

9. On the **Messages** screen, click **Message Detail**.

   Message Detail is displayed.

10. On the **Message detailed** screen, click **Print**.

    Acknowledgment Advice is displayed.

8.2.2 Islamic LC Registration Input Summary

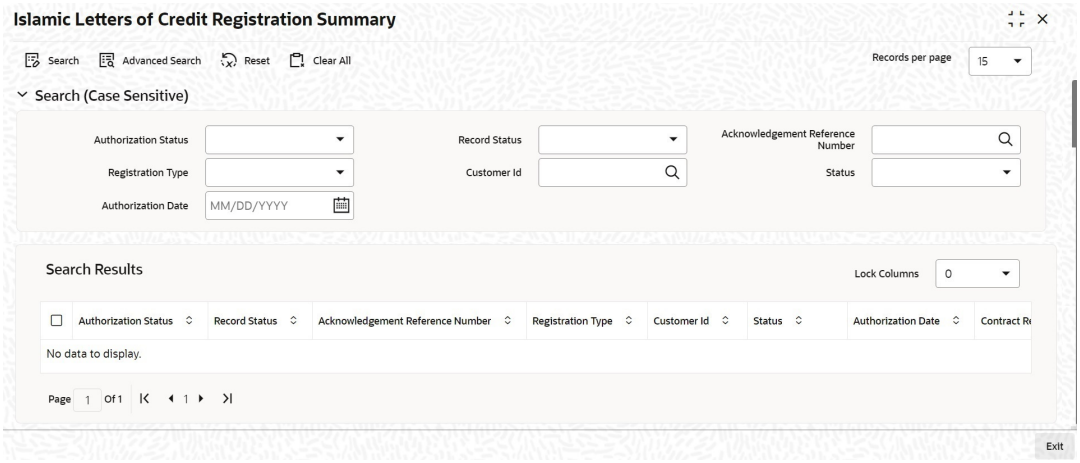
This topic provides the systematic instructions to view the Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Summary screen.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISREGIN** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Summary** screen is displayed.

Figure 8-4 Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Summary



2. On the Islamic Letters of credit registration summary screen, filter the search results based on the requirement.

   The Criteria are:

   - Authorization Status
   - Record Status
   - Acknowledgment Reference Number

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Registration Type
- Customer ID
- Status
- Authorization Date

3. On the **Islamic Letters of Credit Registration Summary** screen, click **Search**.

   Records matching the specified search criteria. For each record fetched by the system based on your query criteria, the following details are displayed

   - Authorization Status
   - Record Status
   - Acknowledgment Reference Number
   - Registration Type
   - Customer ID
   - Status
   - Authorization Date
   - Contract Reference
   - Contract Currency
   - Contract Amount

8.3 Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input

This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input details.

You can register an LC contract amendment request using the Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input screen.

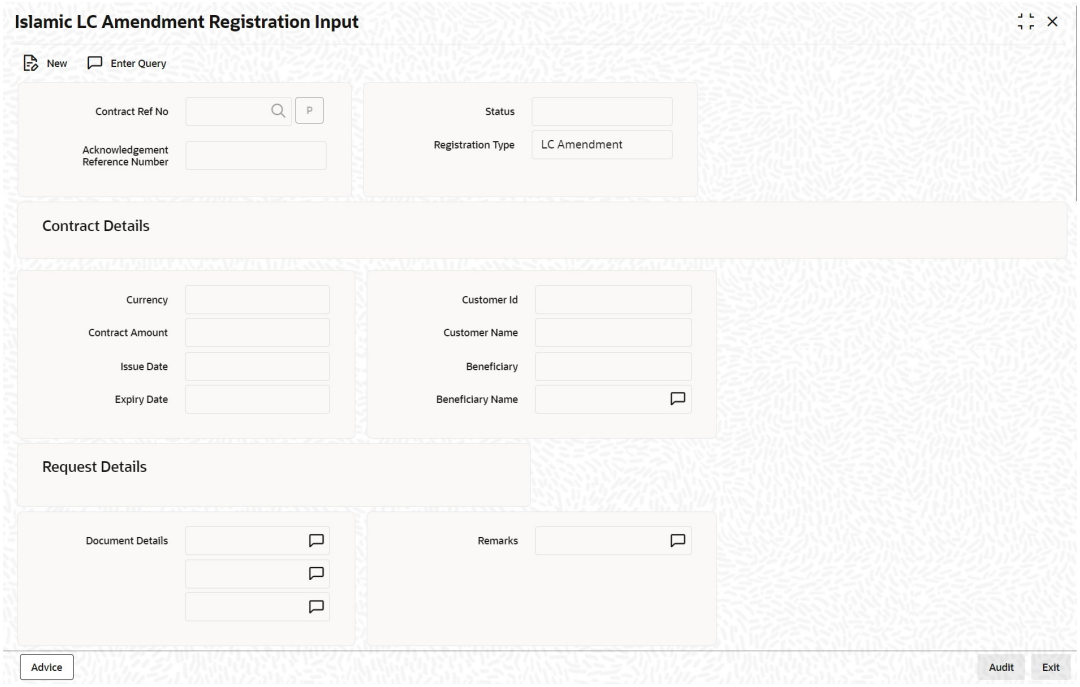
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDAMREG** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 8-5 Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input



2. On **Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input** screen, click **New**.
3. On the **Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input - New** screen, specify the details as required.
4. Click **Save** to save the details OR Cancel to close the screen.

   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 8-3 Islamic LC Amendment Registration Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Ref No.	Specify the contract reference number of the contract being registered for amendment. Alternatively, you can select the contract reference number from the option list. The list displays all the valid value in the system. Click populate button to default and display the following values: • Acknowledgment Reference Number • Status • Registration type • Currency • Contract Amount • Customer • Customer Name • Beneficiary • Beneficiary Name • Issue Date • Expiry Date You can only edit the Request Details section • Document Details • Remarks

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

9

Islamic LC Transfer

This chapter contains the following topics:

1. Introduction
2. Transfer Islamic LC

- Introduction
- Transfer Islamic LC
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to Transfer Islamic LC.

9.1 Introduction

In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, you can make transfers from an Islamic LC (Islamic LC). While transferring funds from an Islamic LC, you need to note the following conditions:

- The transferred Islamic LC will always be of the same type as the old Islamic LC and is created under the same product.
- The charges applicable to the transfer should be associated with the event TRNF defined for the product.
- You can only transfer an amount that is less than or equal to the amount available under the original Islamic LC.
- An Import Islamic LC is transferred only if the Applicant and Beneficiary are customers of your bank.

9.2 Transfer Islamic LC

This topic provides the systematic instructions to Transfer Islamic LC.

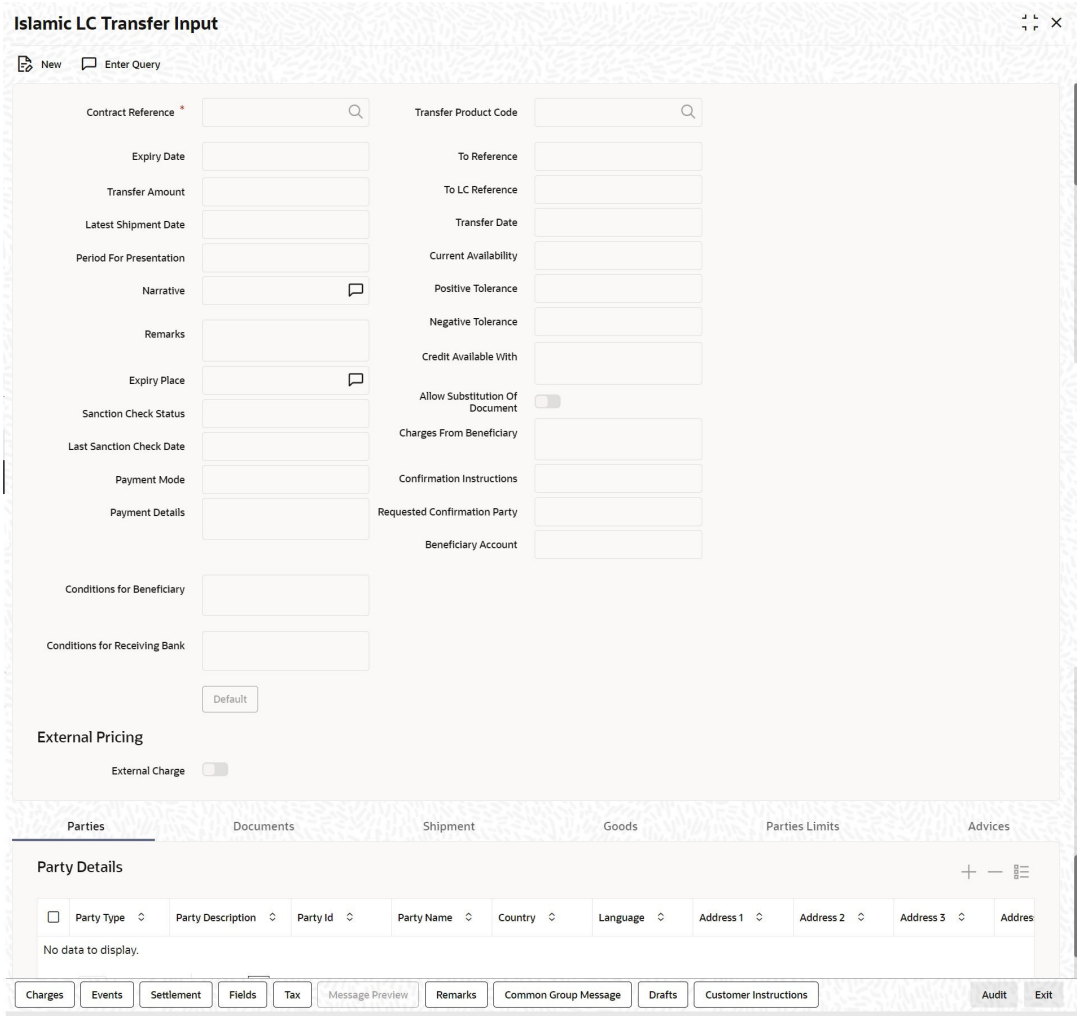
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDTRANF** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic LC Transfer Input screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-1 Islamic LC Transfer Input



2. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **New**.
3. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input - New screen**, specify the details as required.
4. Click **Save** to save the details OR **Cancel** to close the screen.

   Indicate the Islamic LC from which you want to effect the transfer. Select a valid Islamic LC

   Reference from the option list. The manner in which Oracle Banking Trade Finance handles a transfer is different for import and export Islamic LCs.

   Refer to the title ‘A note on transfers made from Import and Export Islamic LCs’ for more details.

   To create child contract in Transfer Type product, Use Transfer Product has to be checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen and Transfer Type product has to be maintained.

   Creation of transfer contract is supported from LIDTRONL screen with product type as Transfer and Transferred LC flag checked if Use transfer product flag is checked at bank level.

   Error will be displayed when transferred flag is unchecked for Transfer product type contract creation.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If use transfer product flag is not checked at the bank level, contracts under Transfer product type will not be allowed to be created.

Transferred Contract with new product code will have product type as Transfer in LIDTRONL and LIDAMEND screens.

New product Type ‘T’ will be available in LISTRONL summary screen for Query

Transfer product Flag at LISPRMNT summary screen, will list product codes based on the Transfer product type.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 9-1 Islamic LC Transfer Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Transfer Amount	The transfer amount is the amount that should be transferred from the original Islamic LC. You can only transfer an amount that is less than or equal to the amount available under the original Islamic LC.
Expiry Date	The expiry date is the date upto which the transferred Islamic LC is valid. The expiry date of the original Islamic LC is defaulted. You can change the defaulted date. However, the expiry date cannot be earlier than the Islamic LC issue date or today's date. **Note** In the case of an export Islamic LC, the expiry date is earlier than today's date to cater to the late receipt of the Islamic LC. However in this case you are prompted for an override.
Latest Shipment Date	The shipment date is the latest date by which the shipment of the goods specified for the transferred Islamic LC should take place. The latest shipment date of the original Islamic LC is defaulted. You can change the defaulted date. However, the date you enter should not be earlier than the Issue Date of the Islamic LC and later than the expiry date. If the latest shipping date that you specify for an Islamic LC falls on a holiday in the Islamic LC currency, you are prompted for an override. It is mandatory for you to enter the ‘Shipment Date’ if you are processing an Import Islamic LC.
Period For Presentation	The period of presentation defined for the product - or calculated for the LC, as the case may / is displayed. You can change the default to suit the LC you are processing.
Remarks	Specify remarks if any.
Expiry Place	The system displays the expiry place details. This field is optional.
Transfer Product Code	Provide the Transfer Type product code.
To Ref No	Specify the reference number to which the LC should be transferred.
To User Ref No	Specify the user reference number to which the LC should be transferred.
Transfer Date	Specify the date of transfer.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-1 (Cont.) Islamic LC Transfer Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Positive Tolerance	Provide the positive tolerance. This field is optional. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Negative Tolerance	Provide the negative tolerance. This field is optional. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Credit Available With	The system displays the details of credit available. This field is optional. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
LC Available Amount	The amount available on the chosen LC is displayed here.
Sanction Check Status	Select the sanction check status from the drop-down list. The system displays the following statuses: • P - Pending • X - Pending • A - Approved • R - Rejected • N - Not Required
Last Sanction Check Date	Specify the last sanction check date from the adjoining calendar. **Note** For more information on processing sanction check refer Processing Sanction Check section in LC user manual.
Payment Mode	.Indicates the mode of payment through which the LC will be settled. Values will be: • A: Acceptance • P: SightPayment • M: Mixed Payment • D: Deferred Payment • N: Negotiation This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Payment Details	Indicates Payment details This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Charges From Beneficiary	Specify the payment conditions for beneficiary. This field is optional. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Confirmation Instructions	Indicates Confirmation Instructions namely May Confirm, Confirm
Beneficiary Account	Specify the account details of beneficiary. This field is read only.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-1 (Cont.) Islamic LC Transfer Input - Field Description

Field	Description
Requested Confirmation Party	Indicates Requested Confirmation Party details when confirmation instructions is provided. Can be Advising Bank, ATB, Confirming Bank
Conditions for Beneficiary	Specify the payment conditions for beneficiary. This field is optional. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Conditions for Receiving Bank	Specify the payment conditions for receiving bank. This field is optional. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.

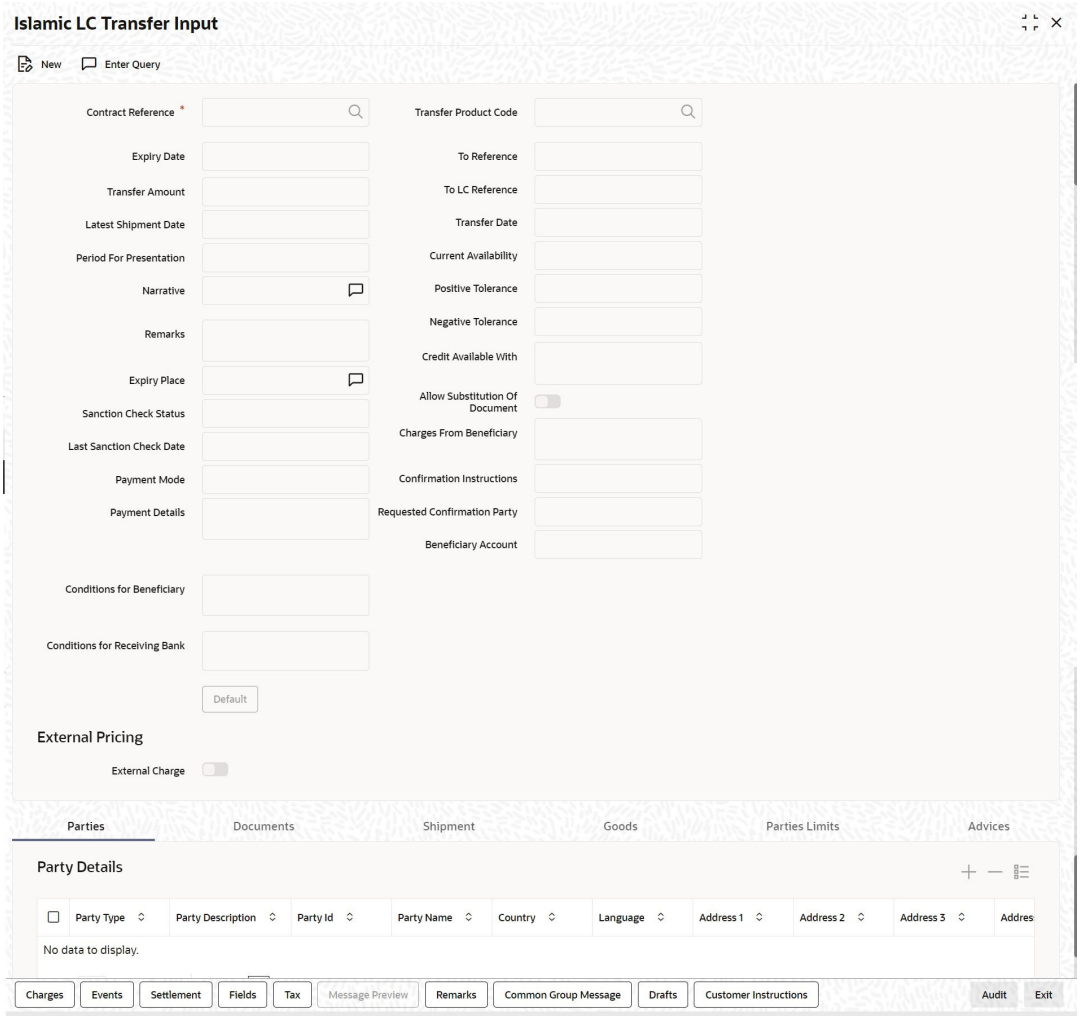
5. On **Islamic LC transfer input** screen, Click **Parties**.

   The ‘Parties’ screen is used to record details related to the parties involved in the transfer. The documents, tracers and messages that are generated are sent to all the parties concerned, based on the details you specify in this screen.

   Islamic LC transfer input - Parties, screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-2 Islamic LC transfer input - Parties



6. On the **Parties** tab, specify the details as required.

   The Party Types that is involved in the transfer of an Islamic LC are the advising Bank and the Beneficiary.
   For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-2 Parties - Field Description

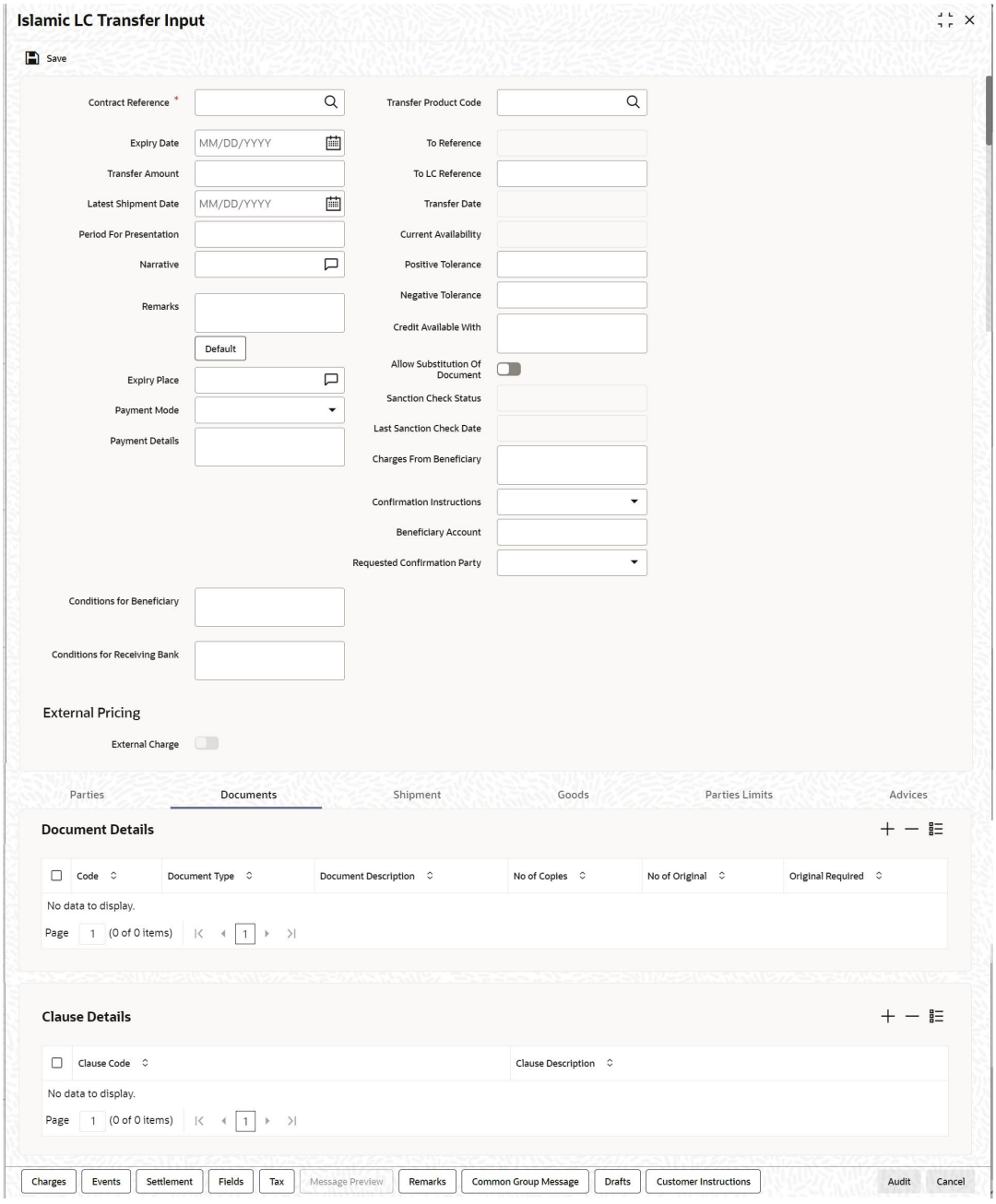
Field	Description
Party Type	The CIF ID assigned to the party, if the party is defined as a customer in Oracle Banking Trade Finance. Specify the 'Party ID' for which you need to maintain specific parameters. Alternatively, you can select the 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number'. If the BIC code is not mapped with that customer number then the BIC Code will not appear next to the Customer No in the adjoining list. The name of the party (It is 150 characters in length. However, note that only 35 characters is included in the SWIFT messages that you generate for the transfer). The country to which the party belongs The mailing address of the party

7. On the **Islamic LC transfer Input** screen, click **Documents**.

   Islamic LC transfer Input - Documents screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-3 Islamic LC transfer Input - Documents



Documents and clauses of Invoice type is allowed to be modified. Rest of the documents and clauses are not allowed to be modified when use transfer product flag is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.

8. On the **Document** tab, specify the details as required.

   The following details are specified for a transferred Islamic LC:

   - Details of the merchandise traded
   - Shipment Details
   - The documents and clauses that should accompany the goods

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 9-3 Document - Field Description

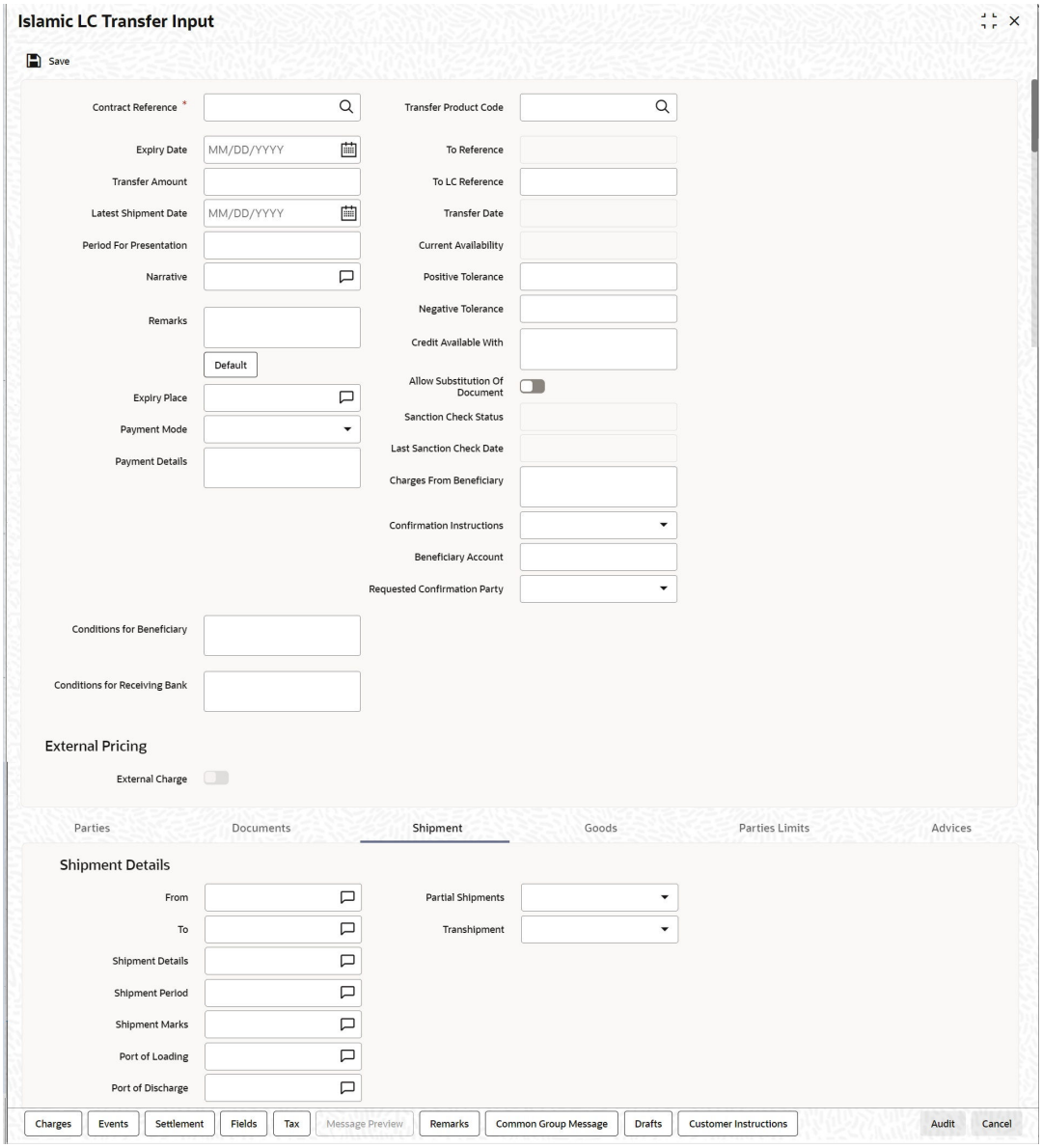
Field	Description
Specify Details of the Documents Applicable to the Transfer There are some standard documents required under a documentary Islamic LC. In this screen you can specify the documents that are required under the Islamic LC being processed. These details are a part of the Islamic LC instrument sent to the advising bank, the advice through bank or the beneficiary. All the documents specified for the product to which the Islamic LC is linked is defaulted to this screen. The details specified for these documents such as the document type, description, the number of copies required, the number of copies issued, the clauses specified for the document are also defaulted from the product. You can edit the description of the document that is defaulted to suit the Islamic LC you are processing. You can add to or delete from the list of documents that are defaulted. To add a document for the Islamic LC, click add button. To delete a document that is not required for the Islamic LC, highlight the document code and click on the delete button.	
Specify Clauses for a Document The Clauses associated with the documents that you specified for the transfer are defaulted. When you highlight a document code, all the clauses defined for the document are displayed in the Clauses window. You can add to or delete from the list of clauses that are defaulted. To add a clause to a document for the Islamic LC, click on the add button. To delete a clause that is not required for the Islamic LC, highlight the Clause code and click on the delete button.	

9. On the **Islamic LC transfer Input** screen, click **Shipment**.

   Islamic LC transfer Input screen - Shipment screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-4 Islamic LC transfer Input screen - Shipment



10. On the **Shipment** tab, specify the details as required.

    There are certain standard clauses and conditions, associated with the shipment of the merchandise traded under an Islamic LC.

    For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 9-4 Shipment - Field Description

Field	Description
From	Specify the location from whom the goods transacted under the Islamic LC should be shipped. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-4 (Cont.) Shipment - Field Description

Field	Description
To	Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the Islamic LC should be sent. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Port of Loading	Specify the name of the airport from where the goods transacted under the Islamic LC are loaded for shipping. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.
Port of Discharge	Specify the name of the destination port to which the goods transacted under Islamic LC should be sent. This field is not allowed to be modified When Use Transfer Product is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.

Note

You can amend the value of 'Port of Loading' and 'Port of Discharge' after authorization. Besides these details, you can also specify shipping preferences like:

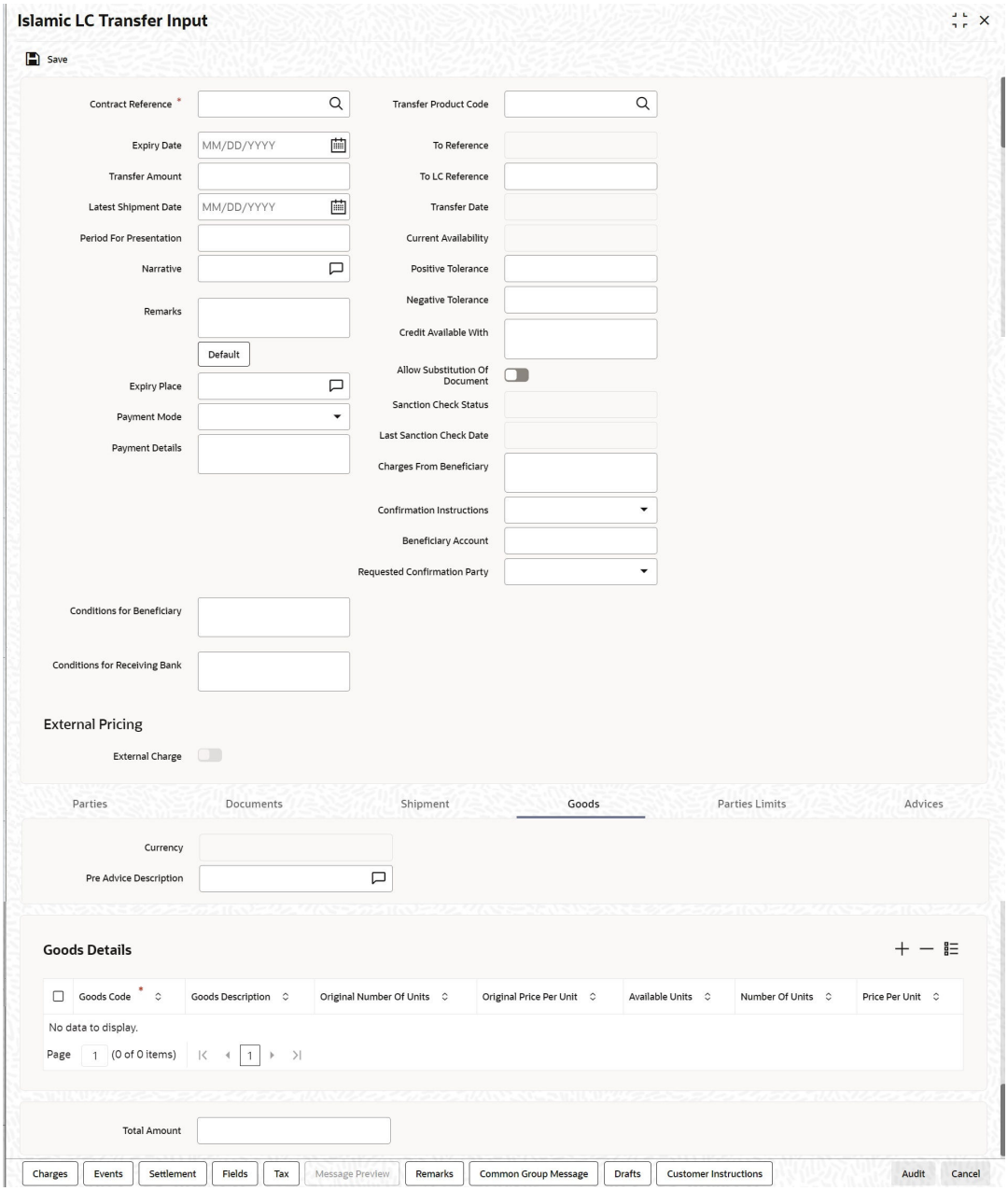
- Should Trans-shipment be allowed under the Islamic LC
- Should partial shipment of the goods be allowed under the Islamic LC
- Shipping marks
- Additional shipment details

11. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Goods**.

Islamic LC Transfer Input - Goods screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-5 Islamic LC Transfer Input - Goods



> **Note**
>
> Goods are not allowed to be added or removed when use transfer product flag is checked at Trade Finance Bank Preference Maintenance screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-5 Goods - Field Description

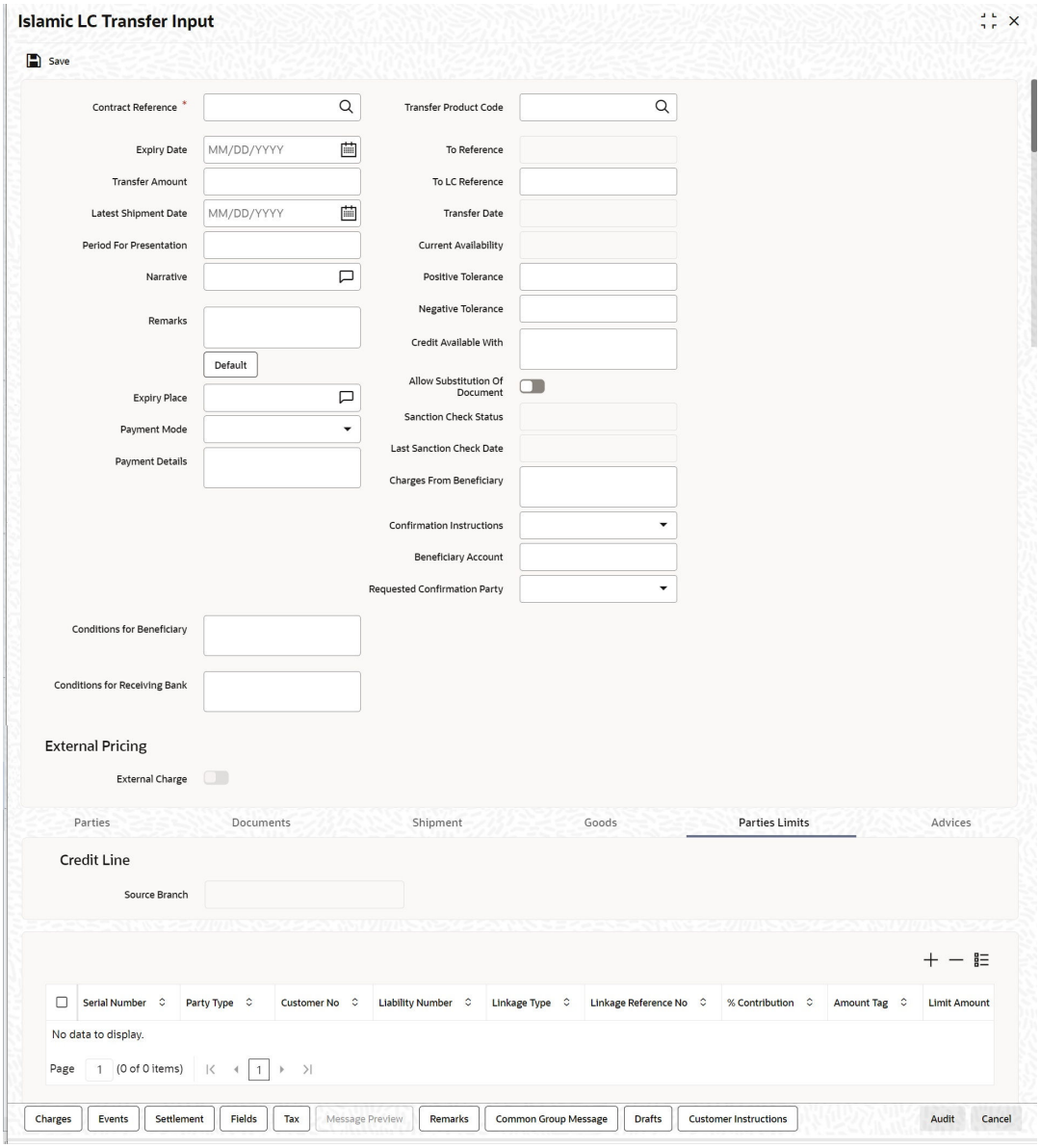
Field	Description
Goods Code	You have maintained various codes that have been allotted, for commodities normally traded in your country. Select the applicable code for the Islamic LC you are processing.
Goods Description	Specify the description. The description of this code (which could be 6500 characters long), is changed to suit the Islamic LC you are processing. You can also enter specifications such as the quality and quantity of the merchandise.
Description for Pre-advice	If pre-advice is one of the advices for the transfer, you should enter the details of the Islamic LC briefly, as a pre-advice description. This is a part of the pre-advice that is generated. Typically, a pre-advice is sent by SWIFT or cable and contains brief details of the Islamic LC. This is followed by the Islamic LC instrument will contain all the details of the Islamic LC.

12. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Transfer Input** screen, click **Parties Limits**.

Islamic Letters of Credit Transfer Input - Parties Limits screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-6 Islamic Letters of Credit Transfer Input - Parties Limits



13. On **Islamic Letters of Credit Transfer Input - Parties Limits** screen, specify the details as required.
14. Click **Ok** to save the details OR **Cancel** to close the screen.

    For more information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-6 Parties limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Party	Specify the type of the party whose credit limits need to be tracked. If you click the 'Default' button, in the first row, the system defaults the party type based on the details maintained under 'Parties' tab of the screen. However, you need to make sure that the mandatory party details have been maintained under the 'Parties' tab of the screen. When you add another row to the list, you can manually select the party type as required. If you leave it blank, the system will automatically update the party type when you save the transfer details.
Customer No	Specify the customer number of the party whose credit limits need to be tracked. The option list displays the customer numbers of all the parties selected under the 'Parties' tab. Choose the appropriate one. Specify the Customer Number for which you need to maintain specific parameters. Alternatively, you can select 'Customer Id' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears for a 'Customer Id' only if the BIC Code is mapped to that 'Customer Id'.If the BIC code is not mapped to that 'Customer Id' then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer Id' in the adjoining list.
Liability Number	The system displays multiple liabilities that are attached to the Customer.
Linkage Type	Specify the linkage type. The drop-down list displays the following options: Choose the appropriate one.
Linkage Reference No	Specify the reference number that identifies the facility or collateral pool. The option list displays all valid facilities and collateral pools specific to the liability. Choose the appropriate one. In case you choose the same linkage reference for more than one record in the list, the system displays an override message. You may choose to cancel or proceed with the selection.
Contribution	Specify the proportion of limits to be tracked for the credit line or collateral pool for the customer. When you click 'Default' button, the system defaults the percentage of contribution maintained sub-screen of 'Customer Maintenance' screen.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

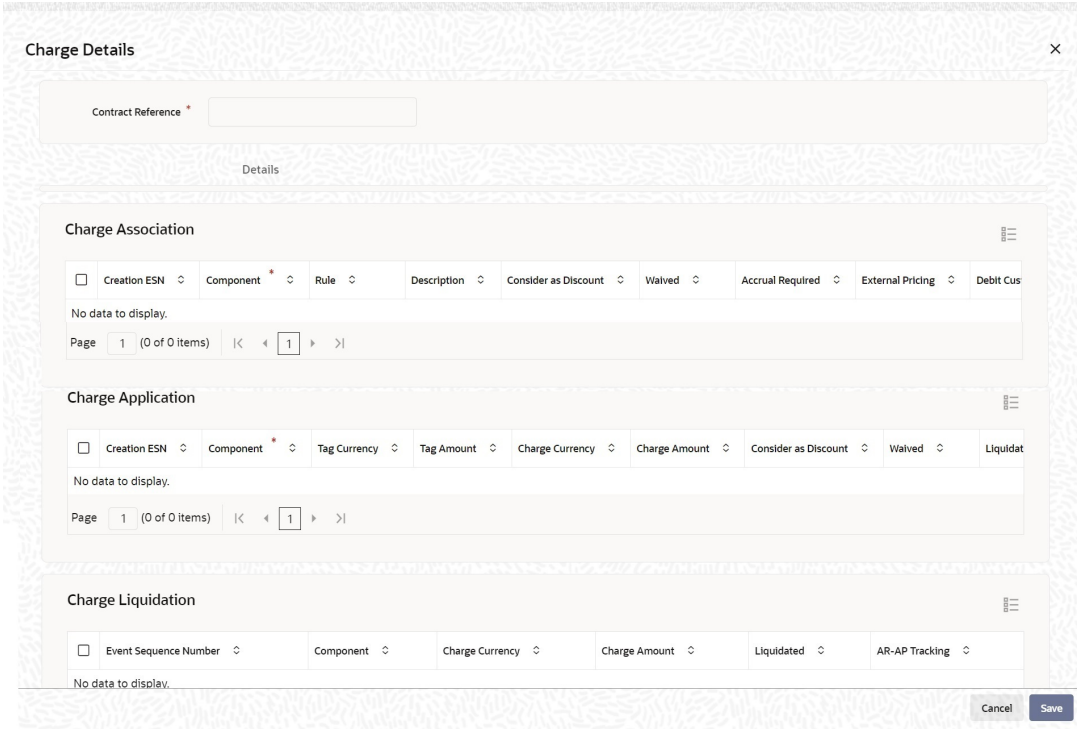
Table 9-6 (Cont.) Parties limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag. The system tracks the limits for customers based on the amount tag. The amount tags applicable to Islamic export and import LC contracts are listed below: Amount tags applicable to Islamic Export LC: • Liability Amount • Confirmed Amount • Unconfirmed Amount Amount tags applicable to Islamic Import LC: • Liability Amount • Undertaking Amount • Non Undertaking Amount Choose the appropriate one based on the type of Islamic LC contract. If you do not specify the amount tag, the system will track the limits based on the liability amount and facility.The system verifies the amount tag against the product type. If you choose an amount tag, which is not supported by the product type, the system displays an error message.
Amount	When you click the 'Default' button, the system defaults the amount tracked for each credit line. In the case of other customers, the amount is derived based on the amount tag specified above. You can add more rows to the list of credit lines using the add button. Similarly, you can remove a selected row from the list using the delete button.

15. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Charges**.

Charge Details screen is displayed.

Figure 9-7 Charge Details



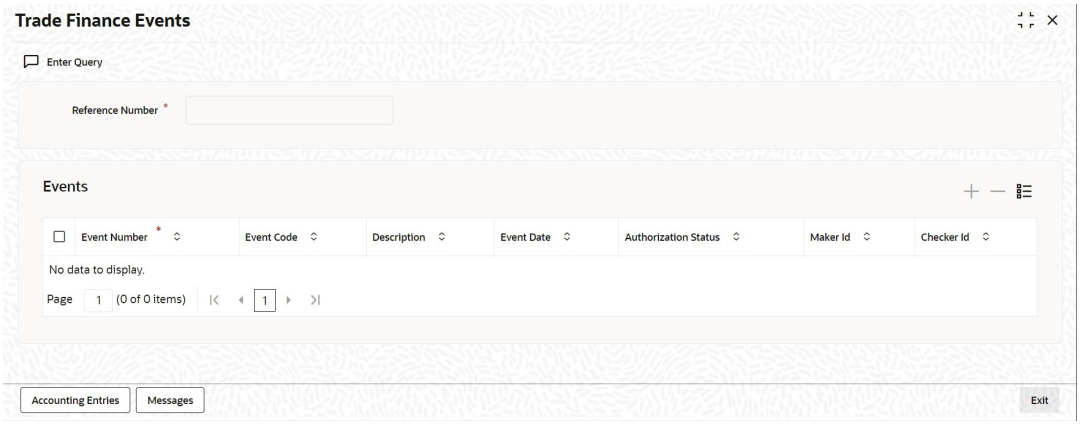
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> Refer the Charges and Fees User Manual under Modularity for further details about this screen.

16. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Event details**.

    Main screen is displayed.

Figure 9-8 Main



17. On the **Main** screen, Specify the details as required.

    (Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

18. On the **Main** screen, click **Accounting Entries**.

    Accounting entries accounting entries for the event that is highlighted.

19. On the **Main** screen, click Message

    Messages applicable to the event is displayed.

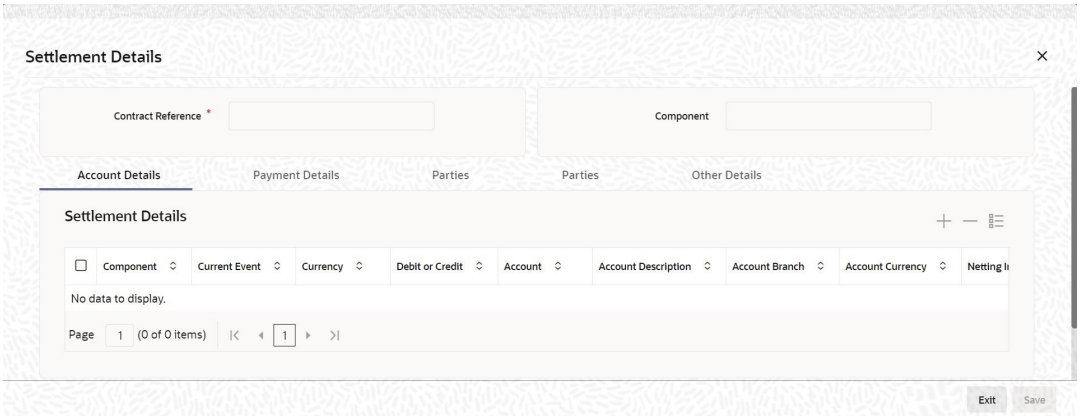
20. Click **Exit** to close the screen.

    (Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

21. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Settlements**.

    Settlement Details screen is displayed.

Figure 9-9 Settlement Details



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Current Event:

Current event of settlements will be checked for the amount tags pertaining to the current event and will be unchecked for the amount tags not pertaining to the current event.

> **Note**
>
> The details of these screens have been discussed in the Settlements user manual.

22. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Fields**.

Fields screen is displayed.

Figure 9-10 Fields

> **Note**
>
> The User Defined Fields (UDFs) maintained for the linked function id are displayed here. You can specify values for them. Refer the User Manual titled 'User Defined Field' for details about defining UDFs.

23. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Message Preview**.

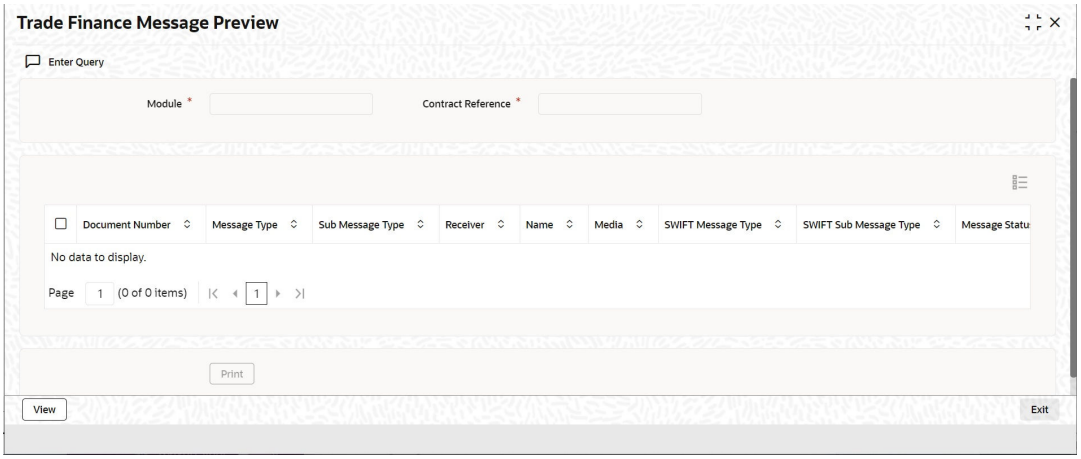
For the contract, you can view the following details of the messages:

- The document number generated for the message/advice
- Type of message generated for the event
- Customer ID of the receiver of the message/advice
- Name of the receiver of the message/advice
- Media of transmitting the message/advice (Mail/SWIFT)
- SWIFT message type of the message
- Status of the message/advice

Message Preview screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-11 Message Preview

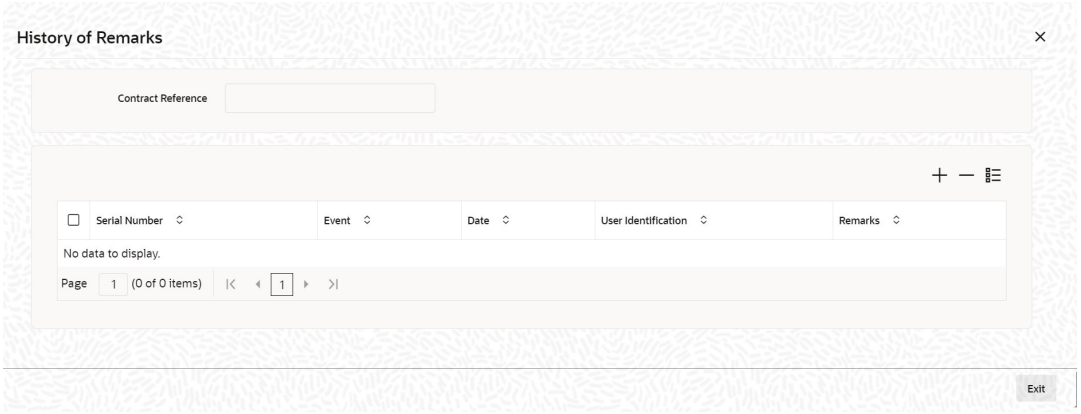


> **Note**
>
> For further details on this screen, refer to the chapter 'Processing an Islamic LC Contract' in this user manual.

24. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Remarks**.

    History of Remarks screen is displayed.

Figure 9-12 History of Remarks



> **Note**
>
> For more details on this screen refer to the section 'Remarks 'in this user manual.

25. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Common Group Message**.

    Common Group Message screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 9-13 Common Group Message Maintenance

> **Note**
>
> For field descriptions of the above screen refer section 'Common Group Message Maintenance' in chapter titled 'Defining Free Format Messages' in 'Messaging System User Guide'. You can enter the details of the message and the message is saved when the contract is saved. The saved messages is viewed in the message preview subsystem before authorization. On authorization of the contract, the message is generated. After authorization, the messages is viewed from 'All Messages' subsystem and 'Events' subsystem.

The common group messages which are supported are listed below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 9-7 Supported List

Field	Description
n90	Advice of Charges, Interest and Other Adjustments
n91	Request for Payment of Charges, Interest and Other Expenses
n92	Request for Cancellation
n95	Queries
n96	Answers
n98	Proprietary Message
n99	Free Format

26. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click the **Customer Instructions** tab.

The **Customer Instructions** screen is displayed.

Figure 9-14 Customer Instructions

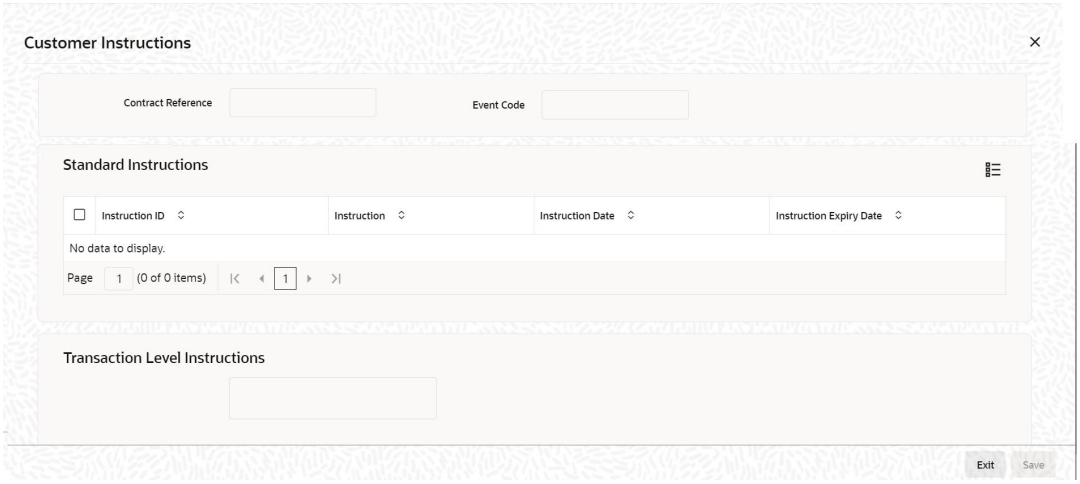


Table 9-8 Customer Instructions - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	System displays the contract reference number.
Event Code	System displays the Event Code of the contract.
Standard Instructions Customer would want to give Standard instructions in advance to the bank that need to be referred by the bank while processing certain type of transactions.	
Instruction ID	System displays the Instruction ID.
Instruction	System displays the customer standard instruction.
Instruction Date	System displays the start date of the customer instruction.
Instruction Expiry Date	System displays the expiry date of the customer instruction.
Transaction Level Instruction	Enter the transaction level instructions for the event.

27. On the **Islamic LC Transfer Input** screen, click **Transfer Details**.

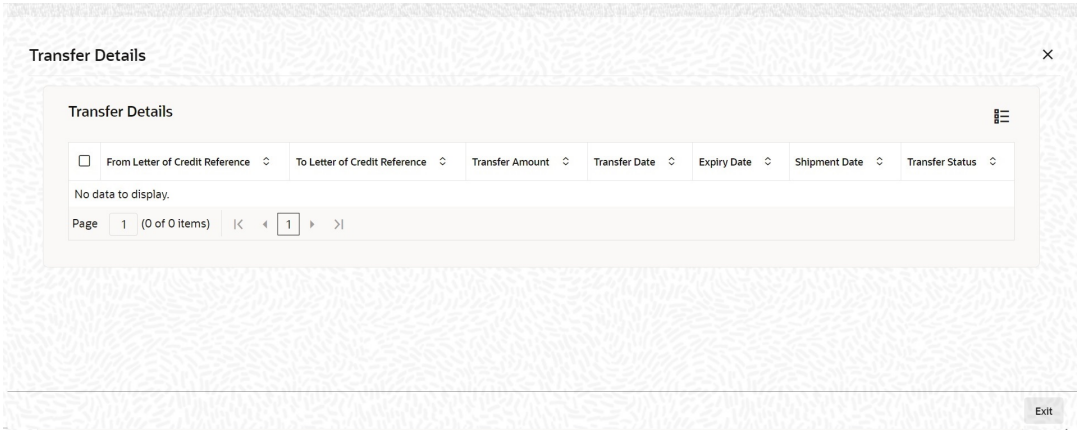
The following transfer details are displayed:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- The Islamic LC from which you are transferring funds
- The transfer amount
- The transfer date
- The expiry date
- The shipment date

Transfer details screen is displayed.

Figure 9-15 Transfer details



- Note on Transfers from Import and Export Islamic LCs

9.2.1 Note on Transfers from Import and Export Islamic LCs

How Transfers from Import LCs are Processed

While transferring an import LC, the original LC is modified to include the additional details of the transferred LC. For instance, the new beneficiary and new advising are added to the existing list of parties.

In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, the transfer made from an LC is taken as a new event ‘TRNF’. Availment made by the new beneficiary against the transferred LC is tracked against the original LC.

How Transfers from Export LCs are Processed

In the case of an Export LC, a new LC is opened for each transfer that you make from the original LC. The transfer amount is taken as the new LC amount.

On authorizing the transfer,

- An availment to the tune of the transferred amount is made against the original LC i.e. the outstanding amount of the Original LC is reduced by the transfer amount
- A new LC is created based on the transfer details that you specified

The transferred LC is separated from the original LC. Availment made from the new LC will not affect the outstanding of the Original LC.

- First beneficiary of Export LC will be counterparty of Transfer LC with party type FBN
- FBN will be applicable only for Transfer LCs

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Charges applicable for Transfer LC will be borne by first beneficiary. Charges include advice, amendment, cancel, close and reopen charges
- Addition, Deletion and modification of First beneficiary party is not allowed.
- New advice LC_AMD_RESPONSE introduced, in mail format, to be sent to first beneficiary during confirmation / rejection of Transfer LC amendment or cancellation with appropriate response message.
- Advices of transfer LC will be sent to first beneficiary as per below table:

Life cycle	**Transfer LC**		
Life cycle	**Event**	**Advice**	**Party Type**
Transfer LC amendment without confirmation	AMND	AMD_IMP_CR	FBN
	AMND	LC_AM_INST_COPY	FBN
Transfer LC amendment with confirmation – Initiation	AMNV	AMD_IMP_CR	FBN
	AMNV	LC_AM_INST_COPY	FBN
Transfer LC amendment confirmation	AMND	LC_AMD_RESPOSNE	FBN
Transfer LC amendment Rejection	AREJ	LC_AMD_RESPOSNE	FBN
Transfer LC Cancellation without confirmation	CANC	LC_CANCEL_ADV	FBN
Transfer LC Cancellation confirmation initiation	AMNV	LC_CANCEL_ADV	FBN
Transfer LC Cancellation confirmation	CANC	LC_AMD_RESPOSNE	FBN
Transfer LC Cancellation Rejection	AREJ	LC_AMD_RESPONSE	FBN
Transfer LC Close	CLOS	LC_CLOSE_ADV	FBN

- Process of Transfers from Import Islamic LCs
- Process of Transfers from Export Islamic LCs
- Amendment In Transferred LC
- Transfer LC Cancel/Closure

9.2.1.1 Process of Transfers from Import Islamic LCs

While transferring an import Islamic LC, the original Islamic LC is modified to include the additional details of the transferred Islamic LC. For instance, the new beneficiary and new advising are added to the existing list of parties.

In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, the transfer made from an Islamic LC is taken as a new event ‘TRNF’. Availment made by the new beneficiary against the transferred Islamic LC is tracked against the original Islamic LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

9.2.1.2 Process of Transfers from Export Islamic LCs

In the case of an Export Islamic LC, a new Islamic LC is opened for each transfer that you make from the original Islamic LC. The transfer amount is taken as the new Islamic LC amount.

On authorizing the transfer,

- An availment to the tune of the transferred amount is made against the original Islamic LC i.e. the outstanding amount of the Original Islamic LC is reduced by the transfer amount and
- A new Islamic LC is created based on the transfer details that you specified.

The transferred Islamic LC is separated from the original Islamic LC. Availment made from the new Islamic LC will not affect the outstanding of the Original Islamic LC.

9.2.1.3 Amendment In Transferred LC

During Life cycle of the Transferred LC, LC amount can be modified. When LC amount/ Tolerance percentage is modified from LC Amendment Input Screen(LCDAMEND) ,following points will be applicable.

Amendmention Initiation with beneficiary confirmation:

1. Amount Increase Case:
   a. Amendment Initiation - AMNV :
      i. Corresponding amount will be decreased in Parent LC.
      ii. If goods is transferred, corresponding goods units will also be reduced.
      iii. Transferrable in Parent LC will be reduced if goods is transferred.
   b. Confirmation Authorization - ACON :
      TRAM event will be triggered in Parent LC and contingent reversal will be triggered through that event.
   c. Rejection - AREJ:
      i. Corresponding amount will be increased in Parent LC.
      ii. If goods is transferred, corresponding goods units will be increased.
      iii. Transferrable in Parent LC will be increased if goods is transferred.
2. Amount decrease Case:
   a. Amendment Initiation - AMNV : No changes in Parent LC
   b. Confirmation Authorization - ACON :
      i. Corresponding amount will be increased in Parent LC.
      ii. If goods is transferred, corresponding goods units will also be increased.
      iii. Transferrable in Parent LC will be increased if goods is transferred.
      iv. TRAM event will be triggered in Parent LC and contingent reversal will be triggered through that event.

Following validations will be available in transferred LC.

1. System will not allow to increase transferred LC amount more than Parent LC amount.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Following validations/overrides will be available in parent LC.

1. During amendment with beneficiary confirmation, System will allow to reduce the LC amount below available amount with override. On confirmation, it will show appropriate error.
2. During amendment without beneficiary confirmation/amendment confirmation , System will show appropriate error if LC amount below available amount.
3. If there is underlying Transferred LC with substitution of document, then override will be provided for the user.

Following Points are also supported.

1. On reversal of transferred LC amendment, corresponding TRAM event in parent LC will also be reversed through RTRA event.
2. Charges and Taxes are not supported for TRAM and RTRA events.

9.2.1.4 Transfer LC Cancel/Closure

During Cancel/Closure of Transferred LC, OS amount and OS liability of Transferred LC to be re-instated to parent LC. RTRA (Reinstatement of Transferred LC Amount) should be triggered in parent LC during Cancel/Closure of Transferred LC.RTRA is non-version creation event. Charges and Taxes are not supported for RTRA event.

- In the case of amendment initiation for the transferred LC in LCDAMEND screen with beneficiary confirmation and Cancellation Request, amendment initiation (AMNV) event will trigger in transferred LC. During Confirmation of same amendment, amendment confirmation (ACON) and cancellation of LC (CANC) events will trigger in transferred LC. Reinstatement of transferred LC amount (RTRA) event will be triggered in parent export LC on authorization of transferred LC cancellation confirmation. OS amount and OS liability of transferred LC to be re-instated to parent export LC.
- In the case of amendment initiation for the transferred LC in LCDAMEND screen without beneficiary confirmation and Cancellation Request, cancellation of LC (CANC) event will trigger in transferred LC and reinstatement of transferred LC amount (RTRA) event will be triggered in parent export LC on authorization of transferred LC cancellation. OS amount and OS liability of transferred LC to be re-instated to parent export LC.
- If the cancelation of transferred LC initiated from LCDTRONL screen, cancellation of LC (CANC) event will trigger in transferred LC and reinstatement of transferred LC amount (RTRA) event will be triggered in parent export LC on authorization of transferred LC cancellation. OS amount and OS liability of transferred LC to be re-instated to parent export LC.
- If the closure of transferred LC initiated from LCDTRONL screen, closure of LC (CLOS) event will trigger in transferred LC and reinstatement of transferred LC amount (RTRA) event will be triggered in parent export LC on authorization of transferred LC closure. OS amount and OS liability of transferred LC to be re-instated to parent export LC.

Following validations will be available in transferred LC.

1. If there is any outstanding bill under Transferred LC, system should not allow to Cancel/ Closure of Transferred LC and system should display appropriate error.
2. If there is any Amendment pending for confirmation, system should display an error to user while cancelling LC.
3. Once Transferred LC closed, reopen of the same Transferred LC is not allowed and system should display appropriate error.

Following validations will be available in parent LC.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. During Cancel/Closure of export parent LC, system should validate if there are any active child LCs, if exists should display error message "Contract cannot be Cancelled/Closed as there are active Transfer LC(s)"

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

10

Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letter of Credit

This topic provides the following subtopics:

1. Introduction
2. Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input
3. Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment
4. Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim
5. Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement
6. Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input

- Introduction
- Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input
- Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment
- Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim
- Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement
- Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input

10.1 Introduction

A Standby Letter of Credit (SBLC) and Bank Guarantee (BG) is a payment guarantee generally issued by the issuing bank on behalf of an applicant securing payment to the beneficiary, If the buyer fails to fulfill a contractual commitment the issuing bank will release payment to the seller.

10.2 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input

This topic provides the overview of the Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input.

This topic provides the following subtopics:

1. Process Islamic Guarantees and Standby LC
2. View Guarantees and SBLC Contract Details

- Process Islamic Guarantees and Standby LC
  This topic provides the Islamic Guarantees and Standby LC.
- View Guarantees and SBLC Contract Details
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to view guarantees and SBLC Contract details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

10.2.1 Process Islamic Guarantees and Standby LC

This topic provides the Islamic Guarantees and Standby LC.

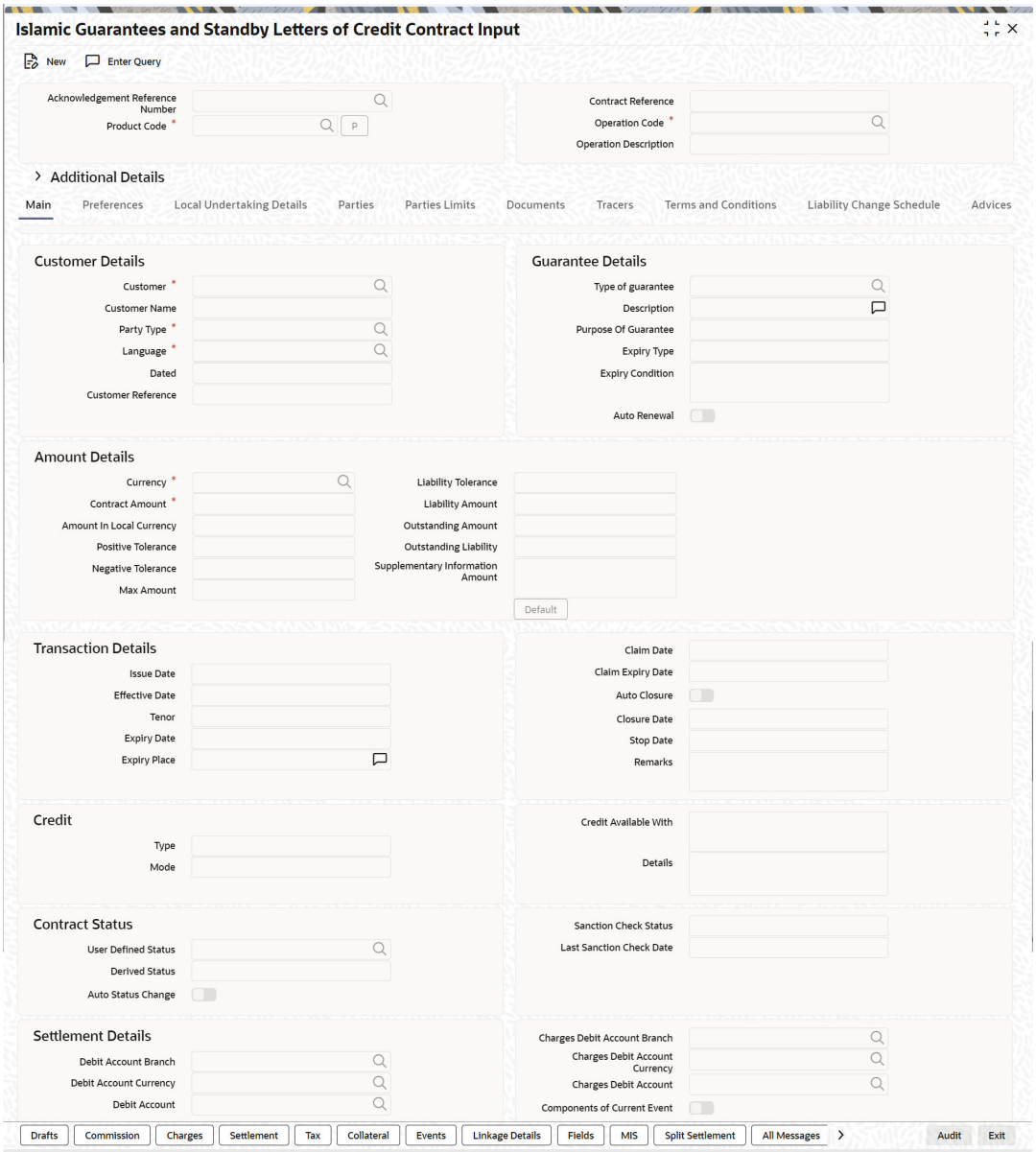
You can process Islamic Guarantees and SBLC contract using Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input screen.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDGUONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input screen is displayed

Figure 10-1 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract



2. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract** screen, click **New**.

   (Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract - New** screen, specify the details as required.

   (Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

4. Click **Save** to save the details OR **Cancel** to close the screen.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-1 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract - Field Description

Field	Description
Acknowledgment Reference Number	Specify the acknowledgement reference number. Alternatively, you can select the reference number from the option list. The list displays all the Islamic Guarantees and SBLCs related acknowledgement reference numbers.
Contract Reference	The system displays the contract reference number.
Product Code	Select the product code from the list of products created in the LC. Guarantees, Advice of Guarantees, SBLCs, Advice of SBLC Product codes are displayed in the option list. Click 'Populate' button for details of this product to get defaulted from the Product screen.
Operation Code	You can select operation code from the list of valid operation code value based on Product Type. The list displays the following options: • Advice • Open • Open and Confirm • Advice and Confirm Advice and Confirm is applicable for Guarantees if SWIFT 2019 is enabled.
Operation Description	The system displays the Operation description.
Product Description	The system displays the product description.
Source Code	The system displays the source code.
Source Reference	The system displays the source reference number.
Product Type	The type of product gets displayed here from the product screen, specifying if the product is of type import/export or revolving or non-revolving.
User Reference	The system displays the contract reference number as user reference number.
Version Number	Specify the version number. The Islamic Guarantees and SBLC contract processes can be simulated only through gateway. The Islamic Guarantee Issuance Simulation does not have screen, so user cannot invoke Guarantee Issuance Simulation from the application front. All operations are supported for Islamic Guarantee Issuance Simulation same as Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input screen.

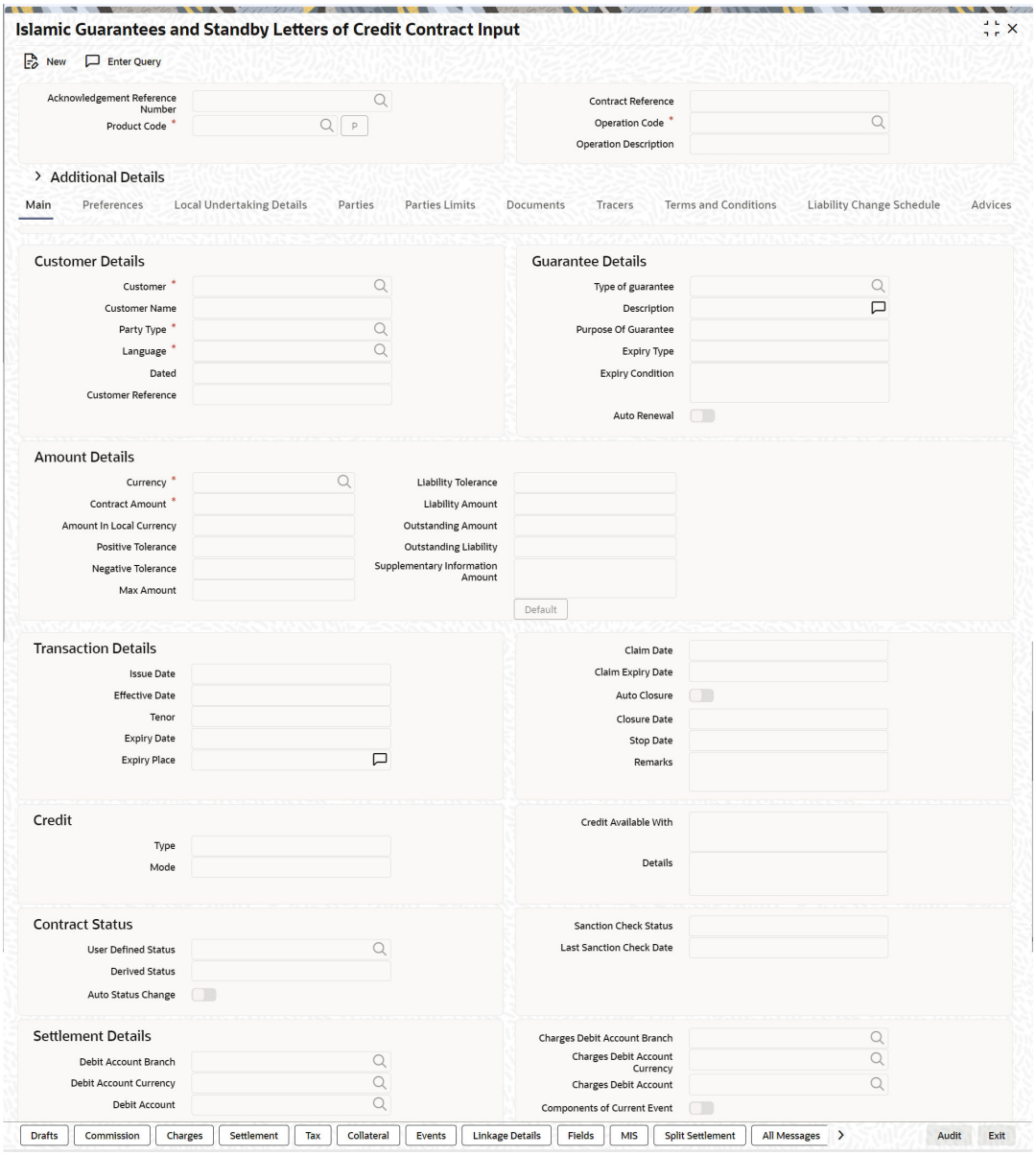
(Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

5. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Main**

   Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Main tab is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-2 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Main



6. On the **Main** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-2 Main tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer	Specify the customer number. Alternatively, you can select the customer number from the option list. The list displays all valid customer numbers. Specify the ‘Customer’ for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select ‘Customer’ from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number If the BIC Code is not mapped with that Customer Number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the ‘Customer’ in the adjoining option list.
Customer Name	The system displays the customer name.
Party Type	Once you have selected the product code, the party type is displayed by default.
Dated	Enter the date of the customer reference. This would normally be the date on which you have a correspondence from the party regarding the Islamic Guarantees/SBLC.
Customer Reference	Specify the customer reference number.
Currency	The system defaults the currency once you select the product code.
Language	The system defaults the language once you select the product code.
Contract Amount	Specify the amount for which the Islamic Guarantee and SBLC is drawn.
Amount in Local Currency	When FCY amount is given in 'Contract Amount' field for Islamic Guarantee, system converts in local currency and respective value is displayed in this screen. This field is mandatory for FCY contracts.
Outstanding Amount	The balance amount available after the availment of Islamic Guarantee/SBLC is displayed here.
Outstanding Liability	The system displays the liability amount.
Supplementary Information Amount	This field specifies the supplementary information about amount related to the undertaking.
Liability Amount	Based on the value you specify in Revolves In field, the LC Liability Amount will be computed and displayed.
Positive Tolerance	It indicates the increment, expressed as a percentage that must be made to the amount of a letter of credit, to arrive at the Maximum LC Amount.
Negative Tolerance	It indicates the reduction, expressed as a percentage that must be made to the amount of a letter of credit, to arrive at the Minimum LC Amount.
Max Amount	Maximum contract amount will be defaulted. This is the sum of contract amount and (%(tolerant) of contract amount).

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-2 (Cont.) Main tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Default	Click the default button for default generation. Issue Date will be defaulted to application date and Effective Date will be defaulted to issue date. The tenor for Open ended/Conditional Without Expiry Guarantees/Standby LCs will default with 3 years and Open ended/ Conditional Without Expiry counter guarantees with 3 years 30 days and corresponding local guarantee with 3 years. For Open ended guarantee under URDG Applicable rule, the defaulted expiry date cannot be modified. In other cases, if you accept the overrides, you can modify the defaulted details. The system displays Liability Amount, Max Amount, Tenor, Expiry Date, Claim Expiry Date, Closure Date, Stop Date by default.
Issue Date	Specify the issue date from the adjoining calendar.
Effective Date	Specify the effective date from the adjoining calendar.
Tenor	Specify the tenor of the contract.
Expiry Date	Specify the date on which the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC contract expires.
Expiry Place	Specify the expiry place in the text box and click Ok.
Claim Date	Select the claim date from the adjoining calendar. Claim date indicates the date by which all claims needs to be lodged for the guarantee. Claim Date should be on or before Claim Expiry Date.
Claim Expiry Date	Select the claim expiry date from the adjoining calendar. Claim expiry date indicates the date by which all claims lodged need to be settled. Claim Expiry Date = Expiry Date + Claim Days. System defaults Claim Expiry date as Expiry Date + Claim Days on Product default. If Claim Days is zero, Claim Expiry date will be Expiry Date. Claim Expiry Date can be modified. On Save, system will validate the following: • Claim Expiry Date cannot be before Claim Date. • Claim Expiry Date can be on or after Guarantee Expiry Date • Claim Expiry Date should not be after Closure Date. **Note** Commission is computed till Claim Expiry Date. During Guarantee Issuance Claim Expiry Date is considered to validate Limit Line expiry date. During Guarantee Issuance Claim Expiry Date is considered to validate Collateral expiry date.
Auto Closure	Check this option to indicate that the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC should be automatically closed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-2 (Cont.) Main tab - Field Description

Field	Description
Closure Date	The date of closure is based on the 'Closure Days' maintained for the product involved in the Islamic Guarantees/SBLC. The number of days specified as the Closure Days is calculated from the expiry date of the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC, to arrive at the Closure Date. Closure Date = Expiry Date + Closure Days
Stop Date	This date will be defaulted to LC Expiry date. Stop date cannot be earlier than Issue date and later than expiry date.
Type	Select the type from the drop-down list. The available options are: • Straight • Negotiable
Mode	Select the mode from the drop-down list. The available options are: • Sight Payment • Acceptance • Deferred Payment • Mixed Payment • Negotiation
Credit Available With	Specify the credit available with in the text box and click Ok.
Details	Specify the details in the text box and click Ok.
Type of guarantee	Select the guarantee type from the adjoining list. This is maintained using static type maintenance screen.
Description	Specify the details of guarantee description.
Purpose of Guarantee	If the LC that you are processing is a guarantee you should specify the purpose of guarantee. Click the adjoining drop-down list and select one of the following values: • Issue • Request
Expiry Type	Select the type of expiry typety from the list provided. The list is as follows: • Fixedmited • Open • Conditional - With Expiry • Conditional - Without Expiry
Expiry Condition	Specify the details for conditional guarantee.
Auto Renewal	This flag specifies if the Open ended guarantee is to be auto renewed on EOD.
Remarks	Specify remarks, if any.
User Defined Status	Specify the status of the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC contract. The option list displays all valid statuses that are applicable. Choose the appropriate one.
Derived Status	The system displays the derived status of the Islamic Guarantee/ SBLC contract. You cannot modify this.
Auto Status Change	The system defaults the status of the check box based on the product maintenance. However, you can modify this. If you check this box, the system picks up the contract during EOD operations for status processing. If you do not check this, the system will not consider the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC contract for automatic status processing.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-2 (Cont.) Main tab - Field Description

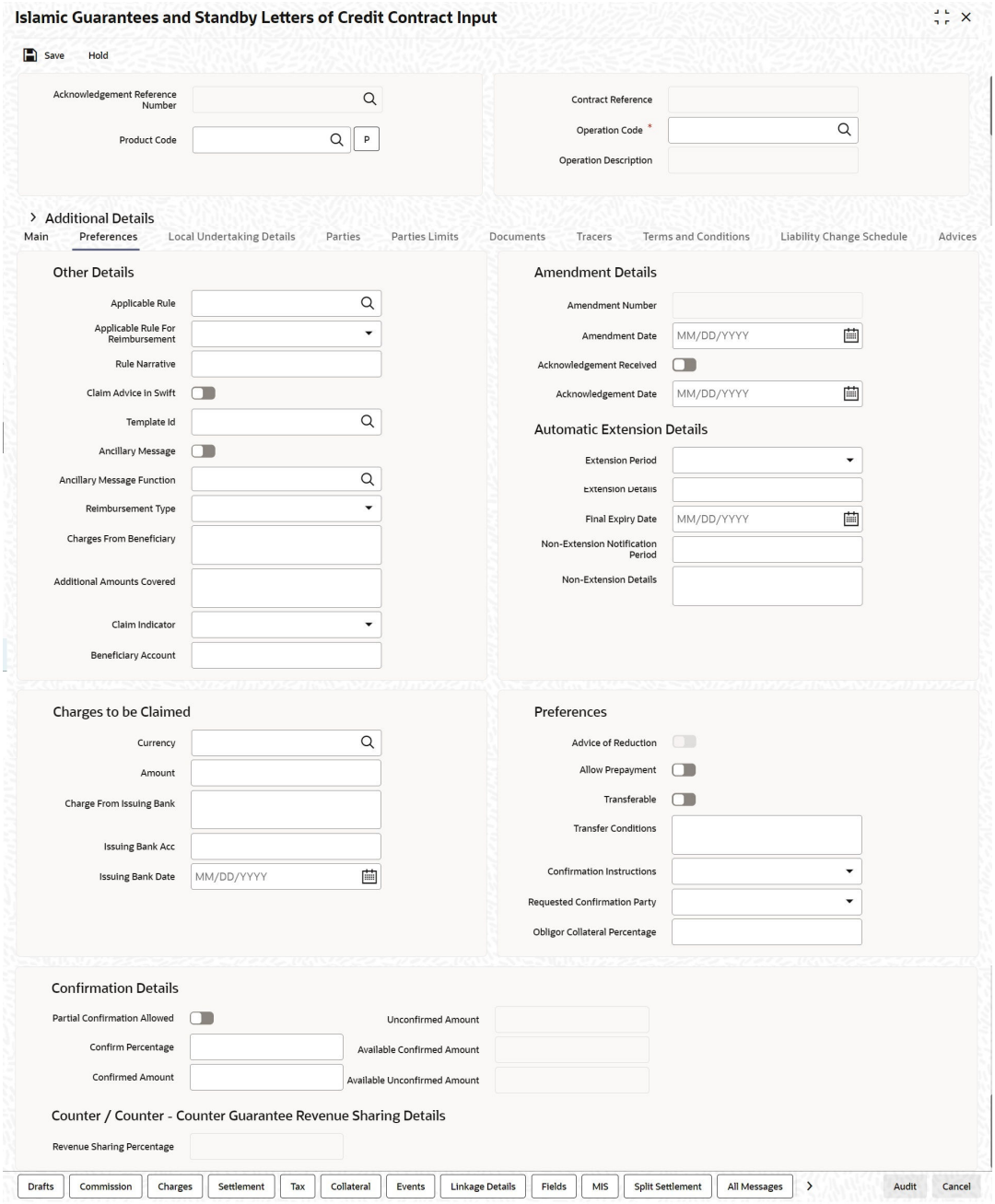
Field	Description
Sanction Check Status	The system displays the sanction check status. The statuses can be any of following: • P - Pending • X - Pending • A - Approved • R - Rejected • N - Not Required
Last Sanction Check Date	The system displays the last sanction check date.
Debit Account Branch	Specify the debit account branch. Alternatively, you can select the debit account branch from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Debit Account Currency	Specify the debit account currency. Alternatively, you can select the currency from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Debit Account	Specify the debit account. Alternatively, you can select debit account from the option list. The list display all valid values.
Charges Debit Account Branch	Specify the charges debit account branch. Alternatively, you can select the charges debit account branch from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Charges Debit Account Currency	Specify charges debit account currency. Alternatively, you can select charges debit account currency from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Charges Debit Account	Specify the charges debit account. Alternatively, you can select charges debit account from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Components of Current Event	System enhanced to show the amount tags pertaining to the current event in settlement screen for LC contracts. • During settlement pickup of LC contract input screen, current value of components of current event on contract input screen is considered to show the amount tags in ‘Settlements’ screen. • If the flag is checked at contract input screen, the amount tags pertaining only to the current event will be available in settlement screen with ‘Current event’ checked. • If the flag at contract input screen is unchecked, the amount tags of all the events will be available in ‘Settlements’ screen with current event flag checked for those amount tags of current event and unchecked for those amount tags not pertaining to current event.This field is optional. By default the field will be unchecked.

7. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Preferences**

   The **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Preferences** tab is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-3 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Preferences



8. On the **Preferences** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-3 Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Applicable Rule	The system defaults the applicable rule for the product type. However, you can modify this. Please refer to the section ‘Specifying the Applicable Rules’ under chapter ‘Defining Product Attributes’ in this user manual.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-3 (Cont.) Preferences - Field Description

Field	Description
Applicable Rule for Reimbursement	Select the applicable rule for reimbursement from the drop-down list. • URR Latest Version • Not URR
Rule Narrative	This is enabled only if 'Applicable Rule' is set to 'OTHR'. It is mandatory to specify the rule narrative if the applicable rule is 'OTHR'.
Claim Advice in Swift	Check this box to generate the charge claim advice in MT799 SWIFT format.
Template Id	Specify the template ID related to MT799 message types from the option list.
Ancillary Message	Check this box to generate MT 759 on contract authorization.
Ancillary Message Function	Specify the ancillary message function. Alternatively, you can select the ancillary message from the option list. The list displays all valid options maintained in the system. Ancillary Message Function is mandatory if 'Ancillary Message' is checked.
Charges From Beneficiary	Specify the charge amount borne by the beneficiary.
Reimbursement Type	Select the Reimbursement Type from the drop-down list. The available options are • Ours • Claimants
Additional Amounts Covered	Specify the additional amount covered.
Claim Indicator	Select the indicator for claim from the drop-down list. The list displays the following options: • Multiple demands not permitted • Multiple and partial demands not permitted • Partial demands not permitted
Beneficiary Account	Specify the account details of beneficiary. This field is read only.
Amendment Number	The system displays the amendment number.
Amendment Date	Specify the amendment date from the adjoining calendar.
Acknowledgement Received	Check this box to indicate that the acknowledgment has received.
Acknowledgement Date	Specify the date on which the acknowledgement is received.
Automatic Extension Details	The balance amount available after the availment of Guarantee/ SBLC is displayed here.
Extension Period	Select the extension period. You can select one of the following options: • Days • One Year • Others
Extension Details	Specify the extension details. Extension Details is mandatory when Period is Days/Others.
Non-Extension Notification Period	Specify the non-extension notification period. Notification Period will be minimum number of calendar days prior to the current expiry date. This indicates period by which notice of non-extension must be sent.
Non-Extension Details	Specify the non-extension details. Non-extension details are applicable only when notification period is provided.
Currency	Specify the currency in which the charges attributed to the issuing bank is expressed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-3 (Cont.) Preferences - Field Description

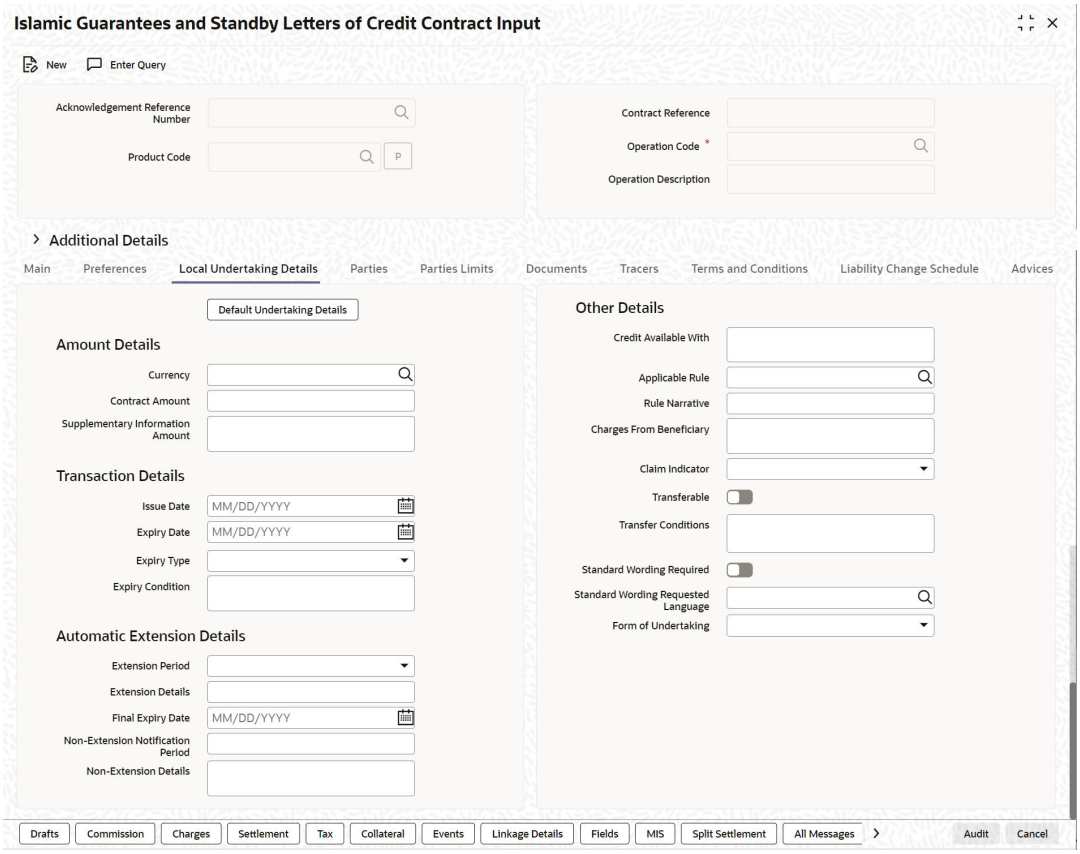
Field	Description
Amount	Specify the charge amount.
Charge From Issuing Bank	Give a brief description of the charge.
Issuing Bank Acc	Specify the account from which charge should be collected.
Issuing Bank Date	Specify the date of charge collection.
Advice of Reduction	The system displays the value for Advice of Reduction (MT 769) message.
Allow Prepayment	Check this option to indicate that the customer can make a prepayment on the contract.
Transferable	Check this box to indicate that the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC is transferable. Islamic Guarantee/SBLC can be transferred only if SWIFT 2019 is enabled.
Transfer Conditions	Specify the transfer conditions for the Guarantee/SBLC transfer.
Confirmation Instruction	Check this option to indicate that the SBLC can have an associated confirmation message. In Islamic Guarantee/SBLC if Confirmation Instruction option is checked cannot be amended to uncheck.
Requested Confirmation Party	Select the confirmation party type. You can select one of the following messages: • Advising Bank • Advise Through Bank • Confirming Bank
Obligor Collateral Percentage	Specify the Obligor collateral percentage. If Obligor Collateral Percentage is provided, then system will collect the collateral partially from applicant and Obligor Party depending on the percentage provided. Else system will collect the entire collateral from Applicant.
Partial Confirmation Allowed	Check this box to confirm the partial amount. The remaining amount is confirmed after you receive the approval from the external agent. This field is initially defaulted from product level. However, you can then check or uncheck it at the contract level.
Confirm Percentage	Specify the percentage of Islamic Guarantee Amount to be confirmed. If percentage is not specified, the system will calculate the percentage based on the confirm Amount specified.
Confirmed Amount	Specify the amount to be confirmed. If Confirm Amount is not specified, the system will calculate the confirmed amount based on the Confirm Percentage specified.
Unconfirmed Amount	The system displays the current maximum unconfirmed Islamic Guarantee amount. This amount is derived by deducting the confirmed amount from the maximum Islamic Guarantee amount.
Available Confirmed Amount	The system displays the available confirmed portion of the maximum Islamic Guarantee amount.
Available Unconfirmed Amount	The system displays the available unconfirmed portion of the maximum Islamic Guarantee amount.

9. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click the **Local Undertaking Details tab**.

   The **Local Undertaking Details** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-4 Local Undertaking Details



For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-4 Local Undertaking Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	Select the local undertaking currency from the list. This field is optional.
Contract Amount	Specify the local undertaking contract amount. This field is optional.
Supplementary Information Amount	This field specifies the supplementary information about amount related to the undertaking.
Default Undertaking Details	The system will provide an override message and the local undertaking details will be defaulted. On accepting the overrride, you can modify the defaulted details This field is optional.
Transaction Details	Specify the transaction details:
Issue Date	Specify the issue date from the calendar. This field is optional.
Expiry Date	Specify the expiry date from the calendar icon. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-4 (Cont.) Local Undertaking Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Expiry Type	Select the Expiry Type from the drop-down list. The available options are: • Fixed • Open • Conditional - With Expiry • Conditional - Without Expiry This field is optional.
Expiry Condition	Specify the expiry condition and click Ok. **Note** You can provide expiry condition details if the expiry type is selected as 'conditional'. If Expiry Type is 'Fixed' or 'Open' then Expiry Condition is NULL. This field is optional.
Other Details	Specify the other details:
Credit Available With	Specifythe Credit Available with details for local SBLCand click Ok. This field is optional.
Applicable Rule	Select the applicable rule for local undertaking from the list of values. This field is optional.
Rule Narrative	This is enabled only if 'Applicable Rule' is set to 'OTHR'. It is mandatory to specify the rule narrative if the applicable rule is 'OTHR'. This field is optional.
Charges From Beneficiary	Specify the charges from Beneficiary for Local Undertaking and click Ok. This field is optional.
Claim Indicator	Select the claim indicator for local undertaking. The available options are • Multiple demands not permitted. • Multiple and partial demands not permitted. • Partial demands not permittted.
Transferrable	Select this check box to indicate the Local Undertaking is transferable.
Transfer Conditions	Specify the transfer conditions:
Standard Wording Required	Check this option to indicate that the customer needs standard wording for local undertaking details.
Standard Wording Requested Language	Specify the language in which the standard wording is requested. Alternatively, you can select the standard wording requested language from the list.
Revenue Sharing Percentage	Specify the Revenue sharing percentage maintained at TF customer level for CO-BANK.
Automatic Extension Details	Specify the automatic extension related details for local undertaking.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-4 (Cont.) Local Undertaking Details - Field Description

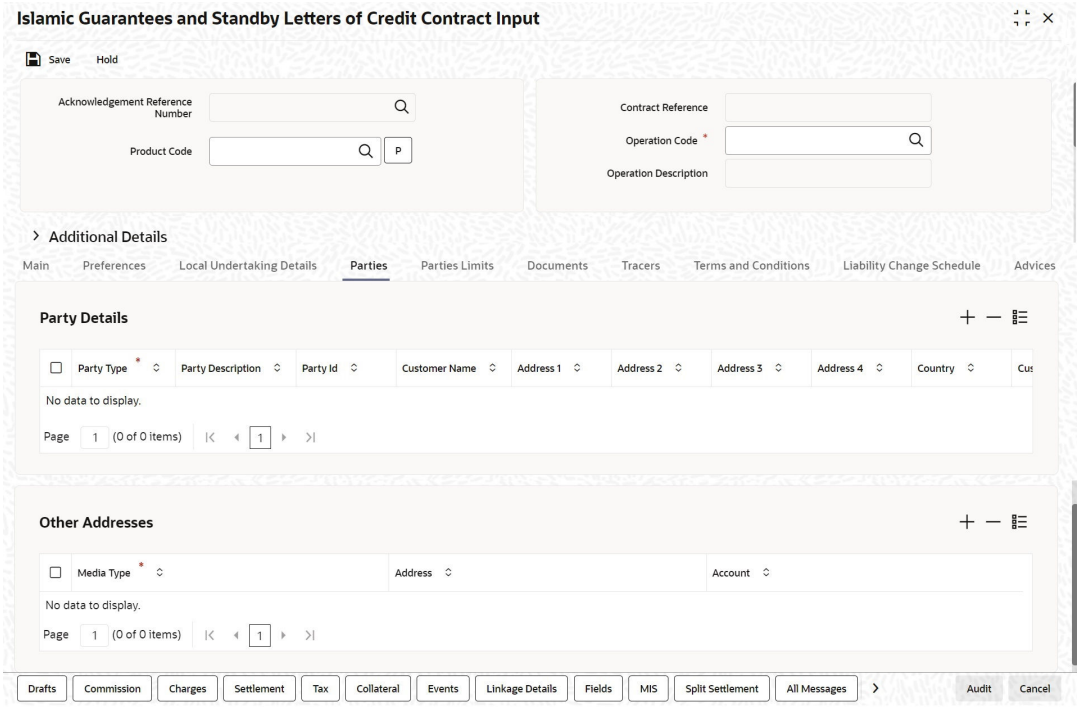
Field	Description
Extension Period	Select the extension period from the drop-down list. The available options are • Days • One Year • Others This field is optional.
Extension Details	The extension details is mandatory when extension period is selected as Days/Others. **Note** The Extension Details should be a positive number from 1 to 999 when Extension Period is Days This field is optional.
Non-Extension Details	Specify the non-extension details and click Ok.. Non-extension details are applicable only when notification period is provided. This field is optional.
Non-Extension Notification Period	Select the Notification Period for non-extension of Local Undertaking. Notification Period will be minimum number of calendar days prior to the current expiry date. This indicates period by which notice of non-extension must be sent.
Final Expiry Date	Select the Final Expiry Date for Automatic Extension. **Note** The Final Expiry Date should be greater than Local Guarantee Expiry Date. If the final expiry date is not greater than local guarantee then the system will display an override and default it to Local Guarantee Expiry Date This field is mandatory.

10. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, Click **Parties**.

    Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input- Parties tab, screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-5 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input- Parties tab



11. On the **Parties** tab screen, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-5 Parties tab- Field Description

Field	Description
Party Type	Specify the party type. Alternatively, you can select the party type from the option list. The list displays all the valid party types maintained in the system. Once the record has been saved, you can change party names by amending the record, provided the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC is not linked to a bill. Also, you cannot change party names for a transferred or an availed Islamic Guarantee/SBLC. During Guarantee/SBLC amendment, CIB or LIB party should be provided when purpose of guarantee is request. Note that, you can change the following party types: • REB • ABK • OBP The table **Change in Parties** gives the details of the messages when there is a change in parties.
Party Description	The system displays the party description.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-5 (Cont.) Parties tab- Field Description

Field	Description
Party ID	Specify the 'Party ID' for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC Code is not mapped with that customer number then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining option list.
Customer Name	Specify the customer name.
Address 1 - 4	Specify the address of the customer.
Country	Specify the country code. Alternatively, you can select country code from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Customer Reference	Specify the customer reference number.
Dated	Enter the date of the customer reference. This would normally be the date on which you have a correspondence from the party regarding the SBLC.
Language	Specify the language in which advices should be sent to the customer.
Issuer	Check this option to indicate that the issuer is a bank.
Template ID	Specify the template ID. If you change REB party, then a template ID needs to be attached to send MT799 to Advising bank.
Media Type	Specify the media type. Alternatively, you can select the media type from the option list. The list displays all valid values.
Address	Specify the address of the party.
Account	The system defaults the account number. However, you can edit this field. The parties involved in a Islamic Guarantee/SBLC depend upon the type of Islamic Guarantee/SBLC you are processing. The following table indicates the minimum number of parties required for the types of Islamic Guarantee/SBLC that you can process.

Table 10-6 Change in Parties

Field	Description
REB (in case of Guarantees and SGs)	MT767 will be generated to the Advising bank.
ABK (in case of Guarantees and SGs)	MT767 will be generated to the old Advising Bank. In Tag 77C, Code 'CANCEL' will be populated indicating that the Guarantee is canceled. MT760 will be generated to the new Advising Bank.
OBP (in case of Guarantees and SGs)	MT767 will be generated to the old Advising Bank. In Tag 77C, Code 'CANCEL' will be populated indicating that the Guarantee is canceled. MT760 will be generated to the new Advising Bank.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

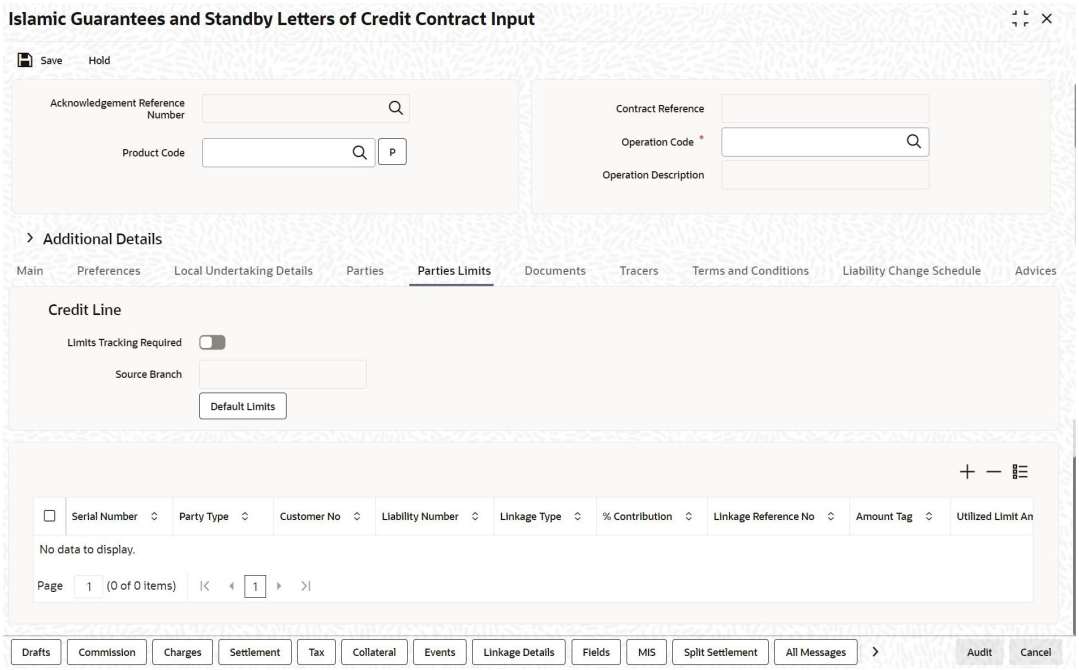
Table 10-6 (Cont.) Change in Parties

Field	Description
Reimbursing bank (REB) (Deletion of REB in case of SBLC)	MT767 will be generated to the Advising bank. MT747 will be sent to old Reimbursing Bank Party. MT740 will be automatically suppressed. FFT code 'CANC' must be attached manually to advice 'LC_AMND_AUTH_REIMB' (747), at contract level.

12. On **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Parties Limits**.

Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input screen is displayed.

Figure 10-6 Parties Limits



13. On the **Parties** Limits tab, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-7 Parties Limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Limits Tracking Required	Specify whether the credit granted under the LC you are processing should be tracked against the credit limit assigned to the customer under a Credit Line. Check this box to indicate that limit tracking is required for the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC. If left unchecked, the system will display an override message 'Limit tracking not done for the contract' while saving the record. In the subsequent fields of this screen, you can specify details of the line under which the credit is to be tracked.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-7 (Cont.) Parties Limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Default Limits	Select Default Limits button to default the basic limit details.
Serial Number	Specify the serial number.
Party Type	The system displays the party type of the counterparty of the contract.
Customer No	The system displays the CIF Id of the counterparty.
Liability Number	The system displays multiple liabilities that are attached to the Customer.
Linkage Type	System defaults the linkage type as Facility.
Contribution	When you click ‘Default’ button, the system defaults the percentage of contribution as 100%maintained under sub-screen of ‘Customer Maintenance’ screen.
Linkage Reference No	Specify the reference number that identifies the facility or collateral pool. The option list displays all valid facilities and collateral pools specific to the liability. Choose the appropriate one.
Amount Tag	The system defaults the liability amount.
Limit Amount	When you click ‘Default’ button, the system defaults the amount tracked for each credit line.
JV Parent	When you click ‘Default Limits’ button, the system defaults the joint venture customer number of the party. This customer number is defaulted based on the details maintained in ‘Joint Venture’ sub-screen of ‘Customer Maintenance’ screen.

Table 10-8 Parties limits

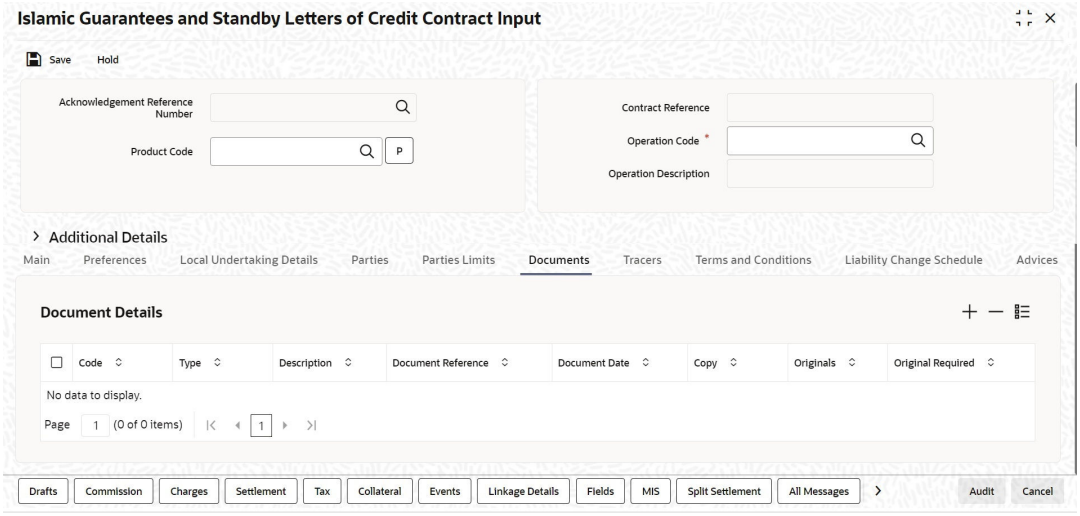
Field	Description	Mandatory Parties	Parties Not Allowed
Shipping Guarantee	Applicant/Accountee Advising Bank Beneficiary Confirming Bank Advice Through Bank Reimbursing Bank	Applicant and Beneficiary	Issuing Bank
Guarantee	Applicant and Beneficiary	Applicant and Beneficiary	Advise Through Bank Reimbursement Bank Issuing Bank
Standby	Applicant/Accountee Advising bank Beneficiary Confirming bank Reimbursing bank	Applicant and Beneficiary	Issuing Bank

14. On the **Islamic Guarantees and standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Documents**.

Islamic Guarantees and standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Documents screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-7 Documents



15. On the **Documents** tab, specify the details as specified.

    For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-9 Documents - Field Description

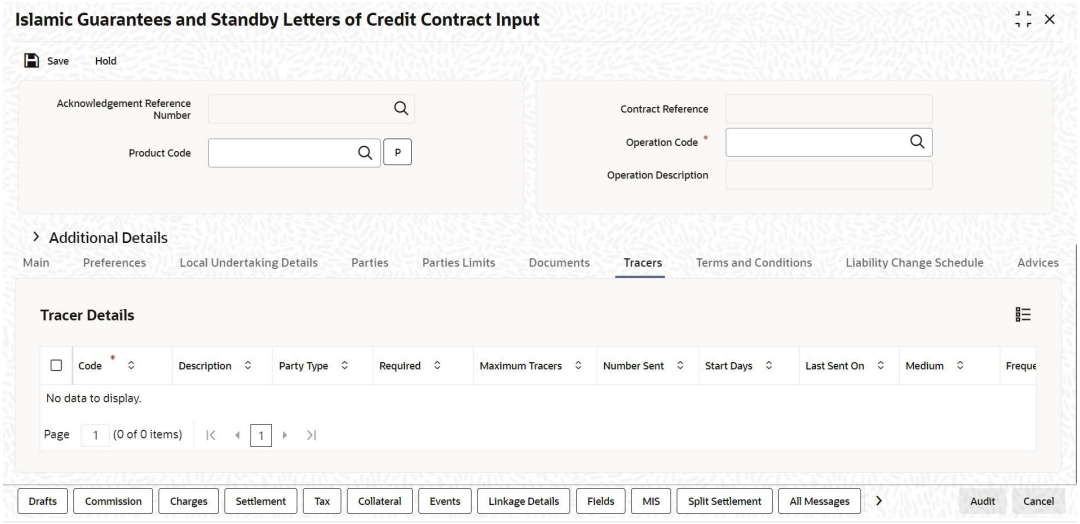
Field	Description
Code	Specify the document code. Alternatively, you can select the document code from the option list. The list displays all valid options.
Type	Select the type of document from the drop-down list.
Description	The system displays the document description.
Document Reference	Enter the document reference number based on which the Guarantee/SBLC issued.
Document Date	Specify the Document Date. Document date should be less than or equal to issue date.
Copy	Enter the number of copies of the document.
Originals	Enter the number of Original documents here.
Original Required	Check this box if original document is required.
Default	Click the default button for default generation.

16. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Tracers**.

    Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Tracers screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-8 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Tracers



17. On the **Tracers** tab, specify the details as required.

    Tracers are reminders that can be sent to various parties involved in Islamic Guarantees and SBLC.

    For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-10 Tracers - Field Description

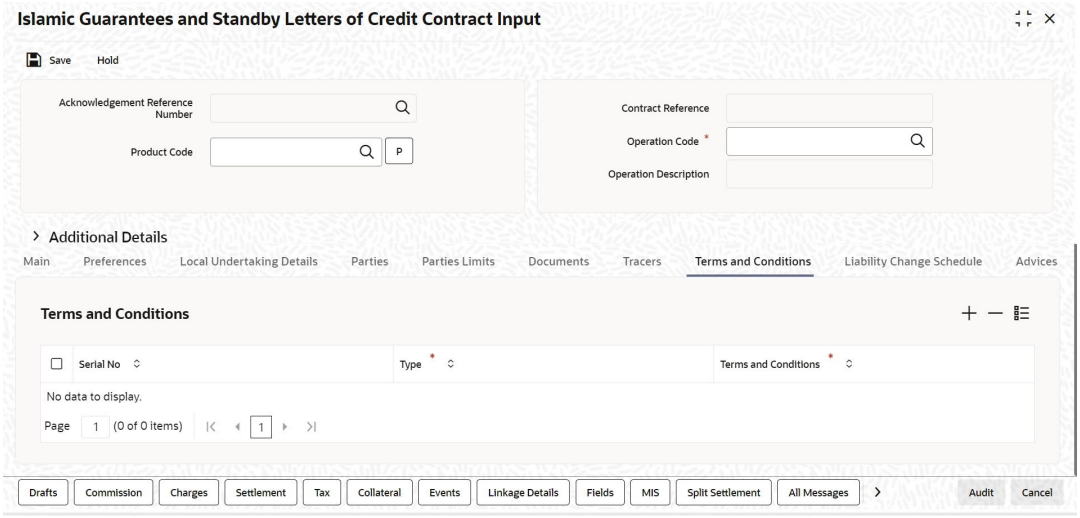
Field	Description
Tracer details The tracers, specified for the product to which you have linked the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC, defaults to this screen. The following details will be displayed: • Code • Description • Party Type • Required • Maximum Tracers • Number Sent • Start Days • Last Sent On • Medium • Frequency • Template Id	

18. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Terms and Conditions**.

    Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Terms and Conditions screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-9 Terms and Conditions



19. On the **Terms and Conditions** tab, specify the details as required.

    For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-11 Terms and Conditions - Field Description

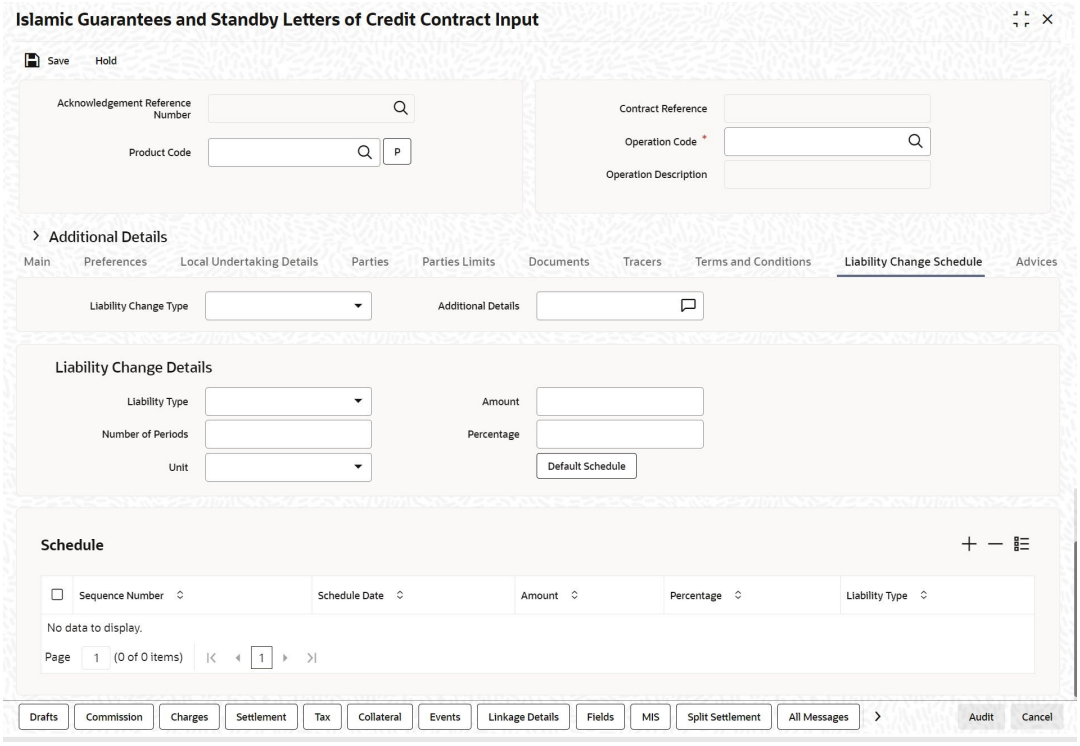
Field	Description
Serial No	Specify the serial number for terms and conditions.
Type	Select the guarantee type from the drop-down list. Available options are: • Guarantee • Local Guarantee
Terms and Conditions	Specify the terms and conditions. **Note** Terms and Conditions for Guarantee are mandatory.

20. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click the **Liability Change Schedule** tab.

    The **Liability Change Schedule** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-10 Liability Change Schedule



For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-12 Liability Changes Schedule - Field Description

Field	Description
Liability Change Type	Indicates whether Liability Change is Time Based or Event Based: a) Processing will be scheduled in case of Time Based b) Additional details can be provided in case of Event Based. There is no functional impact.
Additional Details	Additional details can be provided in case of Event Based
Liability Type	Indicates Increase or Decrease or Both increase and decrease of liability Increase to be provided to increase the Guarantee amount • Decrease to be provided to decrease the Guarantee amount • Both to be provided in case of increase and decrease of Guarantee amount Drop-down will be provided for the same.
Number of Periods	Indicates Number of Schedules. Should be greater than zero.
Unit	Indicates Unit of Payment or Retention namely: Yearly / Half-Yearly / Quarterly / Monthly Drop-down will be provided for the same.
Amount	Indicates schedule amount. Amount should be greater than zero. If Liability Type is decrease, Amount should not be less than Contract Amount.
Percentage	Indicates percentage of Contract amount to be considered for Liability change. Value should be 1 to 100

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-12 (Cont.) Liability Changes Schedule - Field Description

Field	Description
Default Schedule	Button to default Liability Change Schedules based on above input parameters
Schedule	The system displays the schedules.
Sequence Number	Indicates Schedule sequence number. System derives the same and will be display field.
Schedule Date	Indicates date on which system will initiate Liability Change Schedule. User can modify the defaulted schedule date. Schedule date will be defaulted based on Unit. If Units is Yearly, schedule date will be one Year from Guarantee Issue Date. • 366 Days will be considered in case of leap year • 365 Days will be considered if not a leap year If Units is Half-Yearly / Quarterly / Monthly , schedule date will be 6 months, 3 months, 1 month from the issue date respectively. • Calendar Days will be considered Schedule date should not be greater than Expiry Date for Guarantees without Automatic Extension. Schedule date should not be greater than Final Expiry Date for Guarantees with Automatic Extension.
Amount	Indicates amount applicable for each schedule: Amount should be greater than zero • If Liability change is increase, schedule amount can be greater or lesser than the Contract Amount • If Liability change is decrease, schedule amount should not be lesser than the Contract Amount Percentage will be derived based on Amount, if percentage is not available
Percentage	Indicates percentage of Contract amount. Should be 1 to 100. a) Amount will be computed based on percentage, if amount is not available b) If both Percentage and Amount is available, percentage will be considered to derive the amount
Liability Type	Indicates Increase or Decrease based on liability processing. User can modify the same. a) System will default Increase when Liability processing is Increase b) System will default decrease when Liability processing is Decrease User should provide manually, when Liability processing is Both

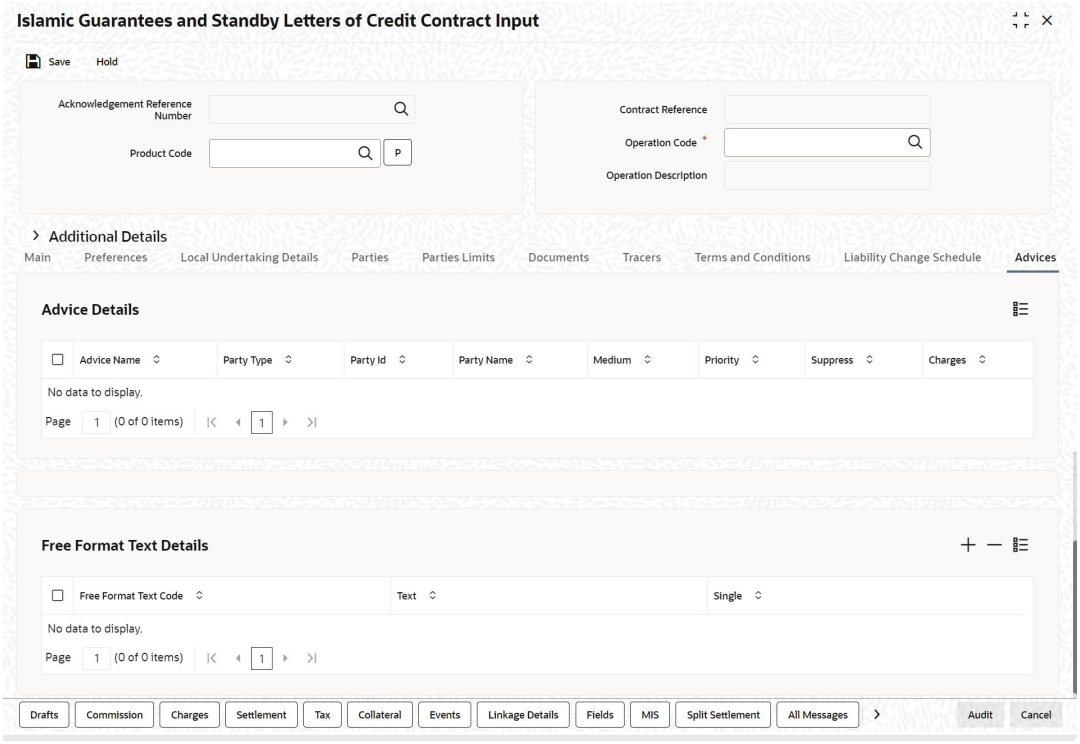
21. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click **Advices**.

    The details of the advices for an event are displayed in the Advices screen. The party type to whom a specific advice should be sent is picked up automatically based on the type of Islamic Guarantee/SBLC being processed and the parties involved.

    Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input - Advices screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-11 Advices



22. On **Advices** tab, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-13 Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Advice Name	Specify the advice name.
Party Type	The system displays the party type for which the message is generated.
Party Id	The system displays the party ID for which the message is generated.
Party Name	The system displays the name of the party for which the advice is generated.
Medium	The medium by which an advice will be transmitted and the corresponding address will be picked up based on the media and address maintenance for a customer. You can, however, change either of these while processing the LC. Typically, if changed, both of them will be changed. After selecting the advices to be generated for the LC, click on ‘Ok’ to save it. Click ‘Exit’ or ‘Cancel’ button to reject the inputs you have made. In either case, you will be taken to the Contract Main screen.
Priority	For a payment message by SWIFT, you also have the option to change the priority of the message. By default, the priority of all advices is marked as low. The priority of a payment message can be changed to one of the following: • Low • Medium • High

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-13 (Cont.) Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Suppress	By default, all the advices that have been defined for a product will be generated for the LCs involving it. If any of the advices are not applicable to the LC you are processing, you can suppress its generation by Checking against the suppress field.
Charges	The system displays the charges configured. A FFT Description field can contain 2000 characters. If the details of the guarantee you specify exceeds 2000 characters, the system will automatically stagger the remaining text into subsequent FFT Description fields. To delete an FFT from the list, highlight the code that identifies the FFT and click delete icon. The free format codes for the following purposes have the fixed codes: • **SND2RECMTxxx**-- Sender to receiver information (Field 72 of SWIFT). • **INSTRUCTION** -- Instructions to the Paying/Accepting/ Negotiating bank (Field 78 of SWIFT).
Sender to Receiver Info Tag	FFT codes “SND2RECMTxxx” will be used to pick up the sender to receiver information in various swift messages. In the FFT code “MTxxx” will stand for the SWIFT message type in which the FFT code will be picked up. This facilitates defining a separate FFT code for each of the SWIFT message. This will be applicable for the following swift messages: MT700, 707, 705, 710, 720, 730, 740, 747, 760, 767, 768, 400, 410, 412, 420,422, 430, 734, 732, 742, 756, 750, 752, 754,798, 760 and 762. The various FFT codes for SND2RECMTxxx are maintained in the Free Format Code maintenance screen. During contract processing, based on the event being processed system defaults the advices maintained for the particular event. For messages of SWIFT type ,you can select the corresponding SND2RECMTxxx FFT code from the list of values In the SWIFT message generated , the tag 72 will be populated with the text associated with the FFT code SND2RECMTxxx attached for the advice at the contract level.System will not validate the FFT code SND2RECMTxxx being attached with the advice. This has to be operationally controlled. During advice generation, if the FFT code SND2RECMTxxx corresponding to the advice is not attached or if a different SND2RECMTxxx is attached, system will not populate the tag 72 in the advice generated.
Free Format Text Code	To add an FFT to the list, click add icon. Select an FFT code from the adjoining option list that is displayed.
Text	After selecting the code that identifies the FFT you wish to attach to the advice, its description is automatically picked up and displayed. The FFT description can be changed to suit the requirements of the LC you are processing.
Single	Check this option to indicate that the FFT is a single message. For more details on the buttons in Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Contract Input screen, refer the chapter titled ‘Capturing Additional Details’ in this user manual. The following table provides the list of SWIFT messages and the fields of SWIFT messages that utilizes the information provided in this screen, refer to:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-14 Swift Message

Field in Oracle FLEXCUBE	SWIFT Message	Field of the SWIFT message
Operation Code	MT760	22A,49
Purpose of Guarantee	MT760	22A
Contract Reference	MT760,MT761,MT7 68,MT769	20
Issue Date	MT760	30
Product Type	MT760	22D
Applicable Rule	MT760	40C
Validity Type	MT760	23B
Expiry Date	MT760	31B
Expiry Condition	MT760	35G
Party Id – APP	MT760	50
Party Id – APB	MT760	51
Party Id – ISB	MT760,MT761	52a
Party Id - BEN	MT760	59
Party Id - ABK	MT760	56a
Party Id - ATB	MT760	57a
Contract Amount	MT760	32B
Documents - Description	MT760	45C
May Confirm	MT760	49
Party Id - COB	MT760	49a
Claim Indicator	MT760	48B
Transferable	MT760	48D
Local Guarantee Details - Issue Date	MT760	31C
Local Guarantee Details - Expiry Date	MT760	31B - Sequence C
Charges to be Claimed - Amount	MT768,MT769	32a
Charges to be Claimed - Currency	MT768,MT769	32a
Issuing Bank Date	MT768,MT769	32a
Issuing Bank Acc	MT768,MT769	25
Charge From Issuing Bank	MT768	71D
Additional Amounts Covered	MT769	39C
Charges From Beneficiary	MT769	71D
The above details are applicable if SWIFT 2019 is enabled.		

23. On Query from contract input screen click **UDE** to launch the Trade Finance User Defined Events Triggering screen (**UDDTFEVT**) and perform additional accounting entries for active and authorized contracts.

    The **UDE** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-12 Trade Finance User Defined Events Triggering

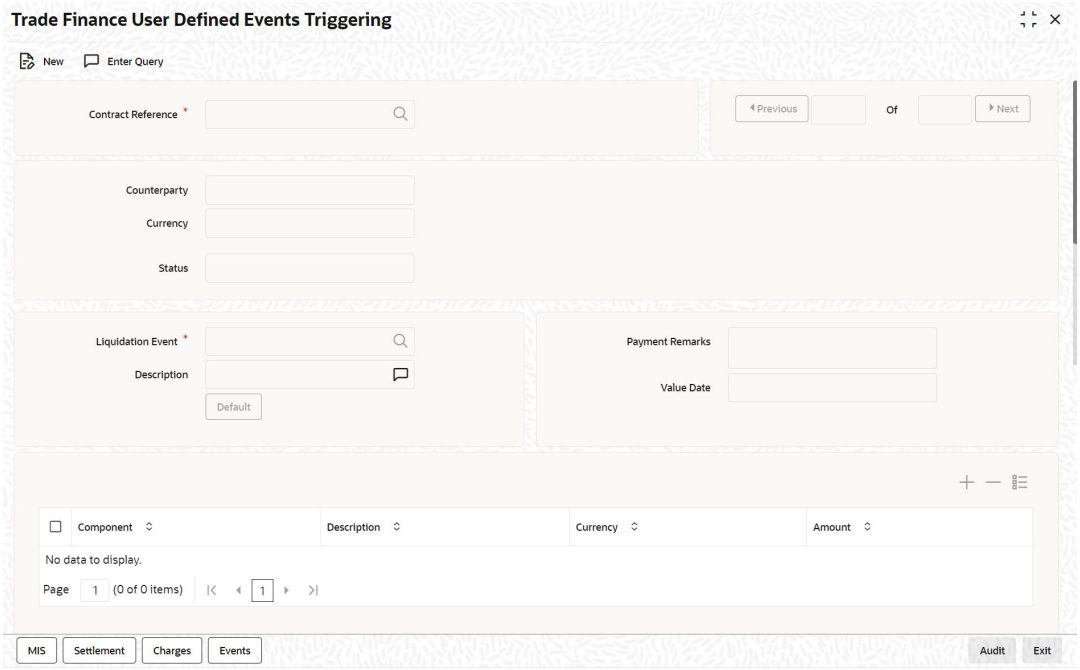


Table 10-15 Trade Finance User Defined Events Triggering - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	On click of New the contract reference number defaults.
Counterparty	On click of New the counterparty defaults.
Status	On click of New the status defaults.
Currency	On click of New the currency defaults
Liquidation Event	Select the event from the adjoining option list.
Description	Description defaults on select of event from the field liquidation event
Payment Remarks	Specify remarks pertaining to the payment on the account.
Value Date	If the value date derivation rule has been maintained for the event code, the system will calculate the value date and display it here. However, you can change it

Click 'Default' to default the following details:

Amount Details: The system displays the following amount details

Component

Description

Currency

Amount

24. On the **Islamic Guarantee and Standndby Letter of Credit Contract Input** screen, click the **Customer Instructions** tab.

    The **Customer Instructions** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-13 Customer Instructions

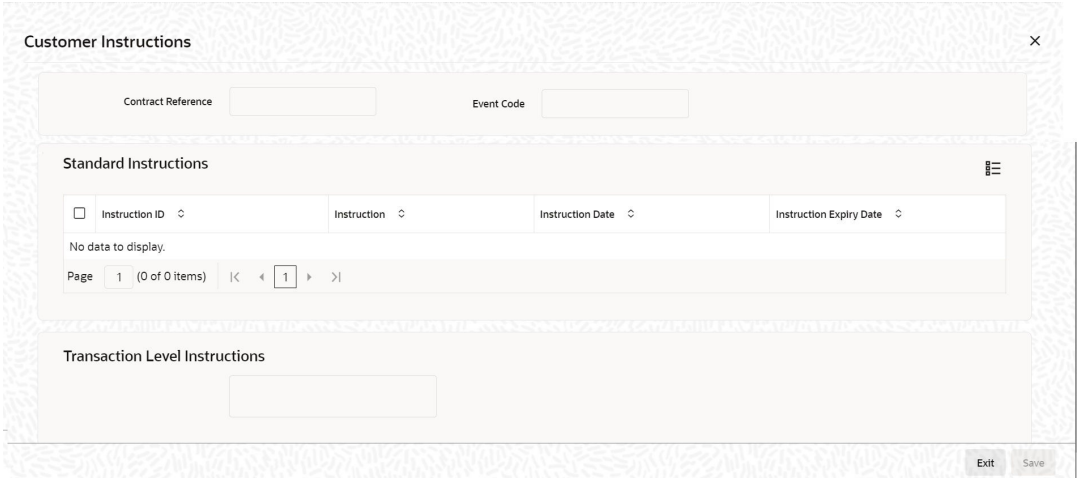


Table 10-16 Customer Instructions - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	System displays the contract reference number.
Event Code	System displays the Event Code of the contract.
Standard Instructions Customer would want to give Standard instructions in advance to the bank that need to be referred by the bank while processing certain type of transactions.	
Instruction ID	System displays the Instruction ID.
Instruction	System displays the customer standard instruction.
Instruction Date	System displays the start date of the customer instruction.
Instruction Expiry Date	System displays the expiry date of the customer instruction.
Transaction Level Instruction	Enter the transaction level instructions for the event.

25. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input** screen, click the **Split Settlement** button.

    Split Settlement Master details get populated for the Cash collateral. User needs to provide the split details for the Split Master Basis Amount. During Cancel or Close, the outstanding collateral will be refunded to the customer accounts.
    Split Settlement Master and Split Settlement Details get populated for the Charges and Commmission component if split flag is checked in the respective subsystems.System will default the split settlement details with two splits for a charge/commission component one for counterparty and another one for Other party.System will default split amount 50% of charge/commission component between parties.User can modify the amount and and percentage will be derived based on modified amount. If AR-AP is unchecked for a component then Split account will default with settlement instructions of Customer and Split Account can be modified to another valid account of the Customer.If AR-AP is checked then Split account will be defaulted with AR-AP GL and Split account cannot be modified.Maximum of two splits is allowed for Charges and Commission components.

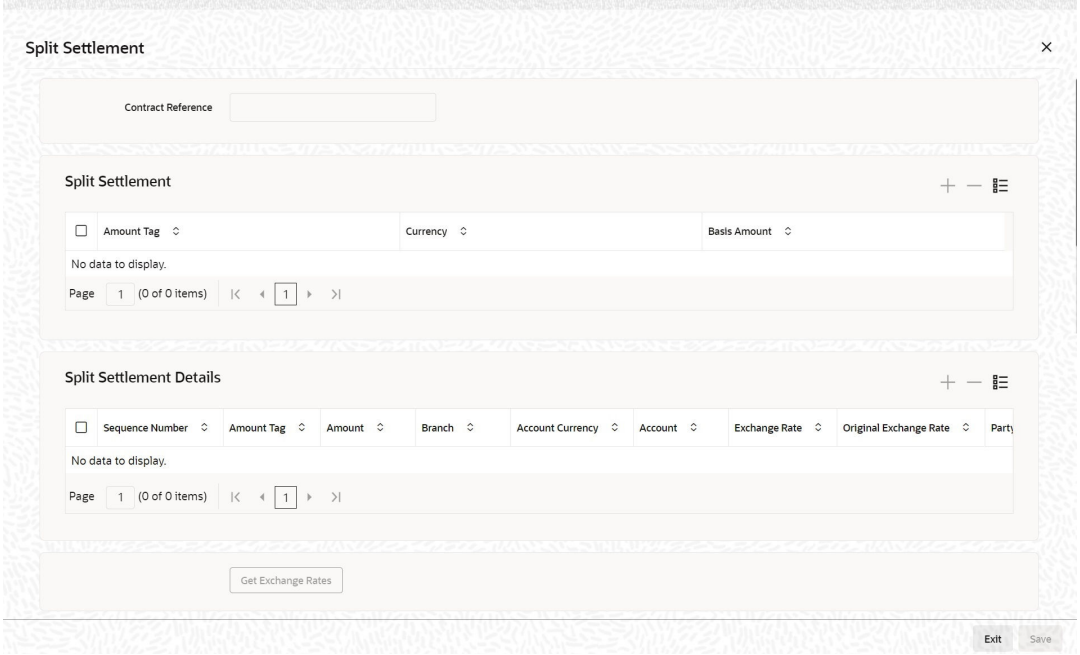
Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-17 Party Type Derivation for Charges and Commission

Category	Counter Party	Other Party	Other Party Resolution
Guarantee/SBLC Issuance	APP/ACC/APB	BEN/CIB/LIB/AB K	If Beneficiary is a bank customer Else CIB if exists Else LIB if exists Else Advising Bank
Guarantee/SBLC Advice	BEN	APP/ISB	If Applicant is a bank customer else Issuing bank

The **Split Settlement** screen is displayed.

Figure 10-14 Split Settlement



For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-18 Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Specify Settlement Split Master	You can specify the details of the settlement split master in the following fields:
Basis Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag involved in the contract. The option list displays all valid amount tags maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. For example, on booking a new contract, the only tag allowed is PRINCIPAL. This is referred to as the basis amount tag. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-18 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	The system displays the currency associated with the amount tag. This field is optional.
Basis Amount	The system displays the basis amount associated with the amount tag. For example, the amount involved in the contract would be displayed against the amount tag PRINCIPAL. The amount is in terms of the currency associated with the amount tag. You can use Get Exchange Rate button to get the original exchange rates defaulted in the screen. This field is optional.
Specify Settlement Split Details	For each split amount tag, you need to specify the following details: This field is optional.
Amount	Specify the amount for the split amount tag. This amount should not be greater than the amount of the corresponding basis amount tag. The split amount is in the currency of the basis amount tag. This is a mandatory field and you will not be allowed to save the details if you do not specify the amount. This field is optional, if percentage of proceeds is provided. Amount will be derived based upon the percentage.
Branch	Specify the branch. The list displays all valid values.This field is mandatory.
Account Currency	Specify the account currency. This field is mandatory.
Account	Specify the account. This list displays all the accounts. For Cash Collateral the account should be account of the counterparty. If the account selected is other than counterparty account, then system will throw error. This field is mandatory.
Loan/Finance Account	Check this box to indicate that the specified account should be the loan account. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	Specify the exchange rate that must be used for the currency conversion. Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The base or the actual exchange rate between the contract currency and collateral currency gets displayed here.
Party Type	System defaults this field for Charges and Commission components if split flag is checked in respective components.This field is applicable only for charges and commission components.
AR-AP Tracking	System defaults this field for charges and commission components based upon the AR-AP tracking selection in charges and commission component when split flag is checked in respective components. This field is applicable only for Charges and Commission components.
Customer	Select the customer number from the list.
Percentage of Proceeds	Specify the percentage of proceeds

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-18 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Negotiated Rate	Specify the negotiated cost rate that should be used for foreign currency transactions between the treasury and the branch. You need to specify the rate only when the currencies involved in the transaction are different. Otherwise, it will be a normal transaction. The system will display an override message if the negotiated rate is not within the exchange rate variance maintained at the product. This field is optional.
Negotiated Reference	Specify the reference number that should be used for negotiation of cost rate, in foreign currency transaction. If you have specified the negotiated cost rate, then you need to specify the negotiated reference number also. **Note** Oracle Banking Trade Finance books then online revaluation entries based on the difference in exchange rate between the negotiated cost rate and transaction rate. This field is optional.

10.2.2 View Guarantees and SBLC Contract Details

This topic provides the systematic instructions to view guarantees and SBLC Contract details.

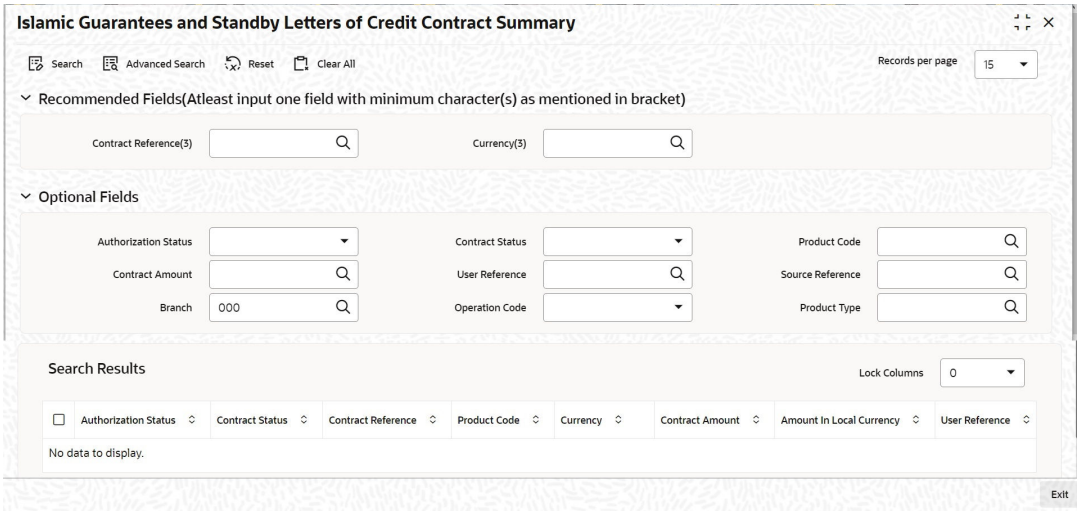
You can view Islamic Guarantees and SBLC contract details through Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Summary screen.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISGUONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Summary screen is displayed.

Figure 10-15 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Summary



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. On **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Summary** screen, base your queries as required.

   You can base your queries on any or all of the following parameters and fetch records:

   - The Recommended fields are:
     - Contract Reference
     - Currency
     - Branch
   - The Optional Fields are:
     - Authorization Status
     - Contract Status
     - Product Code
     - Contract Amount
     - Operation Code
       Select any or all of the above parameters for a query and click ‘Search’ button. The system displays the following records meeting the selected criteria:
       * Authorization Status
       * Contract Status
       * Contract Reference
       * Product Code
       * Currency
       * Contract Amount
       * User Reference
       * Source Reference
       * Customer Reference
       * Dated
       * Party Type
       * Issue Date
       * Expiry Date
       * Branch
       * Operation Code
       * Customer
       * Amount In Local Currency

10.3 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment

This topic contains the following sub topics:

1. Process Amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Process Amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to view Process Amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC.
- View Guarantees and SBLC Amendment Details
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to view guarantees and SBLC amendment details.

10.3.1 Process Amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC

This topic provides the systematic instructions to view Process Amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC.

You can process amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC using Islamic LC Confirmation Input screen.

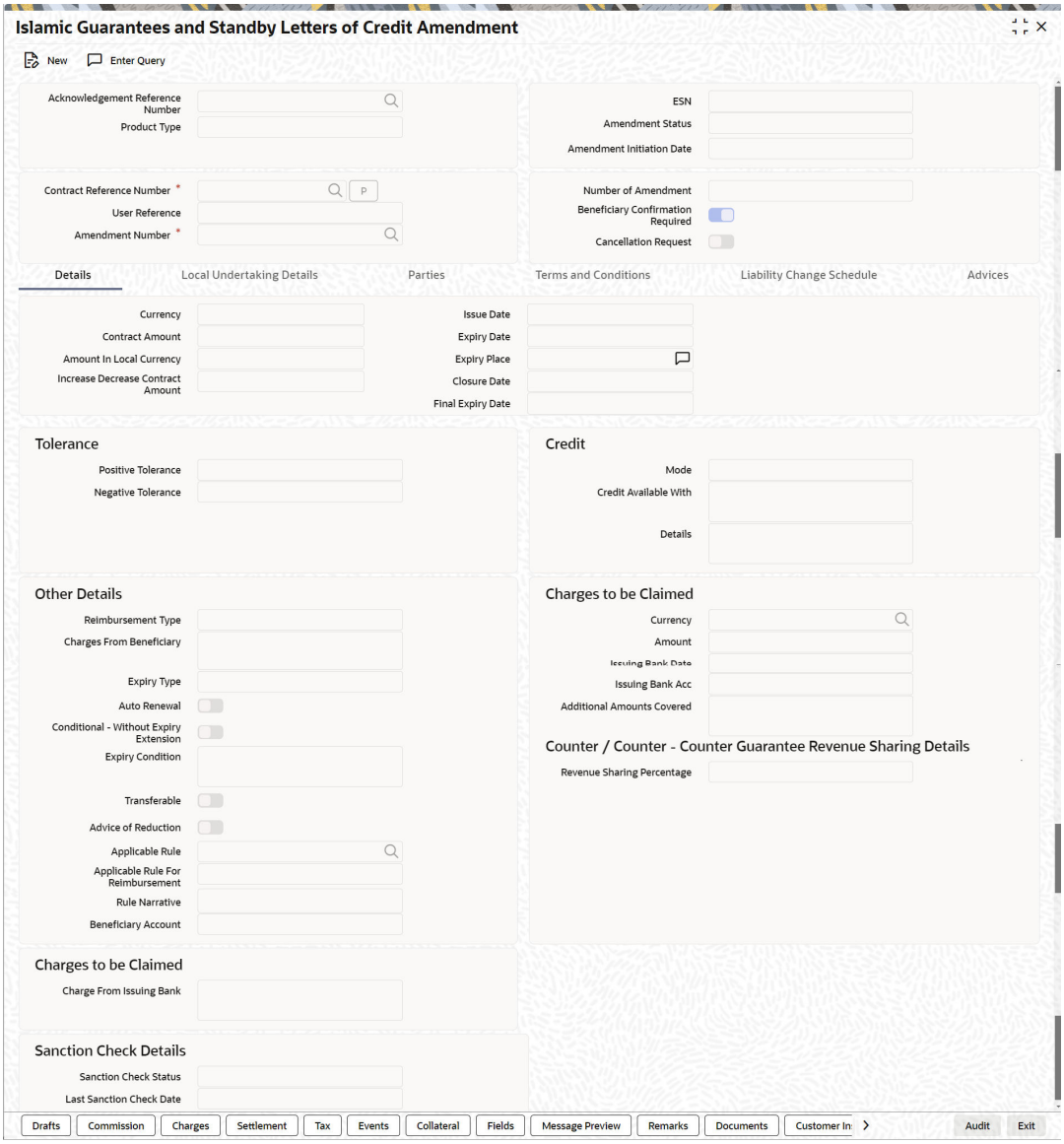
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDGUAMD** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-16 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment



2. On **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment** screen, click **New**.
3. **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - New** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-19 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - New - Field Description

Field	Description
Hold button to support financial amendment [LIDGUAMD]	Click Hold button to support financial amendment [LIDGUAMD] from the below given options: • Amendment without beneficiary confirmation • Amendment without beneficiary confirmation and with Advice of Reduction • Amendment with beneficiary confirmation User can unlock amendments on Hold, modify details if required and save. Processing on Save will continue as existing. 'Deletion of Hold' will be supported. 'Hold of Hold' will be supported. Contract remains on Hold and in unauthorized status. Authorization is not supported for Contracts put on Hold **Note** Hold will not be supported for amendment with beneficiary confirmation and Advice of reduction, amendment with Cancellation flag or Confirmation / Rejection of amendment
Acknowledgment Reference Number	Specify the acknowledgment reference number. Alternatively, you can select the reference number from the option list. The list displays all the acknowledgment reference numbers for contract amendment registered in the system.
ESN	The system displays the event sequence number.
Product Type	The system displays the product type of Islamic Guarantee/SBLC.
Amendment Status	The system displays the amendment status.
Amendment Initiation Date	The system displays the amendment initiation date.
Contract Reference Number	Select the reference number of the contract to be amended from the option list provided. This option list will display all contracts that are authorized.
Number of Amendment	The system displays the number of amendments based on the contract reference number.You can amend a Islamic Guarantee/ SBLC multiple times before the previous amendment is confirmed or rejected. Financial amendment without Beneficiary Confirmation will not be allowed if there are unauthorized unconfirmed amendments.
Beneficiary Confirmation Required	The system enables 'Beneficiary Confirmation Required' flag by default. When amendment is initiated with Beneficiary confirmation flag checked, then AMNV is triggered and MT767 is generated. When the amendment is confirmed then ACON and AMND is triggered and details are propagated to LIDGUONL. When amendment is initiated without Beneficiary confirmation flag checked, amendment details are propagated to LIDGUONL. You can modify the and guarantee details. The system triggers AMND event on save and MT767 is generated.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-19 (Cont.) Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - New - Field Description

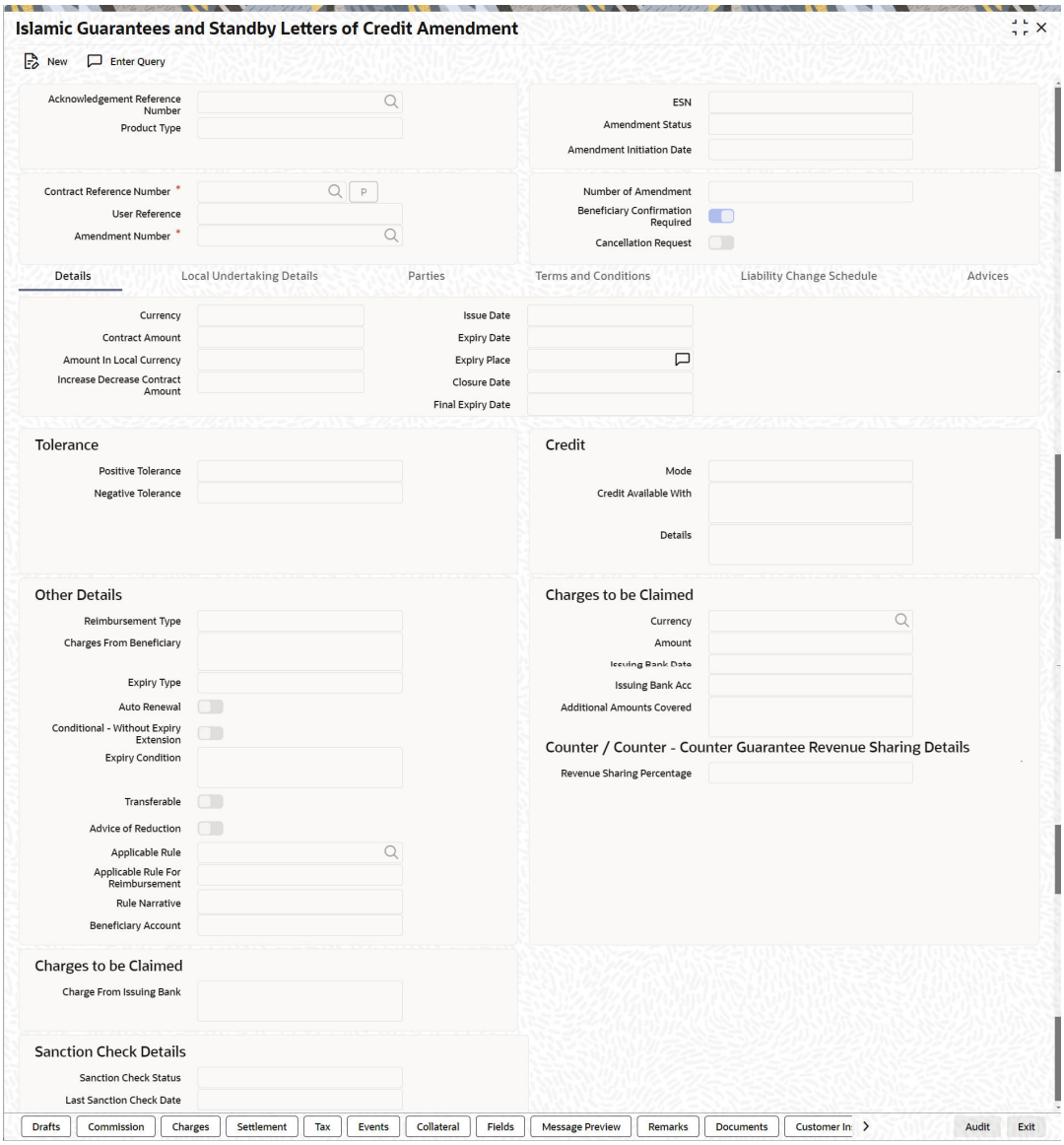
Field	Description
Cancellation Request	Check this box to request cancellation. If Cancel flag is checked, only cancel information shows a message on authorization of amendment. If Cancel flag is enabled, other field amendments are not considered and CANCEL event is triggered on amendment confirmation. The amendment of Islamic Guarantees and SBLC can be simulated only through gateway. The Guarantee Amendment Simulation does not have screen, so user cannot invoke Guarantee Amendment Simulation from the application front. All operations are supported for Guarantee Amendment Simulation is same as Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment.
User Reference	The system displays the contract reference number as user reference number.
Amendment Number	The system displays the amendment number.

4. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment** screen, click **Details**.

   Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - Details tab screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-17 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - Details tab



5. On the **Details** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer the following field description table:

Table 10-20 Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Currency	The system displays the currency.
Contract Amount	The system displays the contract amount.
Amount in Local Currency	When FCY amount is given in 'Contract Amount' field for Islamic Guarantee during Amendment, system converts in local currency and respective value is displayed in this screen. This field is mandatory for FCY contracts.
Increase Decrease Contract Amount	The system displays the contract amount increased or decreased.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-20 (Cont.) Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Issue Date	The system displays the issue date.
Expiry Place	Specify the expiry place in the text box and click Ok.
Expiry Date	Select the date on which the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC is scheduled to expire. On confirmation of guarantee amendment, revised Expiry Date is propagated to 'LIDGUONL'. System derives Claim Expiry date based on the new Expiry Date.
Closure Date	Specify the date LC is scheduled to be closed. You can modify this.
Final Expiry Date	Specify the final expiry date from the calendar.
Positive Tolerance	Specify the positive tolerance.
Negative Tolerance	Specify the negative tolerance.
Mode	Specify the mode from the drop-down list. The available options are: • Sight Payment • Acceptance • Deferred Payment • Mixed Payment • Negotiation
Credit Available With	Specify the credit available with in the text box and click Ok.
Details	Specify the details in the text box and click Ok.
Charges from Beneficiary	Specify the charge amount borne by the beneficiary. • Limited • Unlimited
Expiry Type	Select the expirytype from the drop-down list. The list displays the following options: • Fixed • Open • Conditional - With Expiry • Conditional - Without Expiry
Auto Renewal	This flag specifies if the Open ended guarantee is to be auto renewed on EOD.
Conditional - Without Expiry Extension	Specify whether for a Conditional - Without Expiry type Islamic guarantee, expiry date is to be extended.
Expiry Condition	Specify the details for conditional guarantee.
Transferable	Check this box to indicate that the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC is transferable.
Advice of Reduction	Check this box to send Advice of Reduction (MT 769) message. Advice of Reduction cannot be enabled if 'Beneficiary Confirmation Required' flag is enabled. You can amend 'Advice of Reduction' check box, after disabling Beneficiary Confirmation Required flag and choosing Contract Reference number from the option list and clicking 'P' (Populate) button. If 'Advice of Reduction' is enabled along with Beneficiary Confirmation flag then the system provides appropriate error message.
Applicable Rule	The system displays the applicable rule by default.
Applicable Rule for Reimbursement	Select the applicable rule for Reimbursement from the drop-down list. The available options are • URR Latest Version • Not URR
Rule Narrative	The system displays the rule narrative by default.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-20 (Cont.) Details - Field Description

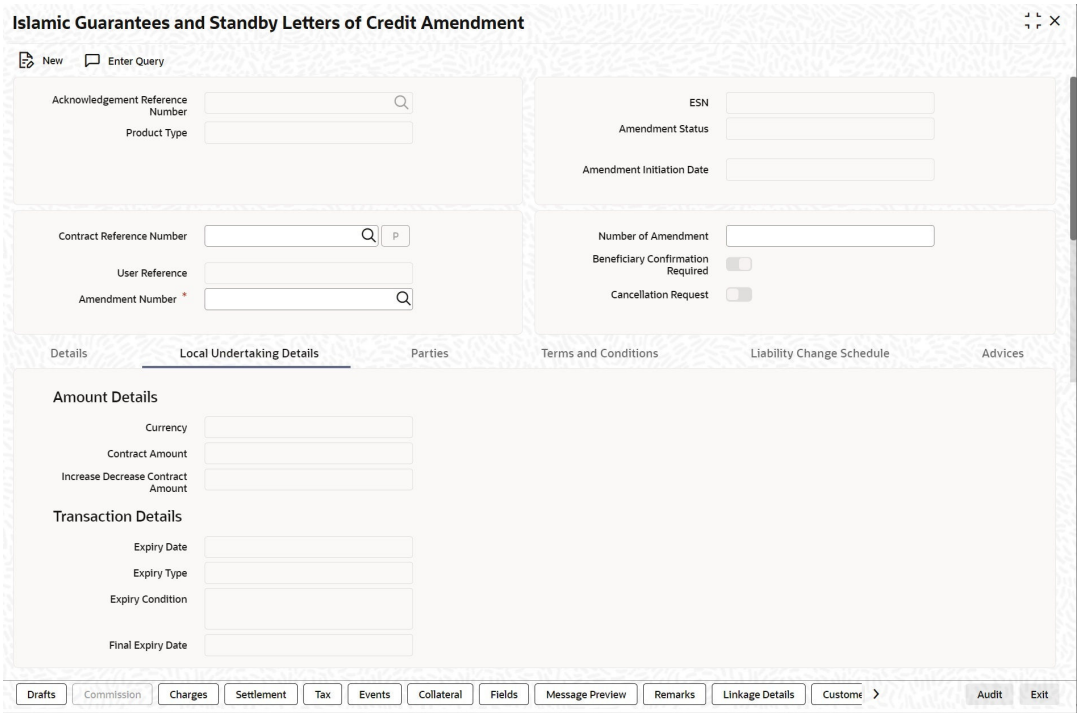
Field	Description
Beneficiary Account	Specify the account details of beneficiary. This field is read only.
Currency	Specify the currency in which the charges attributed to the issuing bank is expressed.
Amount	Specify the charge amount.
Issuing Bank Date	Specify the date of charge collection.
Issuing Bank Account	Specify the account from which charge should be collected.
Additional Amount Covered	Specify the additional amount covered. Details applicable to 'Advice of Reduction' will be propagated to 'Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Input' screen and it can be modified. STP of MT769 will initiate amendment or cancellation of Islamic Guarantees/Counter Guarantees in LIDGUAMD without Beneficiary Confirmation. • If value in tag 33B is equal to Guarantee amount cancellation will be initiated. • If value in tag 33B is lesser than Guarantee amount then amendment will be initiated.
Expiry Date	Select the expiry date of the local guarantee from the adjoining calendar.
Final Expiry Date	Select the final expiry date of the local guarantee from the calendar.
Sanction Check Status	The system displays the sanction check status.
Last Sanction Check Date	The system displays the last sanction check date.
Revenue Sharing Percentage	Specify the Revenue sharing percentage provided for the contract.

6. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment** screen, click the **Local Undertaking Details** tab.

   The **Local Undertaking Details** is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-18 Local Undertaking Details



For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-21 Local Undertaking Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Amount Details	Specify the Amount Details.
Currency	The system displays the currency details by default. The field is optional.
Contract Amount	Enter the contract amount. **Note** BIC code appears next to the Customer No only if the BIC code is mapped with the customer number. If the BIC Code is not mapped with that customer number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the Customer No in the option list. The field is optional.
Increase Decrease Contract Amount	The system defaults the customer name. The field is optional.
Transaction Details	Specify the Transaction Details:
Expiry Date	Select the expiry date from the calendar icon. The field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-21 (Cont.) Local Undertaking Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Expiry Type	Select the expiry type from the option list. The available options are: • Fixed • Open • Conditional - With Expiry • Conditional - Without Expiry The field is optional.
Expiry Condition	Specify the expiry condition and click Ok. The field is optional.
Final Expiry Date	Select final expiry date from the calendar. The field is optional.

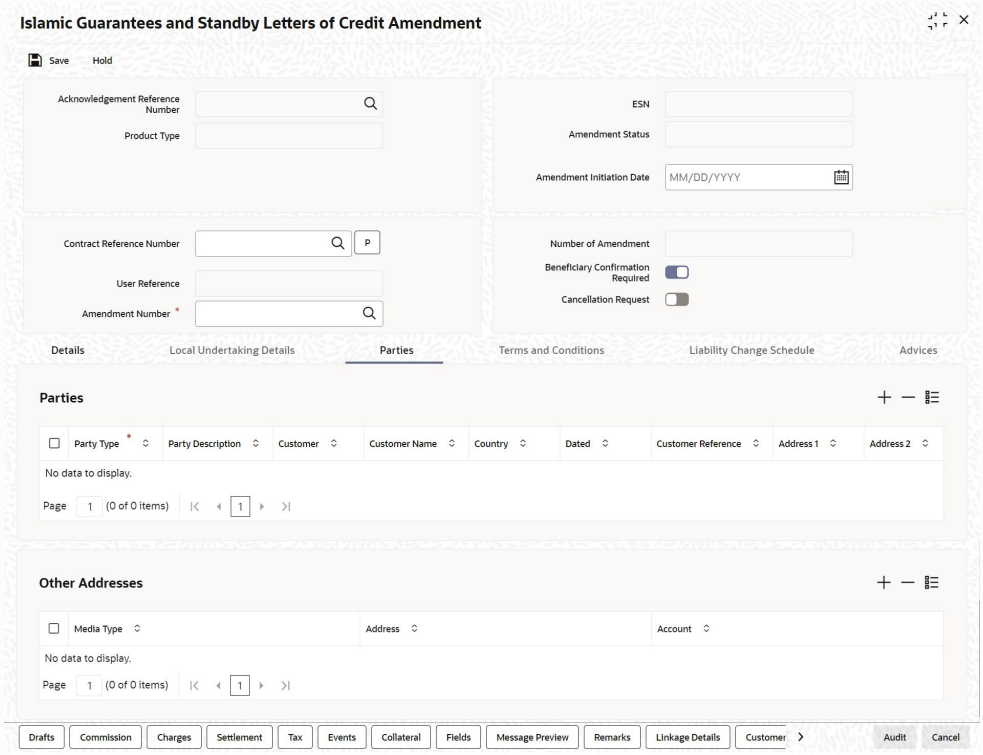
7. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment** screen, click **Parties**.

Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - Parties tab screen is displayed.

Note

Click on add icon to add required number of rows and click on minus icon to delete the rows.

Figure 10-19 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment - Parties



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. On the **Parties** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-22 Parties- Field Description

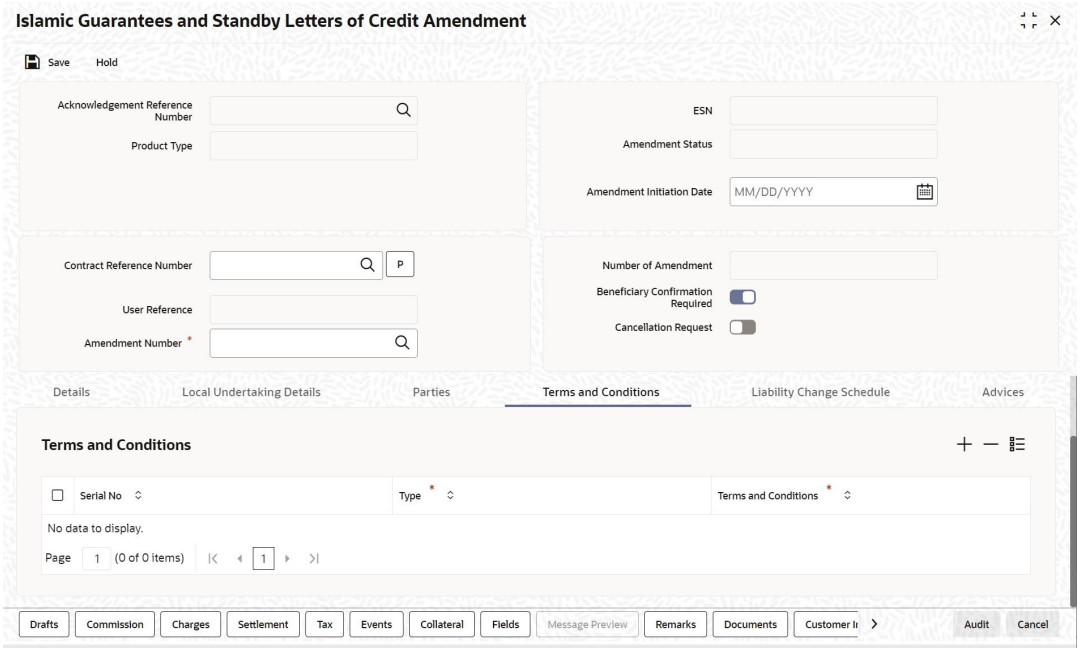
Field	Description
Party Type	The system defaults the party type.
Party Description	The system defaults the party description.
Customer	The system defaults the customer number. You can modify the customer number of the beneficiary. Specify the 'Customer for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the 'Customer No' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC code appears next to the 'Customer No' only if the BIC code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC code is not mapped with that customer number, then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer No' in the adjoining option list.
Customer Name	The system defaults the customer name.
Country	The system defaults the country of the customer.
Dated	The system defaults the date on which the party joined. However, you can modify it.
Customer Reference	The system defaults the customer reference number. However, you can modify it.
Address 1 to 4	The system defaults the address of the party.
Language	The system defaults the language in which advices are sent to the customer.
Issuer Bank	The system defaults the name of the issuer bank.
Media Type	The system defaults the media type. You can select a different medium from the adjoining option list.
Address	The system defaults the other address of the party. However, you can edit this field.
Account	The system defaults the account number. However, you can edit this field.

9. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby letters of credit Amendment** screen, click **Terms and conditions**.

   Islamic Guarantees and Standby letters of credit Amendment- Terms and conditions tab screen displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-20 Islamic Guarantees and Standby letters of credit Amendment- Terms and conditions



10. On the **Terms and Conditions** tab, specify the details as required.

    On the **Terms and Conditions** tab, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-23 Terms and Conditions - Field Description

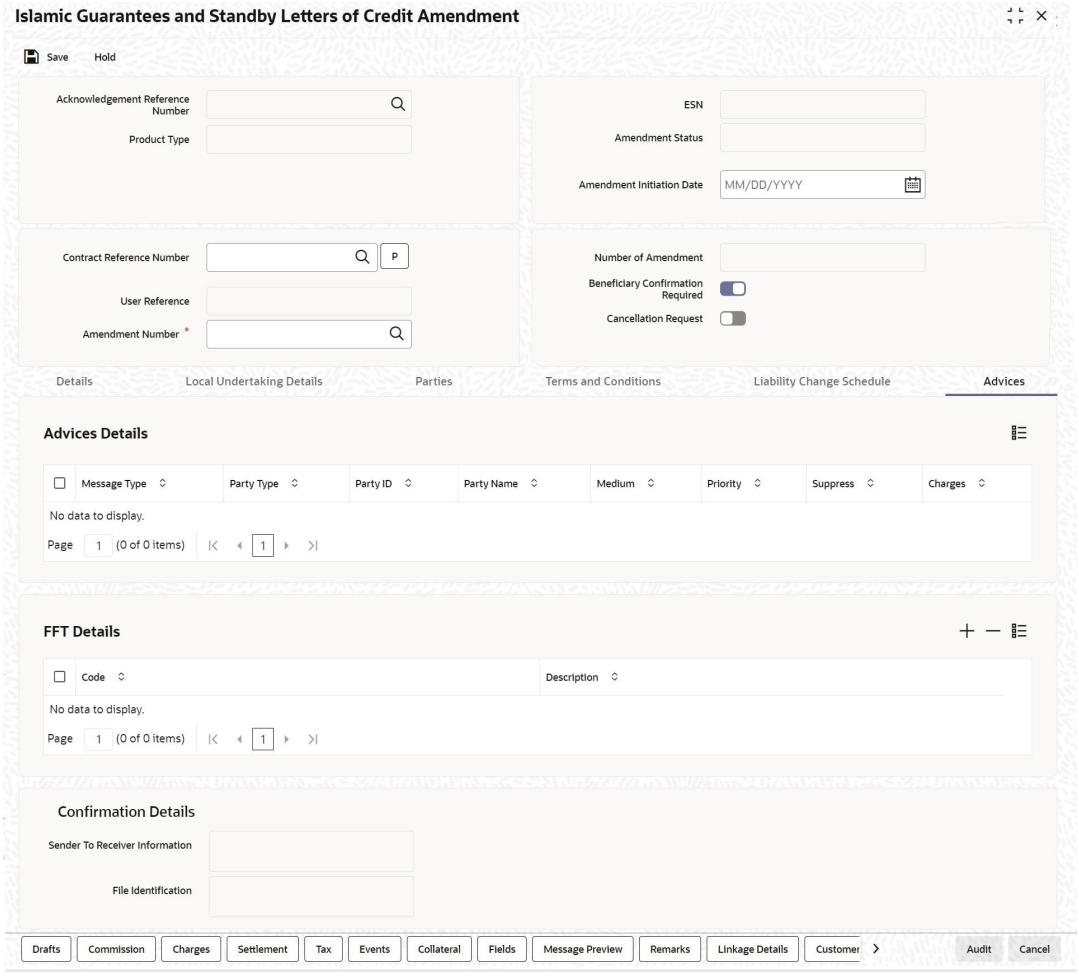
Field	Description
Serial No	Specify the serial number for terms and conditions. • Guarantee • Local Guarantee
Type	Select the guarantee type from the drop-down list. Available options are:
Terms and Conditions	Specify the terms and conditions. **Note** Terms and Conditions for Guarantee are mandatory.

11. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby letters of credit Amendment** screen, click **Advices**.

    Islamic Guarantees and Standby letters of credit Amendment - Advices tab screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-21 Islamic Guarantees and Standby letters of credit Amendment - Advices



(Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

12. On the **Advices** tab, specify the details as required.

For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-24 Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Message type	Check the box to view the advice details.
Party type	The system displays the party type for which the advice is generated.
Party Id	The system displays the party id for which the advice is generated.
Party Name	The system displays the name of the party for which the advice is generated.
Medium	The system displays the medium through which the advice is sent. The user can select a different medium from the list. If the medium is modified, the user must provide the new address in the 'Other Addresses' section, in the 'Parties' tab.
Priority	The system displays the priority of sending the advice. However, you can change the priority.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-24 (Cont.) Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Suppress	The system displays if the advice is suppressed or not. However, you can edit this field.
Charges	The system displays the charges involved. However, you can edit the charges.

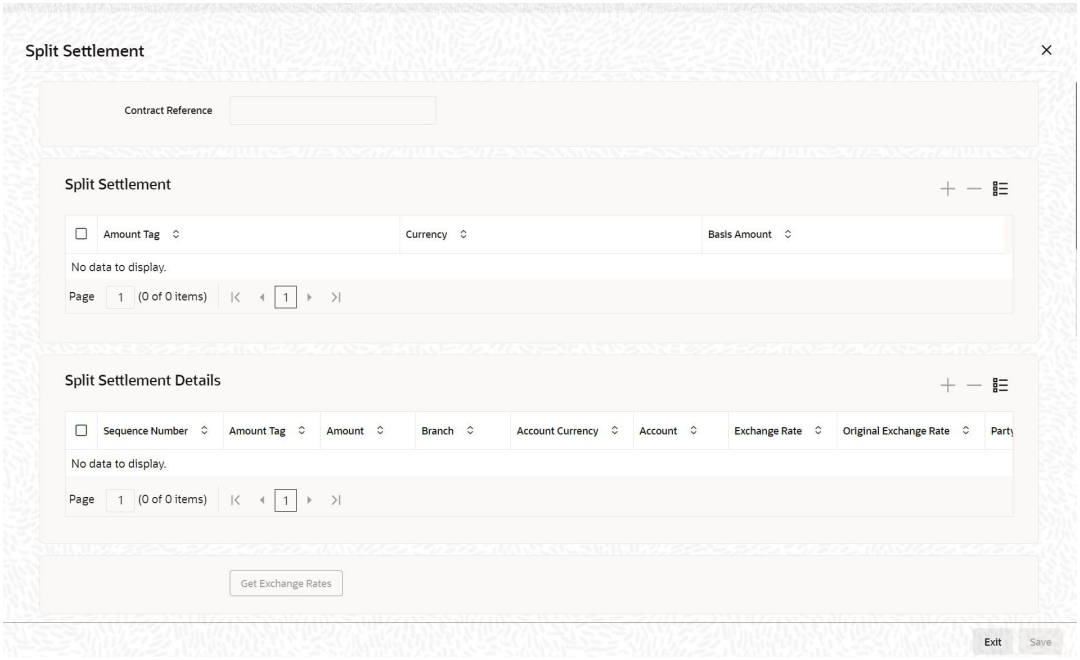
13. On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment Input** screen, click the **Split Settlement** button.

Split Settlement Master and details get populated for the Cash collateral based upon on the Guarantee Issuance collateral split details.User can modify the details.

For subsequent amendments split details get populated for the Cash collateral based upon on the consolidated collateral split details.User can modify the details.

The **Split Settlement** screen is displayed.

Figure 10-22 Split Settlement



For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 10-25 Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Specify Settlement Split Master	You can specify the details of the settlement split master in the following fields:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-25 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Basis Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag involved in the contract. The option list displays all valid amount tags maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. For example, on booking a new contract, the only tag allowed is PRINCIPAL. This is referred to as the basis amount tag. This field is optional.
Currency	The system displays the currency associated with the amount tag. This field is optional.
Basis Amount	The system displays the basis amount associated with the amount tag. For example, the amount involved in the contract would be displayed against the amount tag PRINCIPAL. The amount is in terms of the currency associated with the amount tag. You can use Get Exchange Rate button to get the original exchange rates defaulted in the screen. This field is optional.
Specify Settlement Split Details	For each split amount tag, you need to specify the following details: This field is optional.
Amount	Specify the amount for the split amount tag. This amount should not be greater than the amount of the corresponding basis amount tag. The split amount is in the currency of the basis amount tag. This is a mandatory field and you will not be allowed to save the details if you do not specify the amount. This field is optional, if percentage of proceeds is provided. Amount will be derived based upon the percentage.
Branch	Specify the branch. The list displays all valid values.This field is mandatory.
Account Currency	Specify the account currency. This field is mandatory.
Account	Specify the account. This list displays all the accounts. For Cash Collateral the account should be account of the counterparty. If the account selected is other than counterparty account, then system will throw error. This field is mandatory.
Loan/Finance Account	Check this box to indicate that the specified account should be the loan account. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	Specify the exchange rate that must be used for the currency conversion. Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The base or the actual exchange rate between the contract currency and collateral currency gets displayed here.
Customer	Select the customer number from the list.
Percentage of Proceeds	Specify the percentage of proceeds
Negotiated Rate	Specify the negotiated cost rate that should be used for foreign currency transactions between the treasury and the branch. You need to specify the rate only when the currencies involved in the transaction are different. Otherwise, it will be a normal transaction. The system will display an override message if the negotiated rate is not within the exchange rate variance maintained at the product. This field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-25 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Negotiated Reference	Specify the reference number that should be used for negotiation of cost rate, in foreign currency transaction. If you have specified the negotiated cost rate, then you need to specify the negotiated reference number also. **Note** Oracle Banking Trade Finance books then online revaluation entries based on the difference in exchange rate between the negotiated cost rate and transaction rate. This field is optional.

- FFT Details
  The user can select a message from the 'Advices Details' section and associate a code and a description to it.

10.3.1.1 FFT Details

The user can select a message from the 'Advices Details' section and associate a code and a description to it.

The user can select a message from the 'Advices Details' section and associate a code and a description to it.

Code

The user can select the appropriate code from the adjoining option list.

Description

The system displays the description of the selected code. However, you can modify this description.

Note

For more details on the buttons in Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Amendment screen, refer the chapter titled 'Amending Details of an Islamic LC' in this user manual.

The following table provides the list of SWIFT messages and the fields of SWIFT messages that utilizes the information provided in this screen:

Table 10-26 Swift Messages

Field in Oracle Banking trade Finance	SWIFT Message	Field of the SWIFT Message
Operation Code	MT767	22A
Purpose of Guarantee	MT767	22A
Cancellation Request	MT767	23S
Contract Reference Number	MT767,MT775	20

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-26 (Cont.) Swift Messages

Field in Oracle Banking trade Finance	SWIFT Message	Field of the SWIFT Message
Number of Amendment	MT767,MT775,M T787	26E
Amendment Initiation Date	MT767	30
Party Id – ISB	MT767,MT775	52a
Increase Decrease Contract Amount	MT767	32B,33B
Validity Type	MT767	23B
Expiry Date	MT767	31E
Expiry Condition	MT767	35L
Party Id – BEN	MT767	59
Documents – Description	MT767	45C
Local Guarantee Details- Expiry Date	MT767	31E - Sequence C
Amendment Status	MT787	23R

Note

The above details are applicable only if SWIFT 2019 is enabled.

- On the **Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment Input** screen, click the **Split Settlement** button.

  Split Settlement Master and details get populated for the Cash collateral based upon on the Guarantee Issuance collateral split details.User can modify the details.
  For subsequent amendments split details get populated for the Cash collateral based upon on the consolidated collateral split details.User can modify the details.

  Split Settlement Master and Split Settlement Details get populated for the Charge and Commmission component based upon LC Issuance split details if split details available for the charges and commission component during Guarantee Issuance or Advise.

  If Split details is not available for Issuance or Advice then Split Settlement Master and Split Settlement Details get populated for the Charges and Commmission component if split flag is checked in the respective subsystems. System will default the split settlement details with two splits for a charge/commission component one for counterparty and another one for Other party.System will default split amount 50% of charge/commission component between parties.User can modify the amount and and percentage will be derived based on modified amount. If AR-AP is unchecked for a component then Split account will default with settlement instructions of Customer and Split Account can be modified to another valid account of the Customer.If AR-AP is checked then Split account will be defaulted with AR-AP GL and Split account cannot be modified.Maximum of two splits is allowed for Charges and Commission components.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-27 Party Type Derivation for Charges and Commission

Category	Counter Party	Other Party	Other Party Resolution
Guarantee/SBLC Amendment	APP	BEN/CIB/LIB/AB K	If Beneficiary is a bank customer Else CIB if exists Else LIB if exists Else Advising Bank
Guarantee/SBLC Amendment	BEN	APP/ISB	If Applicant is a bank customer else Issuing bank

The **Split Settlement** screen is displayed.
For more information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 10-28 Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Specify Settlement Split Master	You can specify the details of the settlement split master in the following fields:
Basis Amount Tag	Specify the amount tag involved in the contract. The option list displays all valid amount tags maintained in the system. You can choose the appropriate one. For example, on booking a new contract, the only tag allowed is PRINCIPAL. This is referred to as the basis amount tag. This field is optional.
Currency	The system displays the currency associated with the amount tag. This field is optional.
Basis Amount	The system displays the basis amount associated with the amount tag. For example, the amount involved in the contract would be displayed against the amount tag PRINCIPAL. The amount is in terms of the currency associated with the amount tag. You can use Get Exchange Rate button to get the original exchange rates defaulted in the screen. This field is optional.
Specify Settlement Split Details	For each split amount tag, you need to specify the following details: This field is optional.
Amount	Specify the amount for the split amount tag. This amount should not be greater than the amount of the corresponding basis amount tag. The split amount is in the currency of the basis amount tag. This is a mandatory field and you will not be allowed to save the details if you do not specify the amount. This field is optional, if percentage of proceeds is provided. Amount will be derived based upon the percentage.
Branch	Specify the branch. The list displays all valid values.This field is mandatory.
Account Currency	Specify the account currency. This field is mandatory.
Account	Specify the account. This list displays all the accounts. For Cash Collateral the account should be account of the counterparty. If the account selected is other than counterparty account, then system will throw error. This field is mandatory.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-28 (Cont.) Split Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Loan/Finance Account	Check this box to indicate that the specified account should be the loan account. This field is optional.
Exchange Rate	Specify the exchange rate that must be used for the currency conversion. Specify the destination to which the goods transacted under the LC should be sent by selecting the appropriate option from the list of values. This field is optional.
Original Exchange Rate	The base or the actual exchange rate between the contract currency and collateral currency gets displayed here.
Party Type	System defaults this field for Charges and Commission components if split flag is checked in respective components.This field is applicable only for charges and commission components.
AR-AP Tracking	System defaults this field for charges and commission components based upon the AR-AP tracking selection in charges and commission component when split flag is checked in respective components. This field is applicable only for Charges and Commission components.
Customer	Select the customer number from the list.
Percentage of Proceeds	Specify the percentage of proceeds.
Negotiated Rate	Specify the negotiated cost rate that should be used for foreign currency transactions between the treasury and the branch. You need to specify the rate only when the currencies involved in the transaction are different. Otherwise, it will be a normal transaction. The system will display an override message if the negotiated rate is not within the exchange rate variance maintained at the product. This field is optional.
Negotiated Reference	Specify the reference number that should be used for negotiation of cost rate, in foreign currency transaction. If you have specified the negotiated cost rate, then you need to specify the negotiated reference number also. **Note** Oracle Banking Trade Finance books then online revaluation entries based on the difference in exchange rate between the negotiated cost rate and transaction rate. This field is optional.

10.3.2 View Guarantees and SBLC Amendment Details

This topic provides the systematic instruction to view guarantees and SBLC amendment details.

You can view Islamic Guarantees and SBLC amendment details through Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment Summary screen.

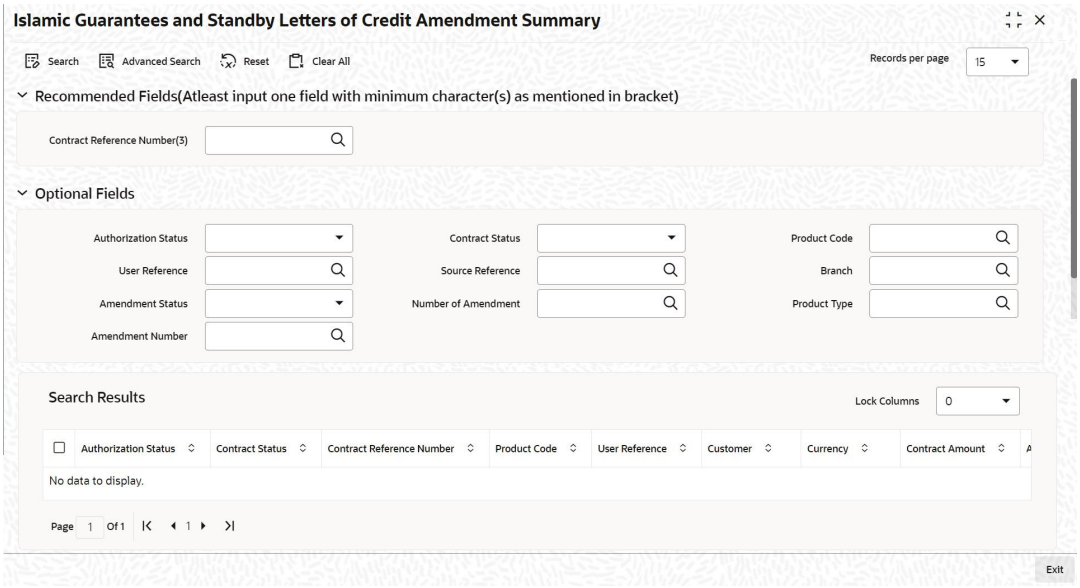
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISGUAMD** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment Summary screen is

Figure 10-23 Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment



2. Islamic Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment screen, specify the details as required. You can base your queries on any or all of the following parameters and fetch records:

   The following are recommended fields:

   - Contract Reference Number
   - Branch

   The following are the optional fields:

   - Authorization Status
   - Contract Status
   - Product Code
   - Amendment Status
     Number of Amendment

   Select any or all of the above parameters for a query and click ‘Search’ button. The system displays the following records meeting the selected criteria:

   - Authorization Status
   - Contract Status
   - Contract Reference Number
   - Product Code
   - User Reference
   - Customer
   - Currency
   - Contract Amount

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Issue Date
- Effective Date
- Expiry Date
- Closure Date
- Customer Type
- Customer Reference
- Dated
- Max Amount
- Liability Amount
- Source Reference
- Branch
- Amendment Status
- Number of Amendment
- Amount In Local Currency

10.4 Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim

This section contains the following topics:

1. Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim
2. View Islamic Guarantee Claim Details

- Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim.
- View Islamic Guarantee Claim Details
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to view islamic guarantee claim details.

10.4.1 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging

This topic provides the systematic instruction to Lodging Islamic Guarantee Claim.

User can lodge claim on guarantee contract through Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging screen.

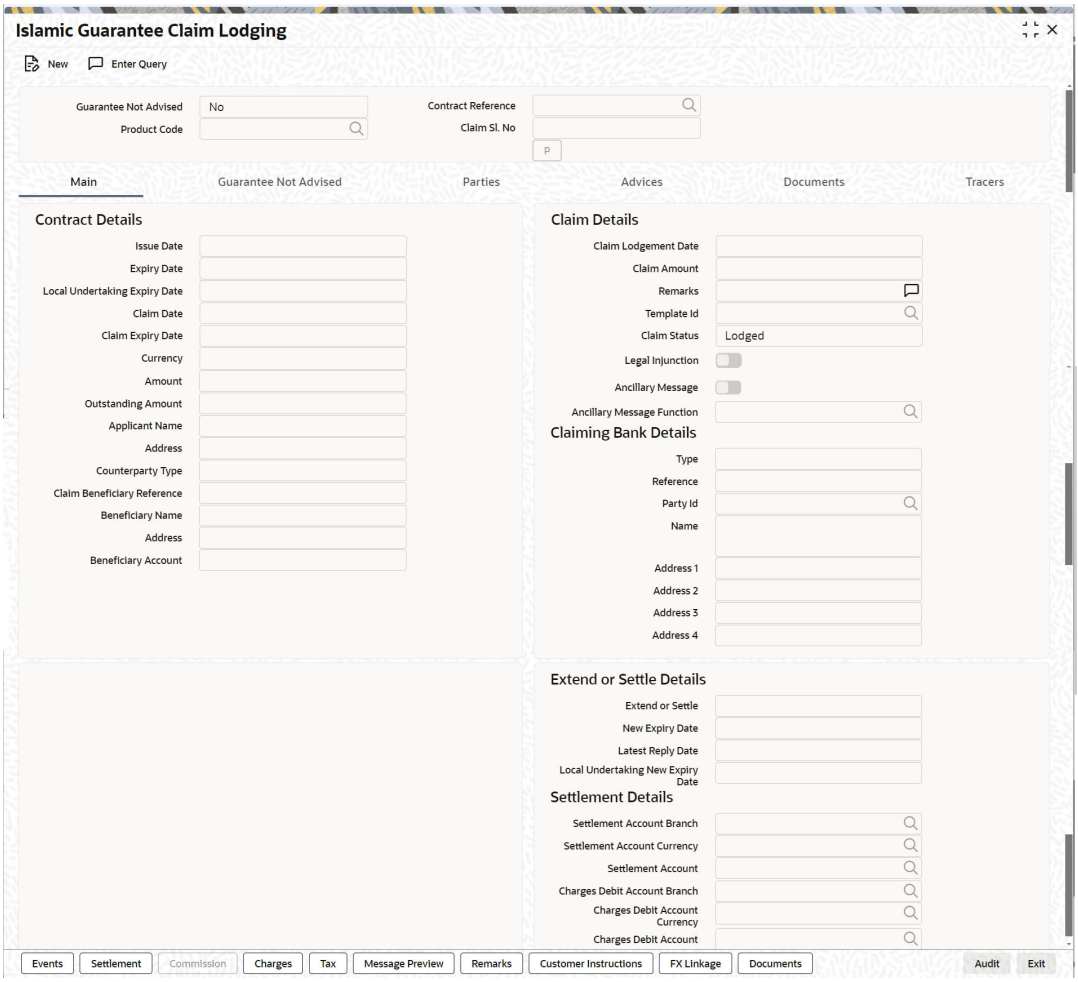
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDGCLM** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-24 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging



2. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 10-29 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Field Description

Fields	Description
Guarantee Not Advised	Select the option based on the nature of the Guarantee for which Claim has to be lodged. For Guarantee Not Advised contracts, choose the option as **Yes**.
Contract Reference	Select the guarantee contract reference number from the option list for Guarantee Advised by Bank. Contract reference number will be generated by system if Guarantee Not Advised flag is selected as **Yes**.
Product Code	Select Guarantee Not Advised products from the option list. This will list Guarantee Not Advised products when Guarantee Not Advised Flag is selected as **Yes**.
Claim Sl. No	System will generate Claim serial Number.
Issue Date	Displays the date on which the guarantee is issued.
Expiry Date	Displays the date of expiry of the guarantee.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-29 (Cont.) Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Field Description

Fields	Description
Local Undertaking Expiry Date	Displays the expiry date of the local undertaking.
Claim Date	Displays the date for claiming the guarantee.
Claim Expiry Date	Displays the end date for settling the claim.
Currency	Displays the currency of the guarantee.
Amount	Displays the amount of the guarantee.
Outstanding Guarantee Amount	Displays the outstanding amount of the guarantee.
Counterparty Name	Displays the name of the counterparty.
Address	Displays the address of the counterparty.
Counterparty Type	Displays the party type of the counterparty
Counterparty Reference	Displays the reference Number of the counterparty.
Beneficiary Name	Displays the name of the beneficiary
Address	Displays the address of the beneficiary
Beneficiary Account	Specify the account details of beneficiary This field is read only.
Claim Lodgement Date	Select the date on which claim is lodged. Claims have to be lodged on or before Guarantee Claim Date. If claims are lodged after the Guarantee Claim date, system displays a configurable override error message.
Claim Date	The claim date should not be greater than the expiry date and the current business date of the system. **Note**: If multiple claims are lodged against a contract and the claim date is same for all claims, then the system displays an override message.
Claim Amount	Specify the amount of the claim. The claim amount should not be greater than the guarantee amount and the outstanding guarantee amount.
Claim Status	The status of the claim is displayed here. The statuses are as follows: **Lodged on claim lodgement** **Injunction Received' on receipt of Legal Injunction** **Rejected on Reject** **Settled on settlement**
Legal Injunction	Check this box to indicate that there is a legal injunction received against the claim, to be captured during Claim Amendment. **Note**: System triggers GCAM event and Claim Status is updated as **Injunction Received**.
Remarks	Specify remarks, if any.
Template Id	Select the template ID from the adjoining option list.Template ID is applicable only when the party type is applicant bank or issuing bank. **Note**: The claim message is generated only if the template is selected.
Claiming Bank Details	Specify Claiming Bank Details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-29 (Cont.) Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Field Description

Fields	Description
Type	Select the Claiming Bank Party type. Allowed values are: a. Counter Guarantee Issuing Bank b. Local Guarantee Issuing Bank c. Advice Through Bank d. Advising Bank e. Others
Reference	Enter the Claiming Bank Reference, it cannot exceed 16 characters. It will be sent the outgoing message.
Party Id	Select the Claiming Bank Party ID from LOV. Based on the selected Party Id, other fields like Name, Address1, Address2, Address3 and Address4 will be populated.
Name	Claiming Bank Party Name will be defaulted based on Party Id.
Address 1	Claiming Bank Party Address 1 will be defaulted based on Party Id.
Address 2	Claiming Bank Party Address 2 will be defaulted based on Party Id.
Address 3	Claiming Bank Party Address 3 will be defaulted based on Party Id.
Address 4	Claiming Bank Party Address 4 will be defaulted based on Party Id.
Extend or Settle	Select the option from the drop-down list. The list displays the following options: • **Query to Extend or Settle** • **Extension** • **Settle Only** During claim amendment from Extend or Settle to Extension system will initiate Guarantee amendment without beneficiary confirmation and increase Expiry date. GCEX event will be triggered. This event will be available to view from Islamic Guarantee online Screen(LIDGUONL) and Islamic Claim lodgement screen(LIDGCLM). • When the GCEX event is triggered, the Number of amendment sequences in LCDGUAMD will be incremented and captured in the related debit advice & MT767, respectively. • The number of amendments triggered by GCEX will not be available in LCDGUAMD for query, as they are initiated from LCDGCLM. Due to this, for any succeeding amendment to be processed in LCDGUAMD, the equation of sequence order will not match between the Amendment Number & Number of amendments.
New Expiry Date	Specify the new expiry date. The New Expiry date is mandatory when 'Query to Extend or Settle' option is selected.
Latest Reply Date	Specify the latest reply date. The Latest Reply date is mandatory when 'Query to Extend or Settle option is selected.
Local Undertaking New Expiry Date	Specify the new expiry date for the local undertaking.
Settlement Account Branch	The system displays the settlement account branch on selection of the debit account number.
Settlement Account Currency	The system displays the settlement account currency on selection of the debit account number.
Settlement Account	The system displays the settlement account details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

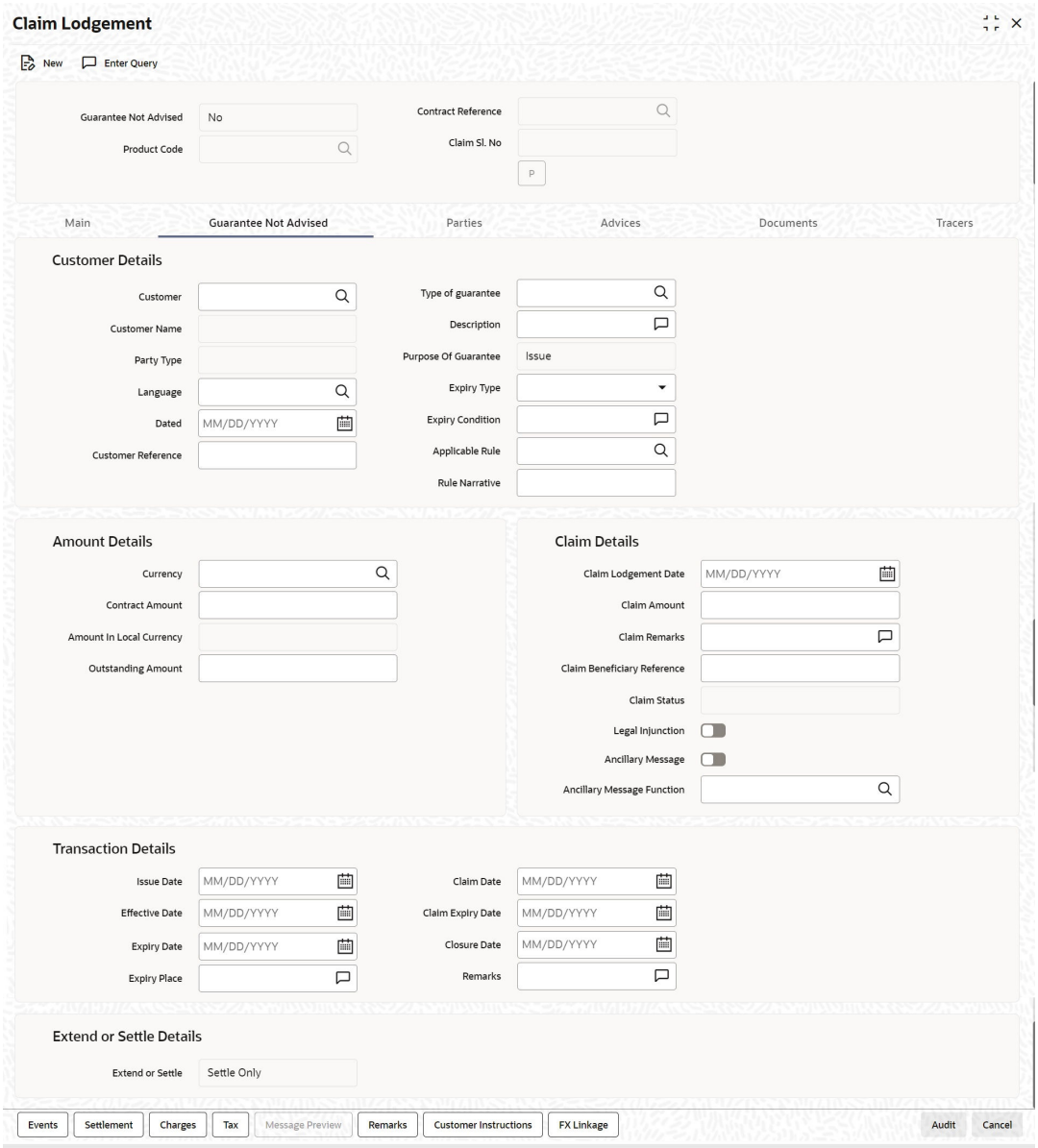
Table 10-29 (Cont.) Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Field Description

Fields	Description
Charges Debit Account Branch	The system displays the charges debit account branch on selection of the charges debit account number.
Charges Debit Account Currency	The system displays the charges debit account currency on selection of the charges debit account number.
Charges Debit Account	The system displays the charge debit account details.

3. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click the **Guarantee Not Advised** tab.

   The **Guarantee Not Advised** tab is displayed.

Figure 10-25 Guarantee Not Advised



4. Specify the **Guarantee Not Advised** Details.

   For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-30 Guarantee Not Advised - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer	List of values with list of all valid customers.
Customer Name	System will default Customer Name based on Customer
Party Type	System will default BEN and will be read only.
Language	System will default user language and the same can be modified. List of values with list of languages will be provided.
Dated	Specify the Customer reference date.
Customer Reference	Specify the Customer reference number.
Type of Guarantee	LOV with list of guarantee types : a. APAY- Advance Payment Guaranteeb. b. BILL- Bill of Lading Guaranteec. c. CUST- Customs Guaranteed. d. DPAY- Direct pay Guaranteee. e. INSU- Insurance Guaranteef. f. JUDI- Judicial Guaranteeg. g. LEAS- Lease Guaranteeh. h. OTHR- Other Guaranteei. i. PAYM- Payment Guaranteej. j. PERF- Performance Guaranteek. k. RETN- Retention Guaranteel. l. SHIP- Shipping Guaranteem. m. TEND- Tender Guaranteen. n. WARR- Warranty/Maintenance
Description	System will default Guarantee type description and the same can be modified.
Purpose of Guarantee	System will default Issue and will be read only.
Expiry Type	Expiry type will have options as Fixed, Open and Conditional -With Expiry and Conditional - Without Expiry.
Expiry Condition	Specify the expiry condition, if Expiry type is Conditional -With Expiry and Conditional - Without Expiry..
Applicable Rule	System will default from product maintenance and the same can be modified. LOV with list of Applicable Rules namely ISPR, NONE, OTHR, UCPR, URDG will be provided.
Rule Narrative	This field is applicable if **Applicable Rule** is OTHR
Amount Details	
Currency	System will default local currency and the same can be modified. List of values provided with list of valid currencies.
Contract Amount	Specify the contract amount. This field is mandatory.
Amount in Local Currency	System will default local currency equivalent and will be read only.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-30 (Cont.) Guarantee Not Advised - Field Description

Field	Description
Outstanding Amount	User to provide manually and will be mandatory. Should not be greater than contract amount. Outstanding amount will be reduced on claim settlement.
Claim Lodgement Date	Specify the claim lodgement date using the calendar icon. This field is mandatory.
Claim Amount	Specify the amount of the claim. The claim amount should be less than or equal to outstanding amount and will be mandatory.
Claim Remarks	Specify remarks, if any.
Claim Beneficiary Reference	Specify the Claim Beneficiary Reference details.
Claim Status	System will default claim status as per existing functionality. The statuses are as follows: • **Lodged on claim lodgement** • **Reject on claim Reject** • **Settled on claim settlement** • **Injunction Received on providing Legal Injunction**
Legal Injunction	Select this check box during claim amendment.
Ancillary Message	Check Box to support ancillary message generation during claim amendment
Ancillary Message Function	List of values with list of ancillary message function and description. To be provided when ancillary message is enabled. a. CLSVCLOS- Closing of a service call by Trade Operations b. CLSVOPEN- Opening of a service call by Trade Operations c. FRAUDMSG- Advice of a fraud attempt d. GENINFAD- General information advice e. OTHERFNC- Other request f. REIMBURS- Request related to a reimbursement g. REQFINAN- Financing request h. REXTMATU- Request to extend the maturity date i. TRANSFER- Transfer of a undertaking
Issue Date	Specify the issue date. The issue date should be back dated.
Effective Date	Specify the effective date. The effective date should be back dated.
Expiry Date	Specify the expiry date. The expiry date should be should be greater than issue date.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

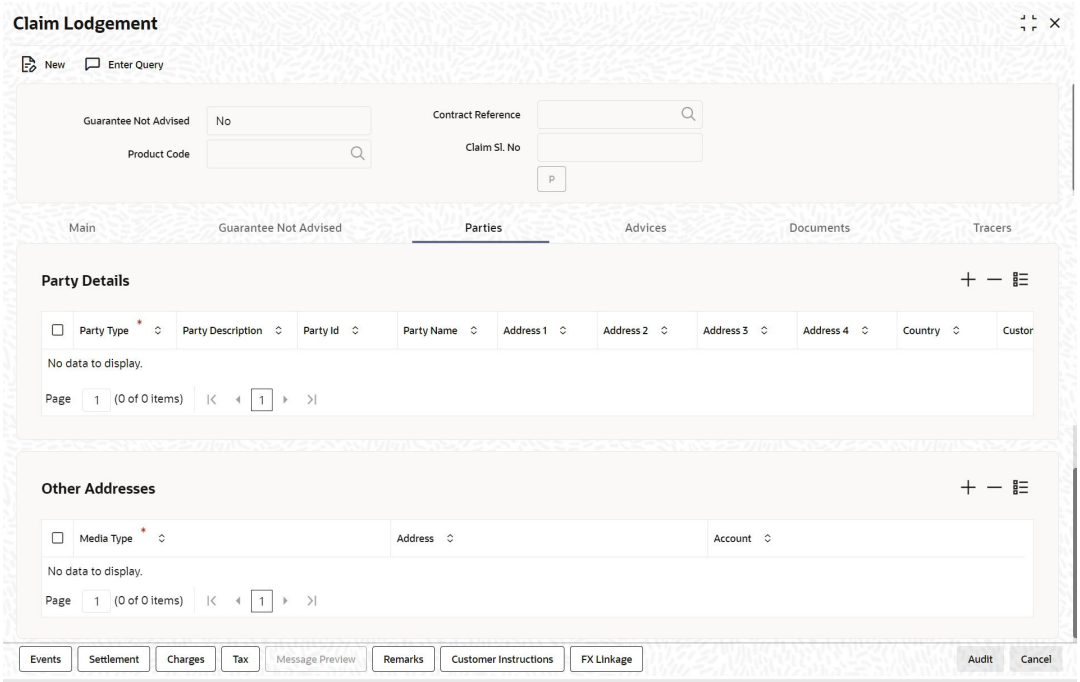
Table 10-30 (Cont.) Guarantee Not Advised - Field Description

Field	Description
Claim Date	Specify the claim date.
Closure Date	Specify the closure date.
Remarks	Specify remarks, if any.
Extend or Settle	System will default Settle only and will be read only. Extension is not supported.

5. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click the **Parties** tab.

   The **Parties** tab is displayed.

Figure 10-26 Parties



6. Specify the **Parties** details.

   For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 10-31 Parties - Field Description

Field	Description
Party Type	Specify the party type (beneficiary, applicant, advising bank, issuing bank). The option list displays all party types available for the LC. Select the appropriate party type from the list. The field is mandatory.
Party Description	Specify the party description for the party type here. The field is optional.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-31 (Cont.) Parties - Field Description

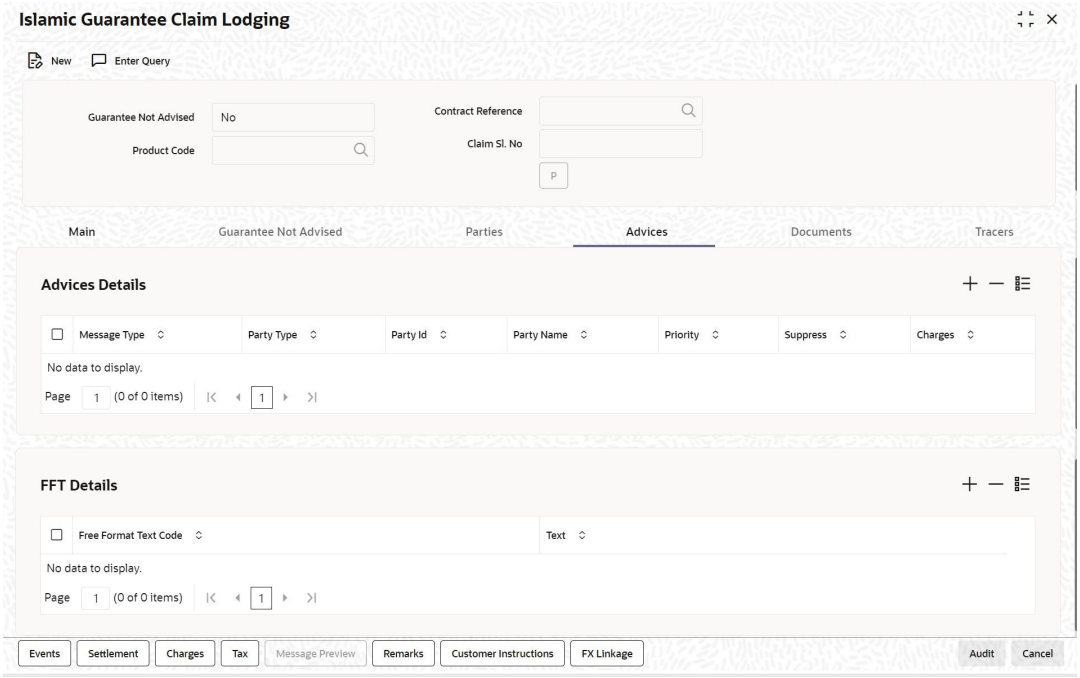
Field	Description
Party ID	Specify a Party ID for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the Customer No from the List of Values Party Id. The field is optional.
Party Name	Specify the name of the Customer. The party name can be 150 characters in length. The field is optional.
Address 1 to 4	Specify the address of the customer who has initiated the transaction. The field is optional.
Country	Specify the country of the customer. The field is optional.
Customer Reference	Specify the sender's reference number. Input to this field will be mandatory for the party type ISB. The field is optional.
Dated	Specify the date of transaction initiation. The field is optional.
Language	Specify the language in which advices should be sent to the customer. The field is optional.
Issuer Bank	Select this option to indicate that the issuer is a bank. The field is optional.
Other Addresses	Provide the other address details.
Media Type	Select the Media Type from the option list. The field is mandatory.
Address	This field indicates the party's mail address. The field is optional.
Account	Specify the account number.

7. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Advices**.

   Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with **Advices** tab details is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-27 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging



8. On the **Advices** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

Table 10-32 Advices - Field Description

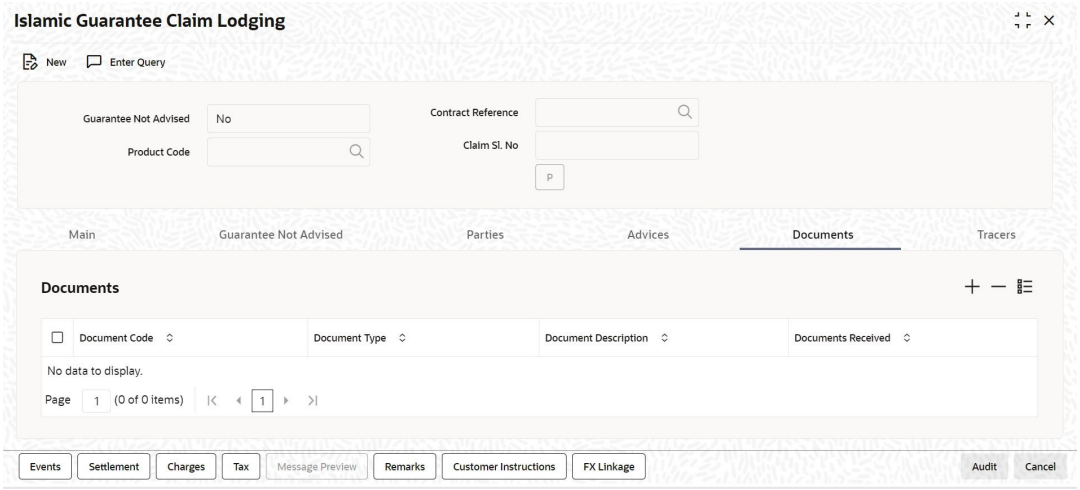
Field	Description
Message Type	The system displays the message type of the advice generated.
Party Type	The system displays the party type for which the message is generated.
Party Id	The system displays the party ID for which the message is generated.
Party Name	The system displays the name of the party for which the advice is generated.
Medium	Select the medium through which the message has to be sent from the adjoining option list.
Priority	Select the priority of sending message from the adjoining drop-down list.
Suppress	Check this box to suppress the message.
Charges	The system displays the charges configured.
Free Format Text Code	Select the free format text code from the adjoining option list.
Text	The system displays a brief description on free format text.

9. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Documents**.

   Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with **Documents** is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-28 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Documents



10. On the **Documents** tab, specify the details as required.

    For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

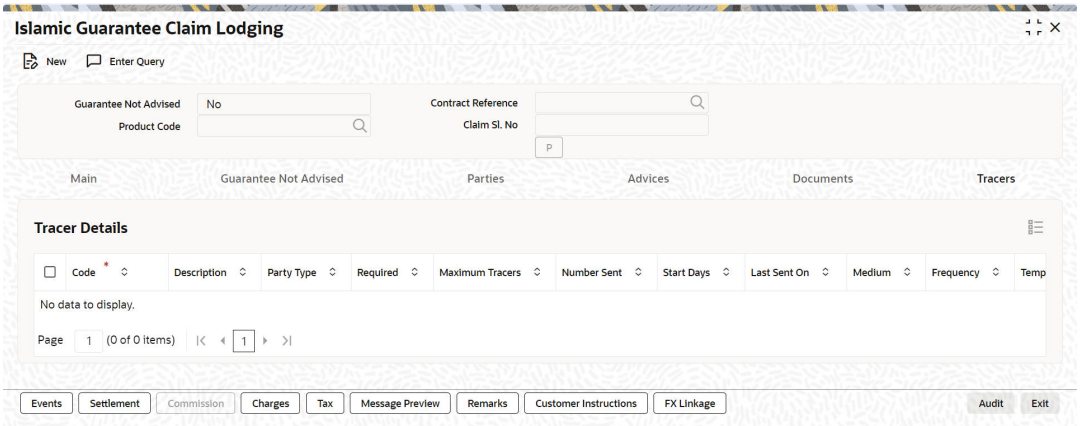
Table 10-33 Documents - Field Description

Field	Description
Document Code	The code of the document captured during guarantee issuance is defaulted here.
Document Type	The type of document captured during guarantee issuance is defaulted here.
Document Description	The description of the document is defaulted here.
Documents Received	Check this box to indicate that documents are received.

11. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Tracers** tab.

    The **Tracer Details** is displayed.

Figure 10-29 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Tracers



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

> **Note**
>
> Tracers are reminders that can be sent to various parties involved in a claim-New tracer code Guarantee claim tracer (GUA_CLM_TRACER) introduced to support tracer generation for claims lodged

12. On the **Tracer** tab, specify the fields, and click **Ok**.

    By default, you can view the tracers specified for an Islamic LC.

    For information on fields, refer the field description table below:

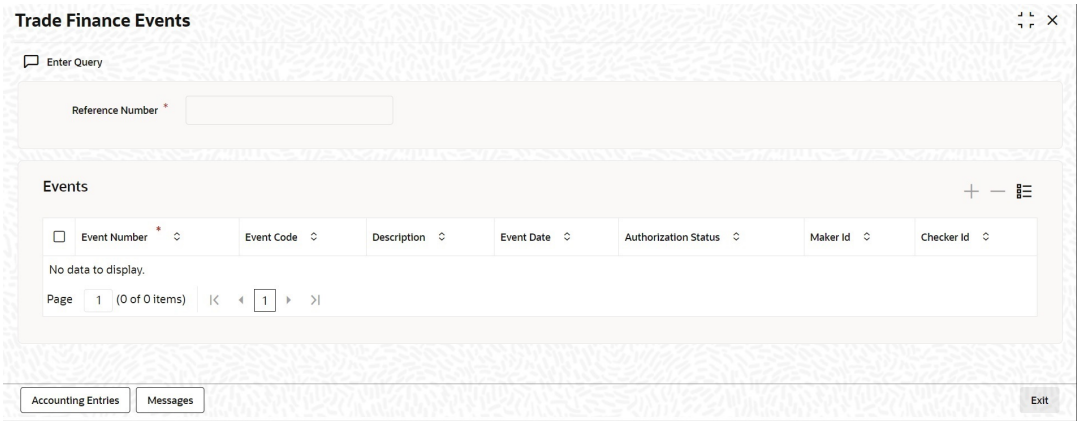
Table 10-34 Tracers - Field Description

Field	Description
Tracer details	Tracer details The tracers, specified for the product to which you have linked the Islamic Guarantee/SBLC, defaults to this screen. The following details will be displayed: • Code • Description • Party Type • Required • Maximum Tracers • Number Sent • Start Days • Last Sent On • Medium • Frequency • Template Id

13. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Events**.

    Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with **Events** tab is displayed.

Figure 10-30 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Events



14. On the **Events** tab, view the details as required.

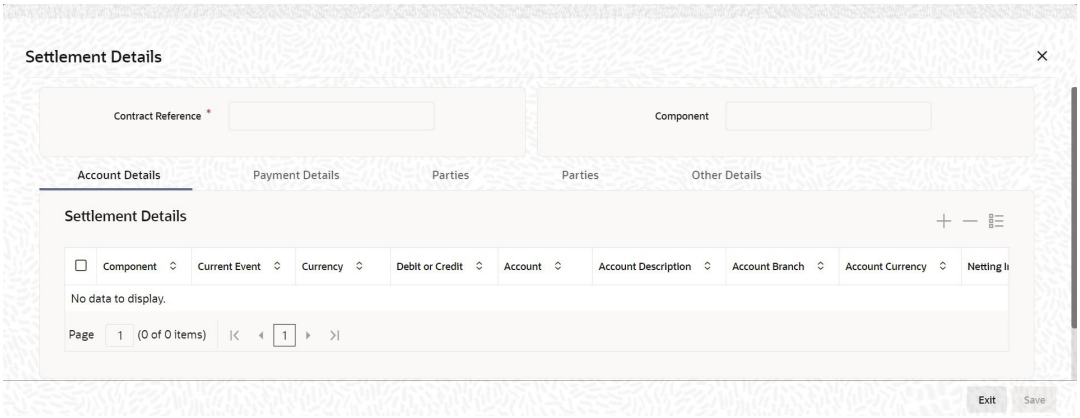
    The system displays the events, accounting entries and advices here.

15. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Settlement**.

    Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with **Settlement tab** is details.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-31 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Settlements



Current Event:

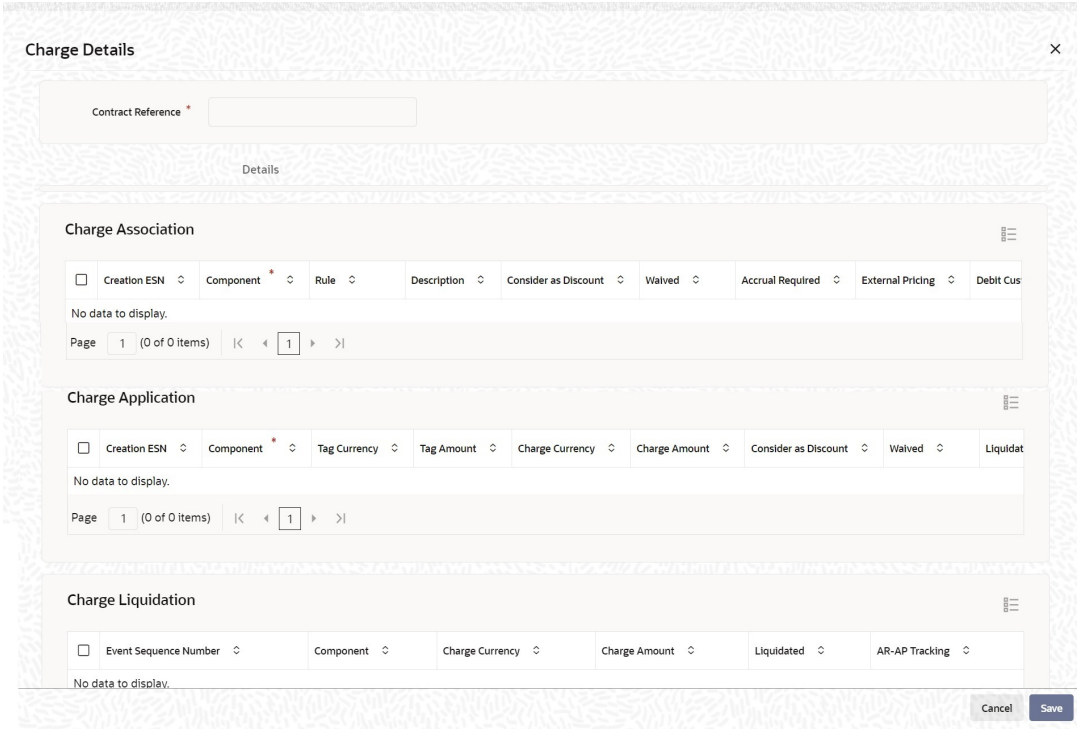
Current event of settlements will be checked for the amount tags pertaining to the current event and will be unchecked for the amount tags not pertaining to the current event.

> **Note**
>
> The system displays the settlement information for charges here.

16. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Charges**.

Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with **Charges**

Figure 10-32 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Charges



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

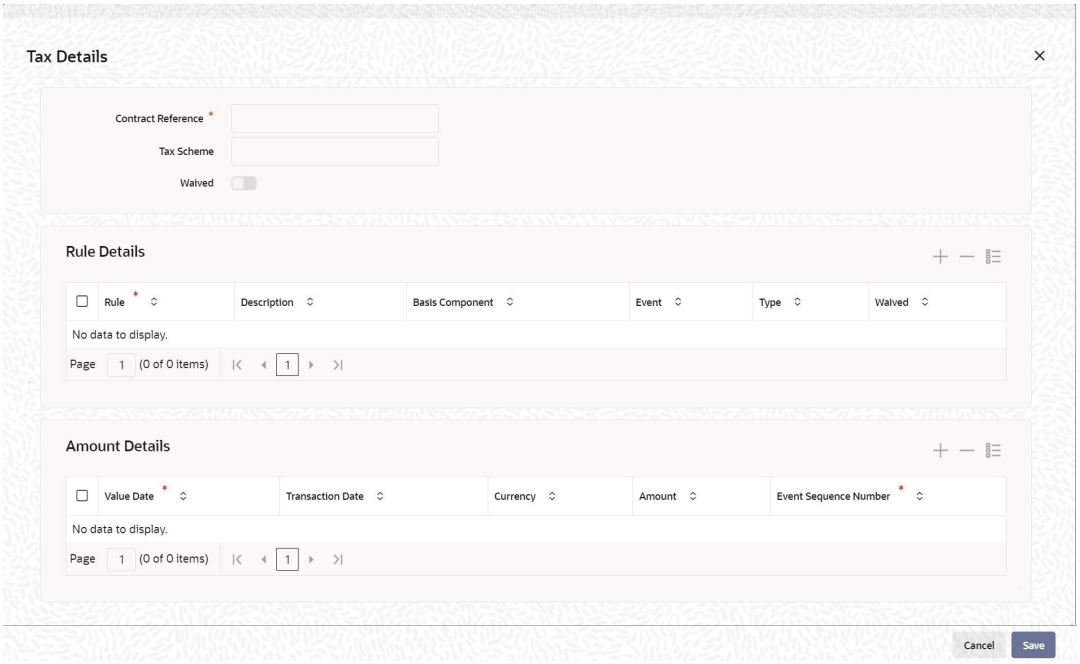
> **Note**
>
> The system displays the charges configured for the event at product definition here.

For more details on the Charges Details screen, refer section ‘Contract Charge Details’ in Charges and Fees User Guide under Modularity.

17. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Tax**.

    Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with Tax details is displayed.

Figure 10-33 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Tax



> **Note**
>
> The system displays the details of the tax configured in the screen.

18. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Preview**.

    You can view the message or advice generated in the screen.

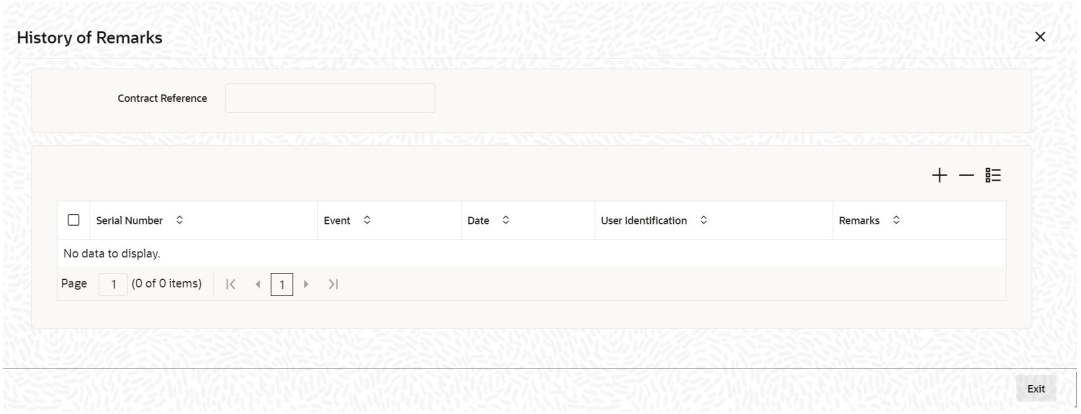
    For more details on this screen, refer Capturing Additional Details chapter in this user manual.

19. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, click **Remarks**.

    Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging with **Remarks details** is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-34 Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging - Remarks



> **Note**
>
> For more details on this screen refer to the section 'Remarks 'in this user manual.

20. On the Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging screen, click the Customer Instructions tab.

The Customer Instructions screen is displayed.

Figure 10-35 Customer Instructions

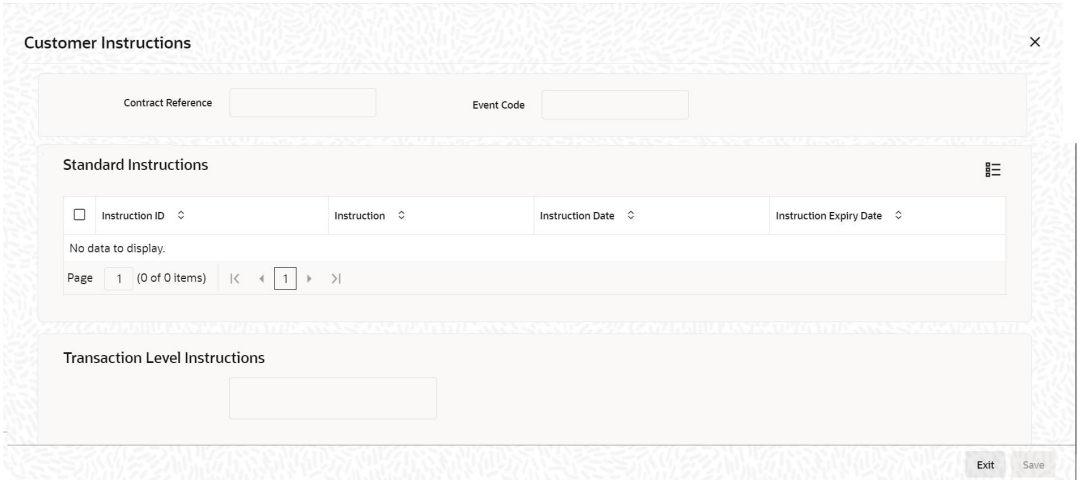


Table 10-35 Customer Instructions - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference Number	System displays the contract reference number.
Event Code	System displays the Event Code of the contract.
Standard Instructions	Customer would want to give Standard instructions in advance to the bank that need to be referred by the bank while processing certain type of transactions.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

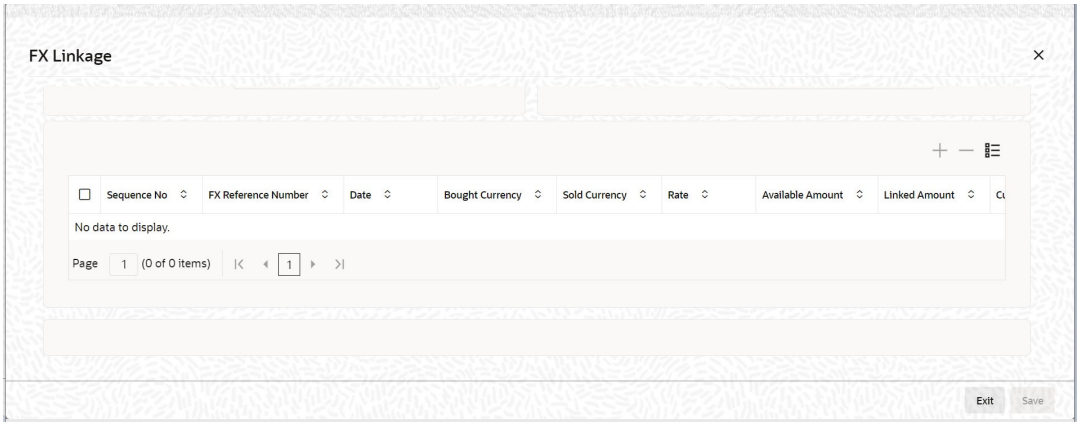
Table 10-35 (Cont.) Customer Instructions - Field Description

Field	Description
Instruction ID	System displays the Instruction ID.
Instruction	System displays the customer standard instruction.
Instruction Date	System displays the start date of the customer instruction.
Instruction Expiry Date	System displays the expiry date of the customer instruction.
Transaction Level Instruction	Enter the transaction level instructions for the event.

21. On the Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging screen, click the FX Linkage tab.

The FX Linkage screen is displayed.

Figure 10-36 FX Linkage



This link invokes a screen in which you can link a Guarantee Claim involving a specific counterparty with FX deals involving the same counterparty.

You can link one or more FX deals to a bill, the total value of all the deals should not exceed the bill amount.

Table 10-36 FX Linkage - Field Description

Field	Description
Sequence No	System generates the ‘Sequence No’ for linked FX contracts sequentially
FX Reference no	Indicates FX deal reference no. from treasury system.
Date	Indicates FX deal value date. FX Value date should be greater or equal to Claim Expiry Date.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-36 (Cont.) FX Linkage - Field Description

Field	Description
BOT/SOLD Currency	Guarantee Claim currency should be BOT currency of the FX transaction in case of Guarantee Advised or the SOLD currency in case of an Guarantee Issued. Bought Currency: Presents FX Deal Bought Currency. Incase of Guarantee Advised Claim, Guarantee Claim currency should be same FX Bought Currency. Sold Currency: Presents FX Deal Bought Currency. Incase of Guarantee Issued contract, Guarantee Claim currency should be same FX Sold Currency.
Rate	Presents FX deal Exchange rate.
Available Amount	Present FX available amount (i.e) FX contract amount minus total linked FX amount.
Linked Amount	User will capture Linked amount at FX Linkage screen. Sum of Linked amount will not be greater than Guarantee Claim contract amount. Linked amount will not be greater than the available amount for linkage.
Current Utilized amount	Current Utilized amount will display the current amount utilized of the event.
Total Utilized amount	Total Utilized amount will display the total amount utilized of the contract.

OBTF system initiates

- Link/Utilization request to treasury system,
  - During linkage or utilization of FX contract at Guarantee / Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement.
- Link request to treasury system
  - During linkage of FX, at Guarantee / Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodgment.
  - Amendment of Guarantee / Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodgment for linked amount or difference in linked amount during amendment.
- Delink request to treasury system,
  - Manual reduction / delink of FX at Guarantee / Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodgment / Settlement.
  - During deletion of Claim Event.
  - During closure of the claim.
- When Linked FX is not utilized during claim settlement.

Multiple forward FX contract could be linked and exchange rate of FX contract vary from each. Hence, effective exchange rate for claim would be arrived using weighted average method and it is utilized during claim settlement.

- Islamic Guarantee Not Advised Contract - Details:

ISB Party's Customer Reference, Issuing bank, claim amount, currency will be validated for duplications.It will be configurable override.

Issue date has to be lesser than branch date.

Effective date has to be lesser than branch date.

Claim amount has to be greater than Outstanding Amount.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Outstanding Amount has to be Greater than Contract Amount.

On Save, BDAV and GCLM Event will be triggered simultaneously.

Processing of these contracts are restricted from LIDGUONL/LIDGUAMD /LIDGUTRF, but can be viewed from LIDGCLM/LIDGCLP.

On Successful settlement, Outstanding amount will be shown as reduced by claim amount.

Hold Operation is not supported. Main tab will be disabled for these contracts.

Guarantee Not Advised and Parties tab only applicable for Guarantee Not Advised contracts.

10.4.2 View Islamic Guarantee Claim Details

This topic provides the systematic instructions to view islamic guarantee claim details.

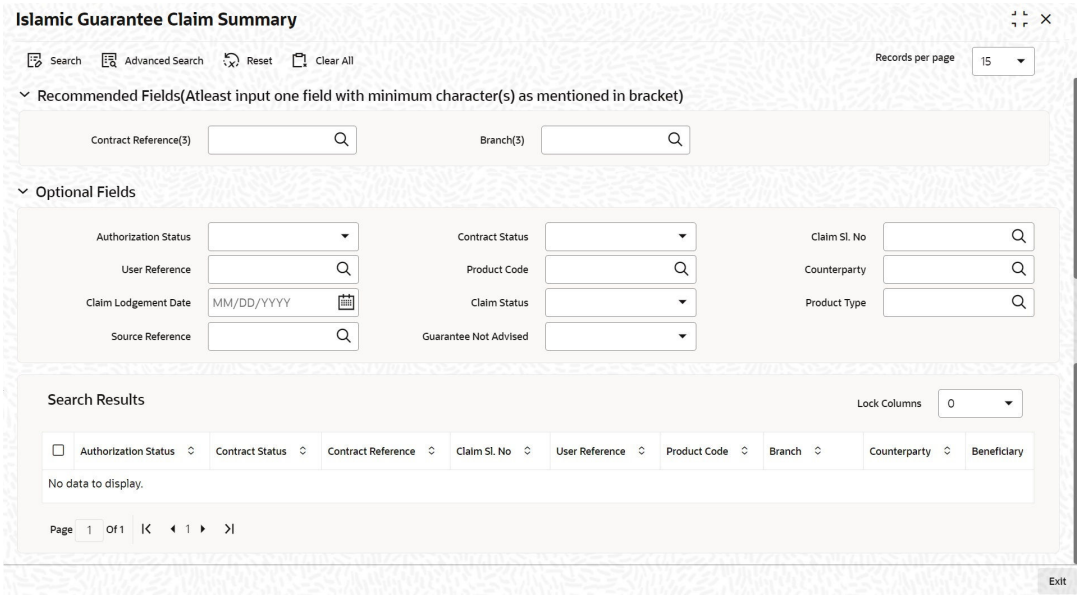
You can view the guarantee claim details maintained in the Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging screen using the Islamic Guarantee Claim Summary screen.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISGCLM** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   The **Islamic Guarantee Claim Summary** screen is displayed.

Figure 10-37 Islamic Guarantee Claim Summary



2. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodging** screen, base your queries on any or all of the following parameters and fetch records:

   The Parameters are:

   - Authorization Status
   - Contract Reference
   - Claim Lodgement Date
   - Claim Status
   - Claim Date

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Claim Expiry Date
- Counterparty
- Contract Status
- Claim Sl. No
- Product Code
- Branch

Select any or all of the above parameters for a query and click ‘Search’. The system displays the following records meeting the selected criteria:

- Authorization Status
- Contract Status
- Contract Reference
- Claim Sl. No
- User Reference
- Product Code
- Branch
- Counterparty
- Beneficiary
- Currency
- Contract Amount
- Issue Date
- Expiry Date
- Claim Date
- Claim Amount

10.5 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement
2. Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary

- Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to settle islamic guarantee claims.
- View Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the guarantee claim Settlement.

10.5.1 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement

This topic provides the systematic instructions to settle islamic guarantee claims.

You can settle the islamic guarantee claims using the Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement screen. Claims have to be settled in the sequence it is lodged. All claims in Lodged Status is available for settlement

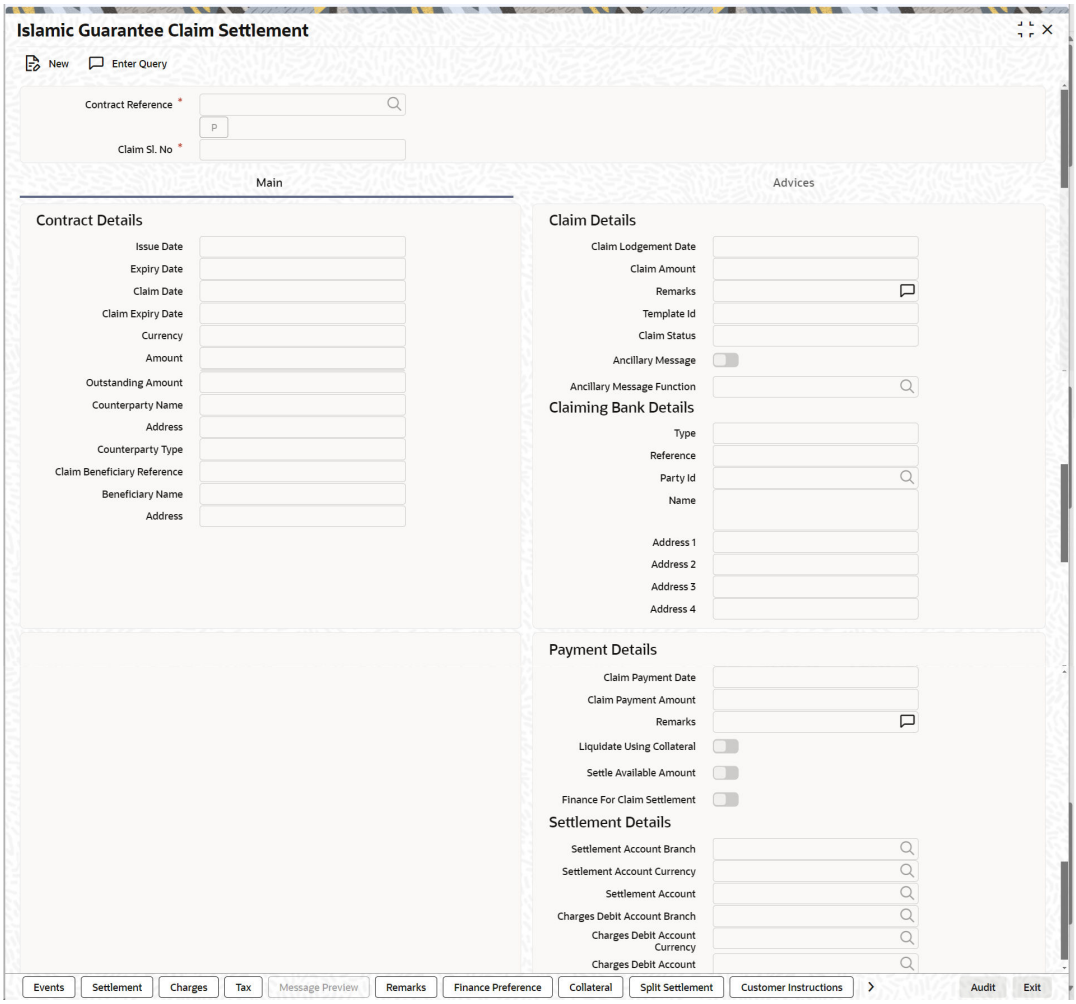
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDGCLP** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement screen is displayed.

Figure 10-38 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement



2. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field table below:

Table 10-37 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Contract Reference	Specify the Guarantee contract Reference against which the claim is received by the bank and settlement needs to be done. Alternatively you can also select the contract reference from the drop-down list. The list displays only claims for which the status is ‘Lodged’.
Claim Serial No	Specify the claim serial no. for which settlement needs to be done.System validates that the entered unsettled claim is as per the sequential order of lodgement and status of the claim is ‘Lodged’.
Issue Date	System defaults the contract issue date here.
Expiry Date	System defaults the contract expiry date here.
Claim Date	System defaults the guarantee claim date here.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-37 (Cont.) Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement - Field Description

Field	Description
Claim Expiry Date	System defaults the guarantee claim expiry date here.
Currency	System defaults the guarantee currency here.
Amount	System defaults the guarantee amount here.
Outstanding Guarantee Amount	System defaults the outstanding guarantee amount here.
Counterparty Name	System defaults the name of the counterparty here.
Address	System defaults the address of the counterparty here.
Counterparty Type	System defaults the party type of the counterparty here.
Counterparty Reference	System defaults the reference no. of the counterparty here.
Beneficiary Name	System defaults the name of the beneficiary here.
Address	System defaults the address of the beneficiary here.
Claim Lodgement Date	System defaults the date of claim lodged.
Claim Amount	System defaults the claim payment amount as claim amount.
Remarks	Enter remarks if any for the claim.
Template ID	System defaults the template id of the claim lodged.
Claiming Bank Details	Display Claiming Bank Details – Based on the details provided in LCDGCLM screen this section will be populated. It is not editable section (only view).
Type	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Type.
Reference	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Reference.
Party Id	Displays the Claiming Bank Party ID.
Name	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Name.
Address 1	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Address 1.
Address 2	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Address 2.
Address 3	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Address 3.
Address 4	Displays the Claiming Bank Party Address 4.
Claim Status	System defaults the status of the claim lodged.
Liquidate Using Collateral:	Check this box to indicate if the collateral need s to be utilized for the settlement of the claim.
Claim Payment Amount	System defaults the claim payment amount here.
Remarks	Enter remarks if any for claim payment.
Settle Available Amount	Check this option to debit the available amount from applicant and then create loan for the remaining amount during claim settlement. Settle Available Amount is selected only when you select the Loan for Claim Settlement, else the system will validate the same.
Collateral Funding By Loan:	Check this box to indicate if collateral needs to be utilized for claim settlement.
Claim Payment Date	System defaults the claim payment date here.
Claim Payment Amount	System defaults the claim payment amount here.
Remarks	Enter remarks if any for claim payment.
Finance for Claim Settlement	System defaults the value maintained at product level. You can check/un-check this box to indicate that finance needs to be created or not for this claim settlement.
Settlement Account Branch	The system defaults the details of settlement account branch. The values is modified.
Settlement Account Currency	The system defaults the details of settlement account currency. The values is modified.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-37 (Cont.) Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement - Field Description

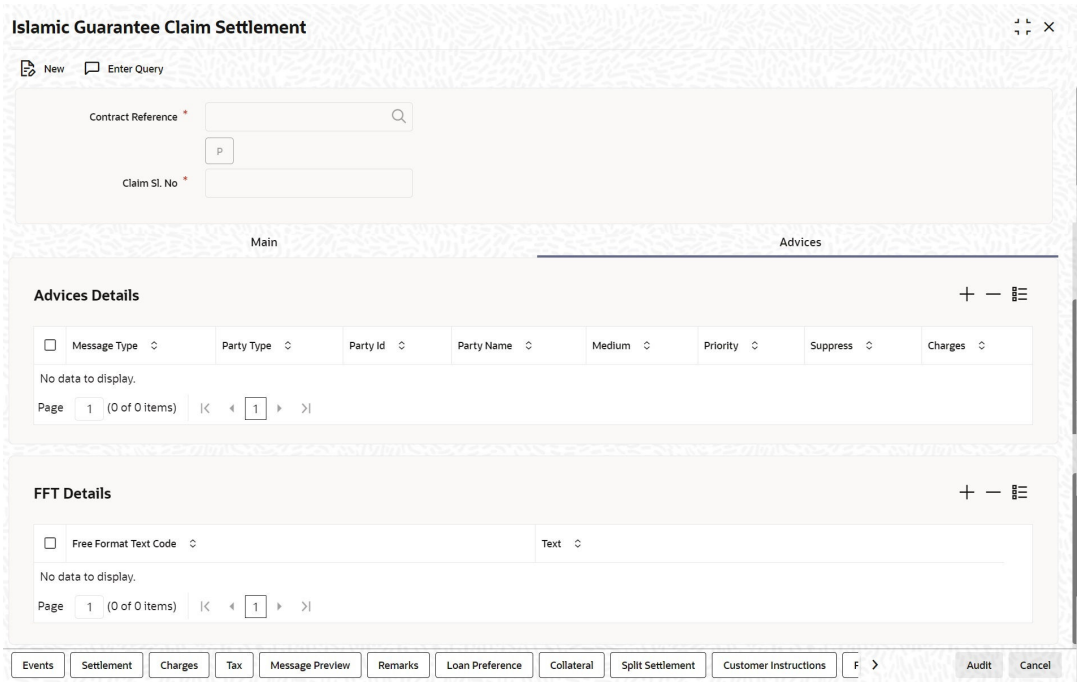
Field	Description
Settlement Account	The system defaults the settlement account. The values is modified.
Charges Debit Account Branch	The system defaults the details of charges debit account branch.The values is modified.
Charges Debit Account Currency	The system defaults the details of charges debit account currency. The values is modified.

3. On **Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement** screen, click **Advices**.

   The system defaults the details of charges debit account. The values is modified.

   Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement with Advices tab details is displayed.

Figure 10-39 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement - Advices



4. On the **Advices** tab, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field table below:

Table 10-38 Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Message Type	System displays the message type of the message/advice generated.
Party Type	System displays the party type for which the message/advice is generated.
Party ID	System displays the party id for which the message/advice is generated
Party Name	System displays the party name for which the message/advice is generated.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-38 (Cont.) Advices - Field Description

Field	Description
Medium	System defaults the medium in which the message has to be sent for the party. You can modify this.
Priority	System defaults the priority value of sending the message maintained at product level. You can modify this.
Suppress	Check this box to suppress the message.
Charges	System displays the charges for the claim.
Free Format Text Code	Specify the free format text code.
Text	Specify the free format text here.
The details for the following subsystems are defaulted from LC contract level. • Event Details • Settlement Details • Charge Details • Tax Details • Message Preview • Remarks • Loan Preferences • Collateral Details Guarantee Collateral is utilized proportionately for claim settlement and customer available balance is utilized for the remaining amount. In case of inadequate funds in customer account, finance is created for the remaining amount. On Save, Loan is created and the generated Loan Reference Number is made available in Linkages Subsystem. **Accounting entries are posted for below:** • Reverse Contingent Entries posted during Guarantee Issuance • Collateral Utilization • Adjustment from Customer Account • Finance Creation **Advices:** MT202 / Payment Advice is generated on Claim Settlement Reject Message - MT799 / Rejection Advice is generated on rejection of Claim	

10.5.2 View Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary

This topic provides the systematic instructions to capture the guarantee claim Settlement.

You can view the guarantee claim settlement details maintained in the Guarantee Claim Settlement screen using the Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary screen.

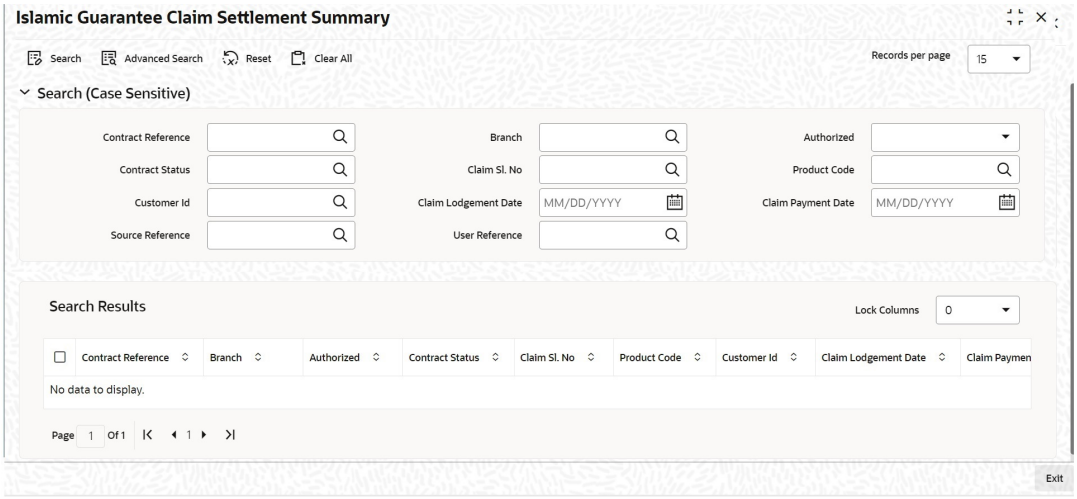
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISGCLP** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-40 Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary



2. On the **Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement Summary** screen, query on any or all of the following parameters and fetch records:

   The parameters are:

   - Contract Reference Number
   - Branch
   - Authorization Status
   - Contract Status
   - Claim Sl. No,
   - Counterparty
   - Product Code
   - Claim Id
   - Claim Lodgement Date
   - Claim Payment Date

   Select any or all of the above parameters for a query and click ‘Search’. The system displays records meeting the selected criteria and the following details of the records is displayed:

   - Contract Reference
   - Branch
   - Authorized
   - Contract Status
   - Claim Sl. No
   - Product Code
   - Customer Id
   - Claim Lodgement Date
   - Claim Payment Date

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

10.6 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input

This topic contains the following subtopic:

- Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input
- View Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Details
- Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input.
- View Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Details
  This topic provides the systematic instruction to view Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Details

10.6.1 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input

This topic provides the systematic instructions to Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input.

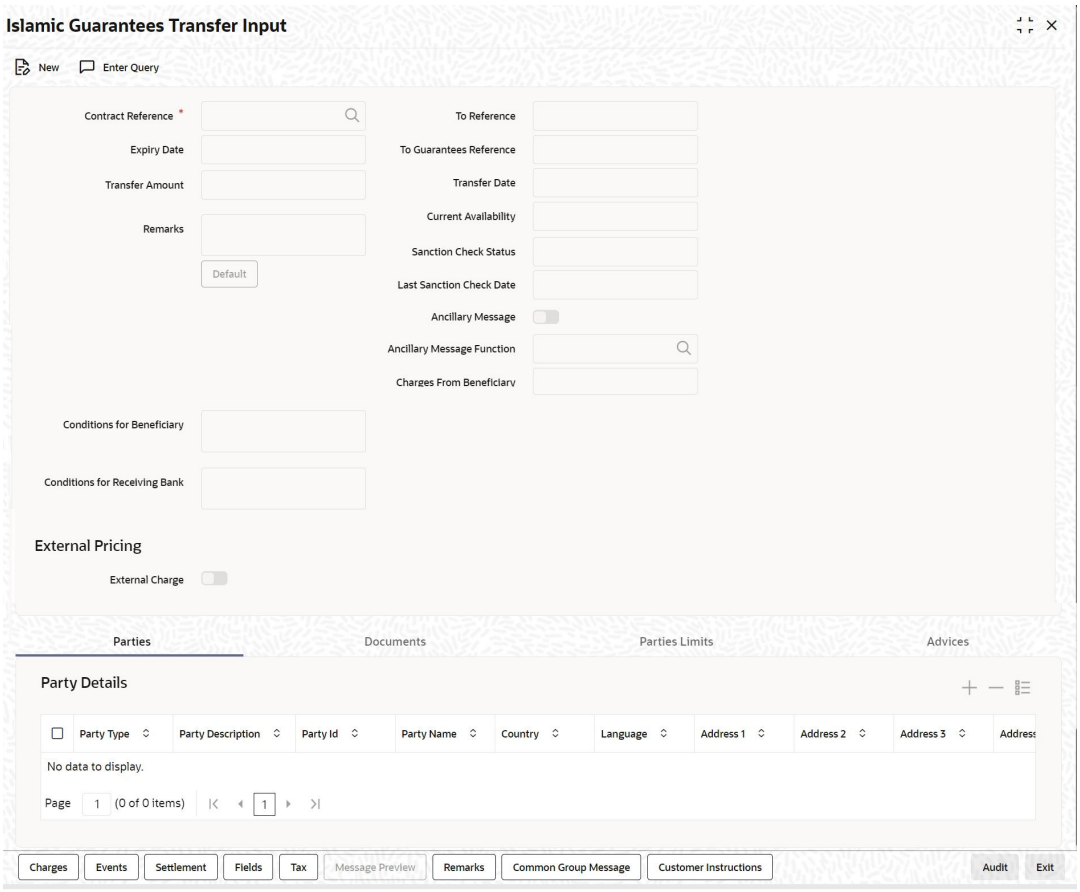
You can transfer Islamic Guarantees and SBLC using Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input screen.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDGUTRF** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input screen is displayed.

Figure 10-41 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input



Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. On the **Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field table below:

Table 10-39 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input - Field Description

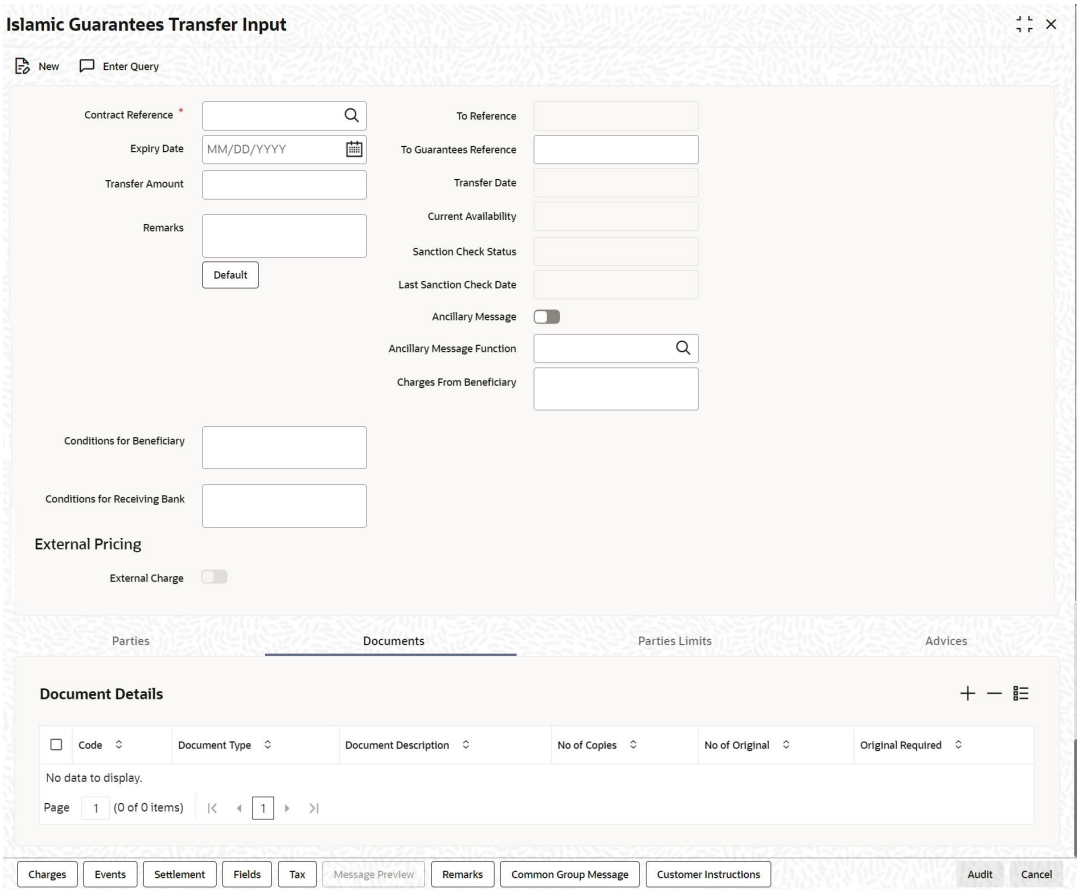
Field	Description
Contract Reference	This is a Mandatory Field. Indicate the Islamic Guarantee/SB LC from which you want to effect the transfer. Click the adjoining option list and select a valid Contract Reference.
To Reference	Specify the reference number to which the Islamic Guarantee/SB LC should be transferred.
Expiry Date.	The expiry date is the date up to which the transferred Islamic Guarantee/SB LC is valid. The expiry date of the original Guarantee/SB LC is defaulted. You can change the defaulted date. However, the expiry date cannot be earlier than the Islamic Guarantee/SB LC issue date or today's date.
To Guarantees Reference	Specify the reference number to which the Islamic guarantees should be transferred.
Transfer Amount	The transfer amount is the amount that should be transferred from the original Islamic Guarantee/SBLC. You can only transfer an amount that is less than or equal to the amount available under the original Islamic Guarantee/SB LC.
Transfer Date	Specify the date of transfer.
Remarks	Specify remarks, if any.
Default	Click the default button for defaulting Islamic Guarantee/SBLC details
Current Availability	The system displays the current outstanding liability amount.
Sanction Check Status	The system displays the sanction check status.
Last Sanction Check Date	The system displays the last sanction check date.
Parties The following are the parties tab details	
Party Type	Specify the Party Type by selecting the ‘Party Type’ from the adjoining option list
Party Description	The Party Description appears in the Party Description field once you select the Party Type.
Party ID	Specify the ‘Party ID’ for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select the ‘Customer Id’ from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the ‘Customer Id’ only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC code is not mapped with that customer number then the BIC Code will not appear next to the ‘Customer Id’ in the adjoining option list. The list displays all the valid parties maintained in the system. On selecting the Party ID, the following details are displayed: • Party Name • Country • Language • Address 1-4

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the **Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input** screen, click **Documents**.

   Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input screen - Documents screen is displayed.

Figure 10-42 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input - Documents



4. On the **Documents** tab, specify the details as required.

   You can maintain the following details in Documents tab:

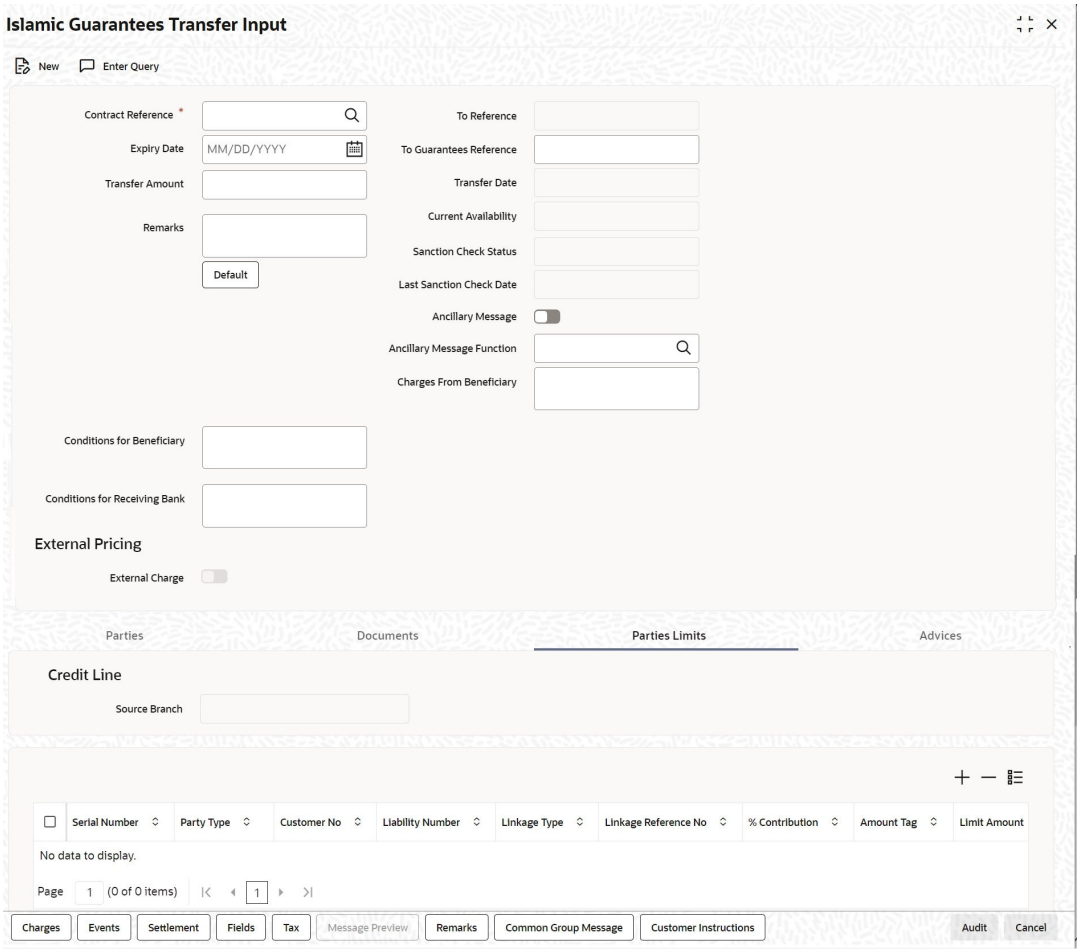
   - Document Details
   - Code
   - Document Type
   - Document Description
   - No of Copies
   - No of Original
   - Original Required

5. On the **Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input** screen, click **Parties limits**.

   Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input - Parties limits screen s displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-43 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input - Parties Limits



6. On **Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input - Parties Limits** screen, specify the details as required.

   For information on fields, refer to the field table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 10-40 Parties Limits - Field Description

Field	Description
Credit Line	Specify the following details: • Serial Number • Party Type • Customer No: Specify the 'Customer No' for which you need to maintain. Alternatively, you can select 'Customer Id' from the adjoining option list also. **Note** BIC Code appears next to the 'Customer Id' only if the BIC Code is mapped with that customer number. If the BIC code is not mapped with that customer number then the BIC Code will not appear next to the 'Customer Id' in the adjoining option list. • Liability Number **Note** The system displays multiple liabilities that are attached to the Customer • Linkage Type • Linkage Reference No &Contribution • Amount Tag • Limit Amount **Note** For more details on the tabs and buttons in Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Input screen, refer the chapter titled 'Transferring LI' in this user manual.

10.6.2 View Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Details

This topic provides the systematic instruction to view Islamic Guarantees and SBLC Transfer Details

You can view Islamic guarantees and SBLC transfer details through **Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input Summary** screen.

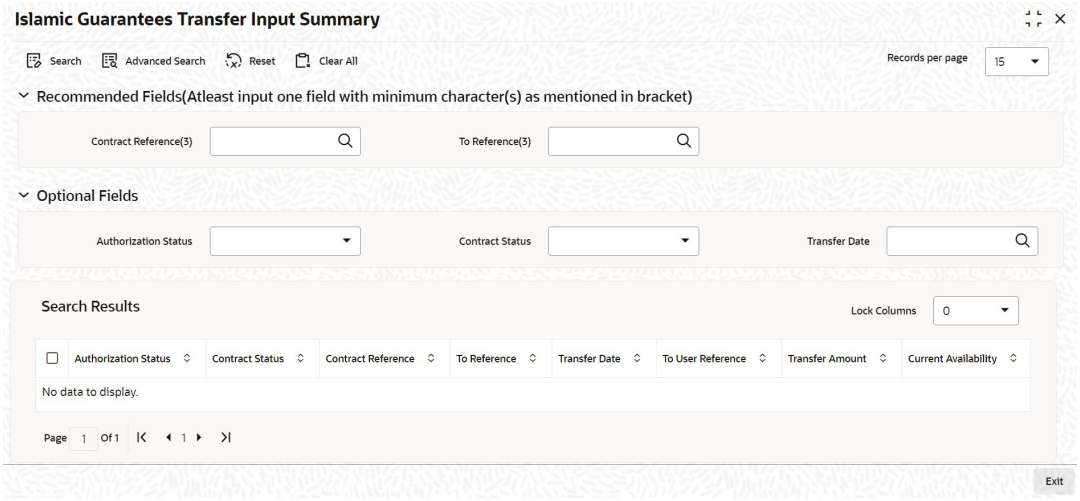
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LISGUTRF** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input Summary screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 10-44 Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input Summary



2. On the Islamic Guarantees Transfer Input Summary screen, specify the details as required.

   You can base your queries on any or all of the following parameters and fetch records:

   The following are recommended fields:

   - Contract Reference
   - To Reference

   The following are the optional fields:

   - Authorization Status
   - Contract Status
   - Product Code
   - Transfer Date

   Select any or all of the above parameters for a query and click ‘Search’ button. The system displays the following records meeting the selected criteria:

   - Authorization Status
   - Contract Status
   - Contract Reference
   - To Reference
   - Transfer Date
   - To User Reference
   - Transfer Amount
   - Current Availability
   - Effective Date
   - Expiry Date
   - Shipment Date
   - Period of Presentation

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

11

Liquidate Receivable Components

This chapter contains the following topics:

1. Introduction
2. Maintain Online Receivable/Payable Details

- Introduction
- Maintain Online Receivable/Payable Details
  This topic provides systematic instruction to maintain Online Receivable/Payable Details.

11.1 Introduction

Whenever you have to collect a component (typically for a commission or charge, or under certain circumstances the availment amount or the collateral amount), you debit it from the customer's account. On some occasions, you may have to debit it from an internal receivable GL, is debited from the customer account at a later date.

The debiting of the receivable account happens at the event for which the commission or charge has to be collected (issue of an Islamic LC, amendment of an Islamic LC, availment against an Islamic LC, etc.). When the customer account is debited at a later date, you have to perform, what is termed as receivable liquidation.

There are two related functions associated with liquidation:

- A batch process that reverses the liquidated receivable components, for a contract that is reversed during the day (the LQ EOTI function).
- A batch process that generates the charge and commission claim advice to the party on behalf of whom a charge or commission was debited, from a receivable account during the day (the LQ EOD function).

11.2 Maintain Online Receivable/Payable Details

This topic provides systematic instruction to maintain Online Receivable/Payable Details.

You can pass manual entries into LQ Module to maintain additional entries into the AR/AP LQ Module in the Receivable/ Payable Online screen.

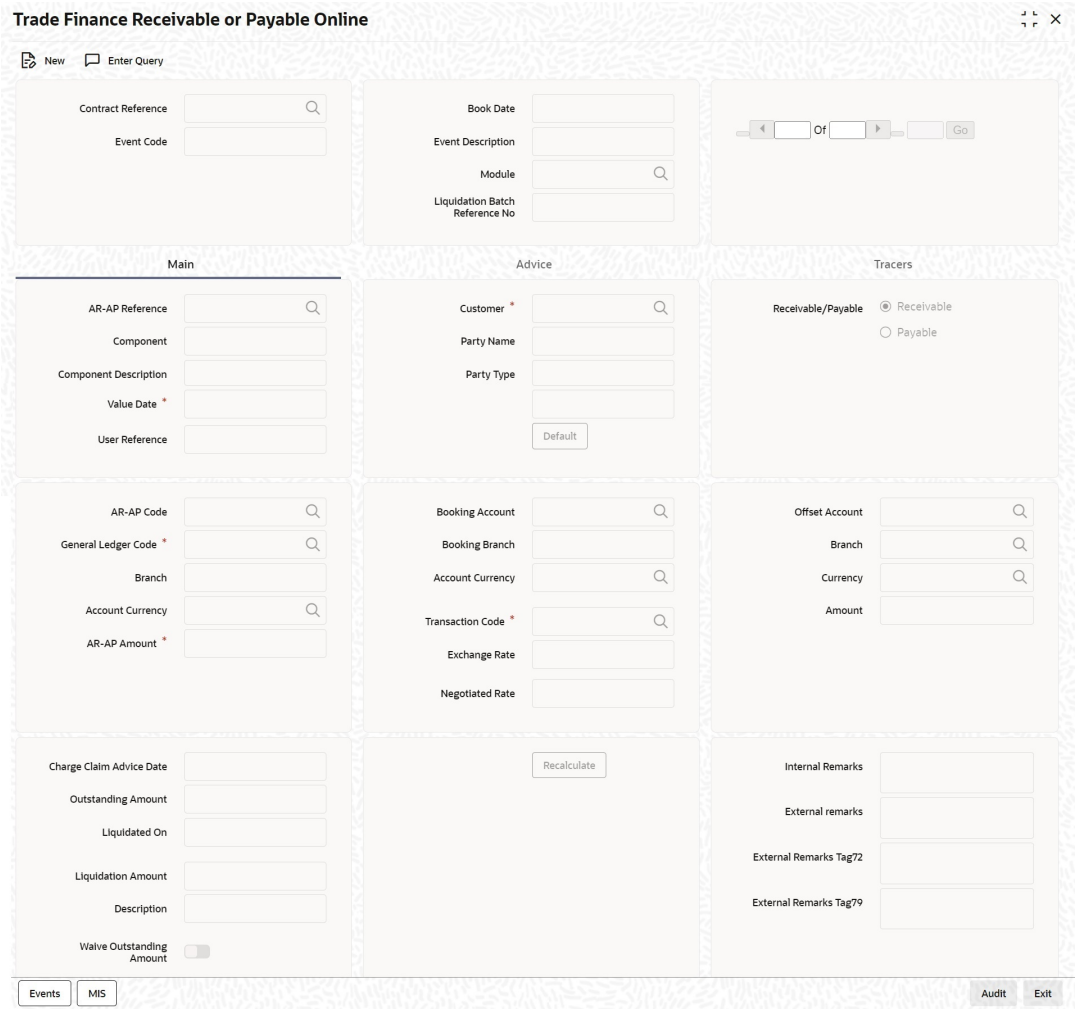
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

- On the Homepage, type **LQDTRONL** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

  Receivable or Payable Online screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 11-1 Receivable or Payable Online



- Liquidate the Receivable Components of an Islamic LC
- Manual Liquidation of Receivable Components for the Islamic LC
  This topic provides systematic instruction about Manual Liquidation of Receivable Components for the Islamic LC.
- Specify Details of the Advices for the Liquidation

11.2.1 Liquidate the Receivable Components of an Islamic LC

Once you enter the reference number of the Islamic LC in the Receivable Liquidation screen, the system automatically assigns a unique liquidation reference number to the component you are liquidating. Besides this, the following details of the Islamic LC are picked up and displayed:

- The counterparty (customer) code
- The Value Date of the Islamic LC
- The account to which the liquidated amount should be credited
- The currency of the receivable account
- The branch to which the account belongs

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- The total outstanding amount for the component as of the value date (the date on which the payment is made)
- Details of the tracers that were generated thus far for the outstanding component
- The Status of the Islamic LC

You can specify the following details for the Liquidation:

- The account that is debited for the liquidation amount.
- The branch to which the account belongs
- The currency of the account
- If the component currency and the currency of the account to be debited for the liquidated amount is different, you can indicate the exchange rate to be used in the conversion. By default, the exchange rate specified for the product under which the processed Islamic LC is displayed. You can change this, and the changed rate should be within the variance limit specified for the product.

The outstanding components of an Islamic LC are displayed for each event. To liquidate an outstanding component, choose to Liquidate by clicking Processing on the application toolbar.

After the liquidation of an outstanding component, if there are other outstanding components for the event, the system will inform you of them and prompt you to liquidate them as well.

11.2.2 Manual Liquidation of Receivable Components for the Islamic LC

This topic provides systematic instruction about Manual Liquidation of Receivable Components for the Islamic LC.

Manual liquidation of transferable charge and/or commission components to an Islamic LC is performed, through the Islamic LC Deferred Liquidation screen.

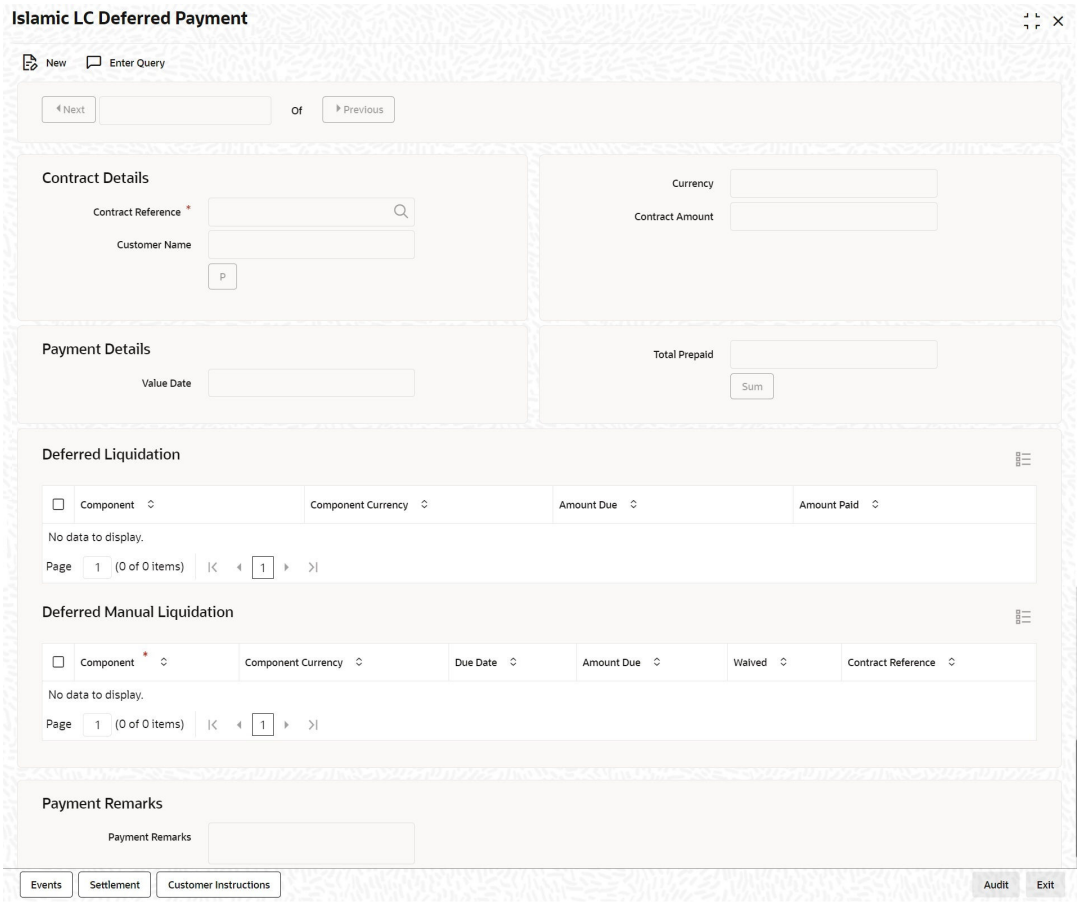
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LIDEPMNT** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Islamic LC Deferred Payment is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 11-2 Islamic LC Deferred Payment



2. On the **Islamic LC Deferred Payment** screen, click **New**.
3. On the **Islamic LC Deferred Payment - New** screen, specify the details as required.
4. Click **Save** to save the details OR **Cancel** to close the screen.

The outstanding commission and charge components is liquidated using this manual liquidation screen.During manual liquidation, you can opt to waive the receivable charge / commission amounts.No backdated value dates are allowed during manual liquidation of these components.

For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 11-1 Islamic LC Deferred Payment

Field	Description
Reference Number	This displays the reference number of the Islamic LC is liquidated.
Contract Amount	This displays the total contract amount.
Contract Currency	This displays the currency of the contract.
Customer	This displays the customer information.
Value Date	The value date defaults to the application date and the same cannot be modified.
Total Paid	This displays the total amount to be paid against liquidation of the Islamic LC.

- Specify Payment Breakup Details

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Waiver of Components during Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC Charges

11.2.2.1 Specify Payment Breakup Details

The system displays the total amount due for the commission and charge components till date during payment as the payment breakup, inclusive of the details of each component.

Upon complete liquidation of the component, the system updates the status of the component from Receivable to Liquidated. The amount liquidated is also updated in the receivable component details.

The accounting entries maintained in ‘MLIQ’ event are passed for the amount paid.

11.2.2.2 Waiver of Components during Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC Charges

During manual liquidation of charges, the system allows a waiver of certain components. When the waiver option is selected, the system defaults the amount paid as the amount due and does not allow modification of the same for the component.

Upon waiver, the system marks the component in the Islamic LC as liquidated, internally.

Waivers are processed in the system as a new event initiated along with the MLIQ event.

11.2.3 Specify Details of the Advices for the Liquidation

This topic provides the details to Specify Details of the Advices for the Liquidation.

The advices that are generated for the events that occur during the life cycle of an Islamic LC are defined for the product involved in the Islamic LC. In this screen, you can specify the advices that should be generated to the parties concerned, indicating that you have liquidated a receivable component of the Islamic LC.

The details of two advices are shown in this screen:

- Charge Claim Advice
- Debit Advice

The Charge Claim Advice is generated at EOD; on the day the receivable account is debited. This is the event for which a charge is attached or a commission liquidation event (Event Code CLIQ). Its details whether it was suppressed during the event, the medium through which it was transmitted, and the date on which it was generated is displayed. This is for information purposes only.

The Debit Advice is generated when the receivable components of the Islamic LC are liquidated. You can suppress the generation of the advice or change the media and priority when you are processing the liquidation.

Suppress

By default, all the advices defined for the product involved in the Islamic LC is generated. If you do not want to generate specific advice, you can suppress its generation by indicating so.

Priority

Priority applies to the advices that need to be sent, through media like SWIFT or TELEX. By default, the priority of all advices is marked as normal. Advices are prioritized to one of the following options:

- Normal

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Medium
- High

Medium

It is mandatory also to specify the medium through which advice is transmitted. The advice is transmitted through Telex, Mail, SWIFT or any other media that you have defined in your branch. You can select the appropriate medium code from the option list.

In addition, the details for the Charge Commission Tracer are also displayed. This tracer is generated after the event has taken place until the component is liquidated. These details are for information only. The default from the product under which an Islamic LC is processed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

12

Credit Limit Tracking for an Islamic LC

This chapter contains the following topics:

1. Introduction
2. Track Credit Limit

- Introduction
- Track Credit Limit

12.1 Introduction

When you issue an import Islamic Letter of Credit (Islamic LC) or advise and confirm an export Islamic LC, you would track your liability against the party on behalf of whom you are undertaking a liability. For an import Islamic LC, you would track the exposure against the applicant while for an export Islamic LC that you confirm; you would do so for the issuing bank.

12.2 Track Credit Limit

In Oracle Banking Trade Finance, credit limit tracking is done using credit lines allotted to a customer.

The credit line allotted to the party against whom you want to track your liability is indicated while you capture the details of an Islamic LC. In the case of an amendment, from the advice of an export Islamic LC to advice and confirm, you can indicate the credit line during the amendment also.

You can specify Central Liability details for an Islamic LC, in the ‘Islamic LC Contract Party details’ screen. To display this screen, you have to click on the ‘Parties’ tab from the Contract screen.

The amount that is tracked is the Islamic LC Liability Amount. It is arrived at as follows:

Liability Amount = Maximum Islamic LC Amount + Liability% of the Islamic LC amount

In the case of an Islamic LC revolving in time, the liability amount is calculated, taking into account all the scheduled reinstatements.

This topic contains the following subtopics:

1. Specify whether Limit Tracking is Required
2. Indicate the Customer against whom the Islamic LC Liability Amount is Tracked
3. Specify the Limit Track Tenor
4. Indicate the Credit Line for Liability Amount

- Specify whether Limit Tracking is Required
- Indicate the Customer against whom the Islamic LC Liability Amount is Tracked
  Enter a short description of your topic here (optional).
- Specify the Limit Track Tenor

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Indicate the Credit Line for Liability Amount

12.2.1 Specify whether Limit Tracking is Required

Every credit-seeking customer of your bank is assigned a credit limit under a Credit Line.

Check against the credit limit tracking option, to indicate that the Islamic LC liability amount is tracked against the credit limit assigned to the customer. Leave it unchecked to indicate you do not wish to track the Islamic LC liability amount against the credit limit assigned to any of the parties involved in the Islamic LC.

12.2.2 Indicate the Customer against whom the Islamic LC Liability Amount is Tracked

Enter a short description of your topic here (optional).

This topic provides the details of

1. Party Type
2. CIF ID of the Party

Party Type

You would have already captured the details about the different parties involved in the Islamic LC. For each party type (APP, ABK, ISB, etc.), you would have specified the details of the party. While specifying credit limit tracking details, you have just to indicate the party type against whom you want to track the credit limit. The party details are picked up by default.

CIF ID of the Party

When you specify a party type against whose credit limits you wish to track the Islamic LC amount the CIF ID assigned to the party is automatically picked up and displayed.

12.2.3 Specify the Limit Track Tenor

While maintaining the preferences for the contract, you can specify whether you want to track the limits based on Islamic LC tenor or the Max Draft tenor (Usance period). For this, you need to indicate your preference by selecting the appropriate checkbox.

> **Note**
>
> The credit lines are displayed depending upon the preferences specified at the time of creating the line. E.g. Products allowed, branch allowed etc.

For all the contracts, change your preference for limits tracking before or after authorization. However, every time you change the tenor type, you need to select a credit line again. Subsequently, tracking is done for the new tenor and credit line.

12.2.4 Indicate the Credit Line for Liability Amount

You have to specify the credit line of the party against which the Islamic LC liability amount is tracked.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If more than one credit line is defined for the party, only those credit lines whose restrictions are in line with that of the Islamic LC is displayed. The restrictions could be one of the following:

- Tenor
- Product
- Branch
- Currency

Also, the expiry date of the line should be before the Issue Date of the Islamic LC.

> **Note**
>
> When you enter an Islamic LC for a customer and choose a line, the cash collateral percentage defined for the customer and line will default. If you have not defined the cash collateral percentage for a customer and a line, the cash collateral percent defined for the product will default to the Islamic LC Contract. You can change this default value to suit the Islamic LC you are processing.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

13
Automatic Processes

This chapter contains the following topics:

1. Introduction
2. Maintain Branch Parameters
3. Batch Process

- Introduction
- Maintain Branch Parameters
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to Maintain Branch Parameters.
- Batch Process
  This topic provides the systematic instructions to display the Batch Process.

13.1 Introduction

The following processes relating to Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) is made automatic:

- Automatic closure
- Automatic calculation of periodic commission
- Automatic liquidation of periodic commission
- Automatic reinstatement of the Islamic LC amount
- Automatic accrual of commissions
- Generation of tracers
- Auto renewal of Open ended guarantees

The events that are to take place automatically are triggered off during the Batch Process. The batch process is an automatic function, run as a mandatory Beginning of Day (BOD) and End of Day (EOD) process. During EOD, the batch process should be run after End of Transaction Input (EOTI) has been marked for the day, but before End of Financial Input (EOFI) has been marked for the day. The tracer generation function should be run after end-of -financial- input (EOFI) has been marked for the day.

> **Note**
>
> You should maintain the Islamic LC EOD function as a mandatory batch process, once as a BOD and the next as a Pre-EOC program. It is maintained in the EOC mandatory program stable of the Core Services module. The tracer generation function should also be defined as a mandatory EOD function.

Revenue that has to be shared with the Co Banks for Islamic Counter /Counter Counter Guarantee contracts, will be processed as part of LCEOD batch.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

13.2 Maintain Branch Parameters

This topic provides the systematic instructions to Maintain Branch Parameters.

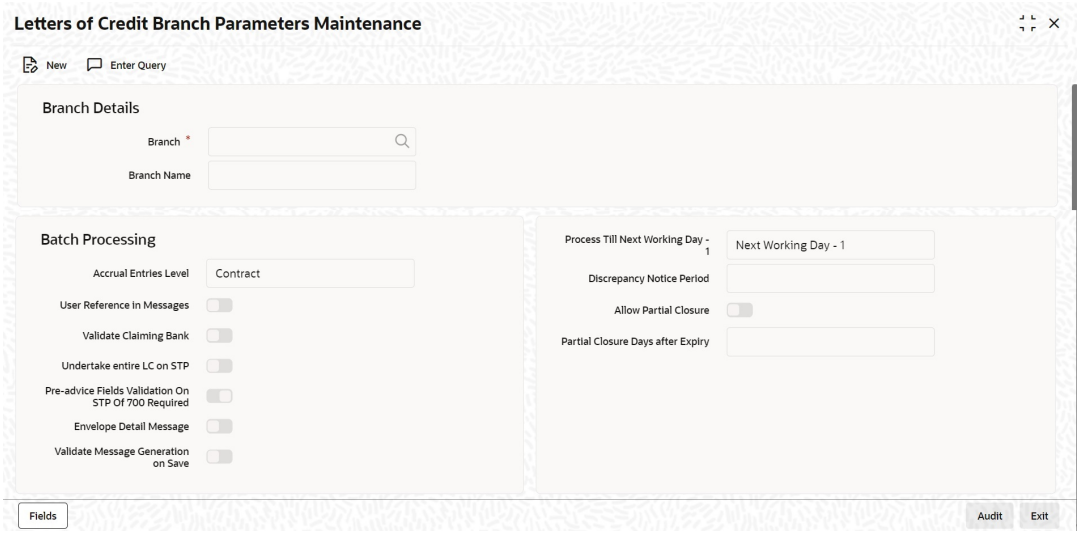
The set of rules that govern the Islamic LCs processed through the Islamic LC module, in a particular branch of your bank, is defined in the Branch Parameters screen.

Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **LCDBRPRM** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance screen is displayed.

Figure 13-1 Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance



2. On **Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance** screen, click **New**

   (Optional) Enter the result of the step here.

3. **Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance - New** screen, specify the details as required.

4. Click **Save** to save the details OR **Exit** to close the screen.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-1 Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Branch Code	Select the branch code from the option list provided. You can maintain branch parameters only from the respective branches. When you select branch code from the option list, the description of the same is defaulted in the field below. **Note** At the head office level you can alter branch parameters of other branches also.
Batch Processing Details The events, for which you had indicated automatic processing, are triggered off during the Batch Process. You can specify preferences for the automatic events that fall on a holiday, in the Branch Parameters screen. In addition, you can also specify the level at which accrual entries should be passed, for Islamic LCs in your branch.	
Accrual Entries Level	At the time of creating a product, you have specified • Whether accrual of Commission is allowed for the product. • The frequency with which the accrual entries should be passed • The accounting entries that should be passed for the accrual event An Islamic LC will inherit the accrual frequency defined for the product under which it is processed. In the Branch Parameters screen, you indicate the level at which the accrual entries have to be passed. The following options for level are: • Product • Contract If you indicate that automatic accrual should be done at the product level, a single entry for all the Islamic LCs, for which commission was accrued automatically, are passed. This helps reduce the time taken to pass individual entries. If you indicate that the automatic commission accrual process should pass accrual entries at the contract level, accrual entries are passed for each Islamic LC for which commission was accrued automatically.
Process Till Next Working Day – 1	If you indicate that the processing has to be done up to the Next Working Day - 1, all the automatic events falling due on the holiday are processed by the batch process, as part of the EOD on the last working day, before the holiday. You have the option to specify, that the Batch process should process automatic events falling due on a holiday. The same is processed on either of the following ways: • Next Working Day - 1 • Upto System Date If you indicate that processing has to be done only upto the System Date, then only the events scheduled for today (the last working day before the holiday) are processed. The events falling due on the holiday are processed by the batch process, as part of the BOD process, the first working day after the holiday.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-1 (Cont.) Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
User Reference Number in Messages	If you wish to display the user reference number in the advices that are generated for a contract, select the 'User Reference Number in Messages' option. All the advices generated at your branch will display the appropriate user reference number. **Note** You can specify a format for the generation of the User Reference Number in the 'Sequence Generation' screen available in the Application Browser. Refer to the Core Services User Manual for details on maintaining a sequence format.
Validate Claiming Bank	Check this box to indicate that the claiming bank needs to be validated.
Validate Message Generation on Save	Specify this option to indicate Validate Message generation on contract save. If Validate Message Generation flag is checked: • System to validate message generation and provide appropriate error message during Contract Save • All messages applicable for the Event to be validated and if any of the message generation fails, system to provide appropriate error message. Repair Reason to be provided as error message during contract save. If flag is unchecked: • System will not validate message generation during Contract save, as per existing functionality. • On Message Preview, messages with Message Status and Repair Reason is displayed. Message generation validation during contract save for Islamic screens are provided to the following screens: • Islamic LC Contract Online (LIDTRONL) • Islamic LC Amendment (XLIDAMEND) • Islamic LC Transfer (LIDTRANF) • Islamic Guarantee Contract Online (LIDGUONL) • Islamic Guarantee Amendment (LIDGUAMD) • Islamic Guarantee Claim Lodgment (LIDGCLM) • Islamic Guarantee Claim Settlement (LIDGCLP)

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-1 (Cont.) Letters of Credit Branch Parameters Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Discrepancy Notice Period	Discrepancies are likely to be found while processing Incoming or Outgoing bills under Islamic LCs. You can specify a period within which the discrepancy details should be added to the bills. This period is calculated from the date of presentation of the bills (which is typically the booking date of the bill) to the issuing bank/confirming bank. The system will display an override if the discrepancies are added to the bills (in the 'Bills – Contract Details' screen) after the discrepancy notice period. **Note** For details on processing a bills contract, refer to BC (Bills and Collections) User Manual, Processing Bills chapter.

13.3 Batch Process

This topic provides the systematic instructions to display the Batch Process.

Batches are run automatically. In the mandatory programs, all batches whichever are required are maintained in sequence and that is triggered automatically as based on the maintenance in the Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance screen.

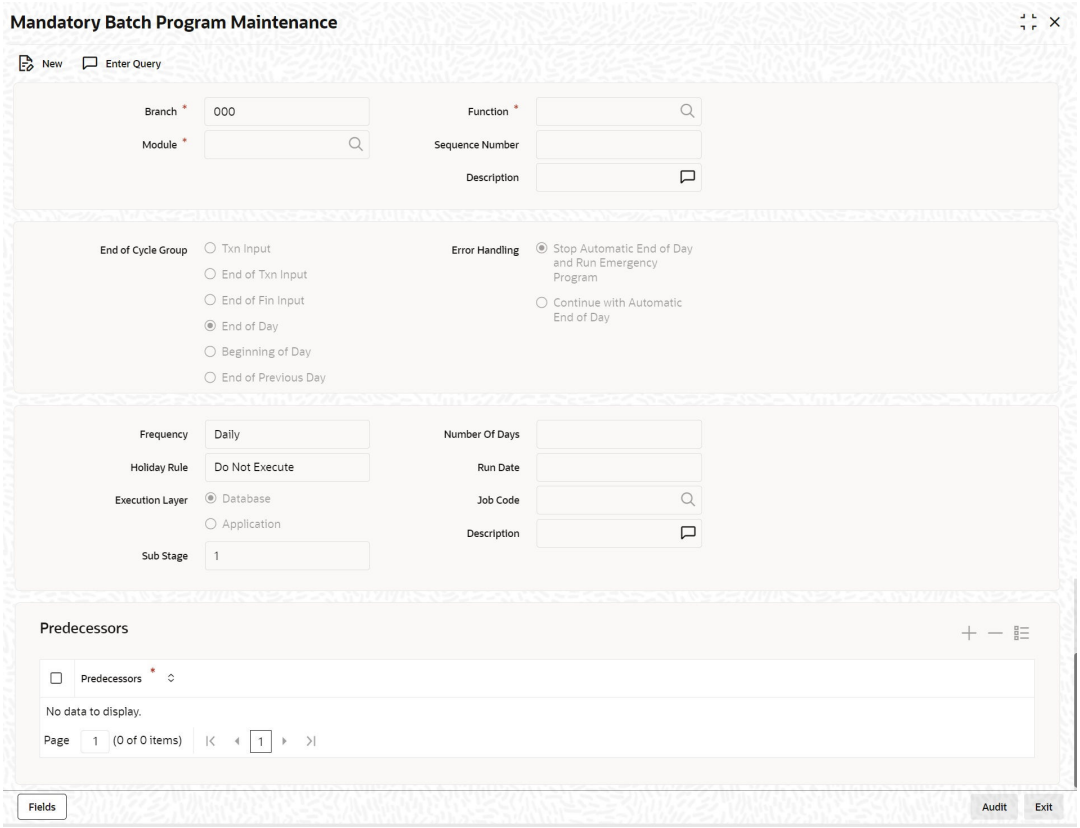
Specify the **User ID** and **Password**, and login to Homepage.

1. On the Homepage, type **EIDMANPE** in the text box, and click the next arrow.

   Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance screen is displayed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 13-2 Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance



2. On the **Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance** screen, click **New**.
3. On the **Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - New** screen, specify the details as required.
4. Click **Save** to save the details OR **Exit** to close the screen.

   For information on fields, refer to the field description table below:

Table 13-2 Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Module	This is a Mandatory field. Choose the module code from the adjoining option list.
Function Identification	Choose the function ID of batch that you wish to run. The adjoining option list displays all batch processes available for the module as shown in Figure 13-3 You can configure the batch to be run at various stages of day like EOD, EOTI etc. For further details about this screen, refer the chapter 'Setting- up Mandatory Programs for EOD' in the AEOD User Manual.
Automatic Events Executed During Beginning of Day (BOD)	The Batch program when run as part of BOD processes the following events: • Automatic liquidation of periodic commissions • Automatic Reinstatement of an Islamic LC • Calculation of periodic commission

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-2 (Cont.) Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Automatic Liquidation of Periodic Commission	The periodic commission components of an Islamic LC is automatically liquidated, if the commission components fall due on or before the current system date. As a part of BOD, this function liquidates the commission components of the Islamic LC contracts, whose commission liquidation date is between the last working date and the current processing date. The commission components that are liquidated by this function are posted to the accounts specified, in the settlements screen of the Islamic LC. These might be a customer's accounts or a receivable accounts. On liquidation of the commission components of an Islamic LC by the function: • The necessary tax related entries associated with the liquidation is passed. • The necessary debit advices is generated • The relevant accounting entries is passed. Typically they are • Table 13-3 • Table 13-4 As a part of EOD, this function liquidates the commission components of all the Islamic LC contracts, for which commission liquidation date falls between the current processing date and the next working date. If the next working day happens to fall in the next month, this function will pick up only those contracts whose commission liquidation date, falls within the current processing month.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-2 (Cont.) Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Process Run during End of Day (EOD)	All Islamic LC contracts, for which you had specified automatic reinstatement, is reinstated when the batch process for the day, is run as part of BOD. The revolving details specified for the Islamic LC, in the Contract Main screen, are used to reinstate the contracts. The reinstatement is done subject to the Maximum Liability and the Maximum Islamic LC Amount allowed for the contract. The unutilized credit is removed from the contingent entries for non-cumulative Islamic LCs. For Islamic LCs that revolve in time, the Islamic LC Amount and the Maximum Liability Amount is reset based on the frequency of reinstatement (the value of frequency is either Days or Months depending on the 'Units' you specify for the contract). In the case of an Islamic LC, which revolves in value, the Islamic LC amount is reset when the current availability under the Islamic LC is reduced to zero. Thus, the reinstatement for Islamic LCs which revolve in value is done during the beginning of the day on the next day. It is done after the availment that makes the current availability to zero is made. When Islamic LCs are automatically reinstated, the necessary accounting entries and advices specified for the event code REIN (reinstatement), is passed automatically. As a part of the BOD process, this function reinstates all the revolving Islamic LCs (specified with automatic reinstatement), which needs to be reinstated. This is determined by two factors: • Whether the Islamic LC revolves in time and the next revolving date is less than or equal to the current date or • The Islamic LC revolves in value and the unavailed amount under the Islamic LC, is reduced to zero by the availments that were made. During EOD, the auto reinstatements scheduled for the next day is done under the following conditions: • The next day is a holiday • You have specified in the Branch Parameters table, that events scheduled for a holiday should be processed, on the working day before the holiday. If the next working day happens to fall in the next month, this function will pick up only Islamic LCs that have their next revolving date within the same month. The processing for such Islamic LCs is done during BOD on the next working day. All contracts that were automatically reinstated on a day will appear in the Activity Report for the day. The exceptions encountered during the reinstatement i.e. the contracts, which should have got reinstated, but were not, will figure in the Exception Report.
Automatic Closure of an Islamic LC	The Batch program when run as part of EOD processes the following events: • Automatic closure of contracts • Automatic accrual of commissions
Automatic Accrual of Commission	All Islamic LC contracts for which you had specified automatic closure and which are due for closure as of today, is automatically closed when the batch processes for the day is run. The accounting entries specified for the closure is passed.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-2 (Cont.) Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Liability Changes Schedule	When the batch process is run as part of EOD, the commission components of the active (authorized and not yet liquidated) Islamic LC contracts is accrued. Accrual is usually performed from the last liquidation date to the current date. Since commission is calculated for rounded periods, the final accrual on the expiry date is for the full rounded period. When the accrual is done, the relevant accounting entries for the accrued components is passed. The internal accounts is updated with the accrual related details. Typical accounting entries that are passed include: • Table 13-5 • Table 13-6 The level at which accrual entries are passed depends on your definition of branch parameters. To recall, the accrual entries is configured to be passed either at the contract level or the product level. Either way, the details of accruals for each contract is available in the Accrual Control List. The details of this report, the procedure for generation and the contents are discussed in the chapter on Reports. • LCEOD Batch enhanced to support Liability Change Schedule – To be processed during BOD – To be processed during previous EOD, if processing date is a holiday • Guarantees with Liability type as Time based to be processed : System will initiate Guarantee amendment with decrease in Contract amount when liability type is decrease System will initiate Guarantee amendment with increase in Contract amount when liability type is increase • New event LAMS introduced to initiate liability change. Processing will be similar to amendment AMND. • Maintenance: LAMS event should be defined for applicable products Accounting entries and Messages should be defined for LAMS event similar to AMND • Processing will be similar to amendment (AMND) : LAMS will be version creation event. Liability change will be without Beneficiary Confirmation. Commission will be computed for the increased/decreased (similar to amendment AMND) Limit Tracking for increased / decreased amount (similar to amendment AMND) Collateral will be collected or refunded (similar to amendment AMND) Amendment advice, GUA_AMND_INSTR (MT767) , will be generated Accounting entries will be generated based on maintenance Liability change schedules failed will be picked up during subsequent EODs.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-2 (Cont.) Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Memo Accrual of Commission	The memo accrual function does not generate any accounting entries nor does it mark the contracts as accrued. It only computes the accrual amount as it would be computed for a regular accrual and reports the accrued figures, without updating the accrual and P&L accounts. The commission accrued by the function, is reported in the Memo Accrual
Extend Confirmation	LCEOD Batch enhanced to support Revoke Confirmation Contigent Entries Reversal • To be processed during EOD • To be processed during next EOD, if processing date is a holiday • System will pick the contracts in the EOD which is eligible for revoke confirmation contingent entries reversal. • Contracts which are eligible is that confirmed contracts which is amended before expiry date and extend confirmation is not checked. • System also releases the limits for the confirmed amount. • New event RVCE introduced to initiate Reversal of Conntigent Entries. • Maintenance: • RVCE event should be defined for applicable products • Accounting entries should be defined for RVCE event • RVCE will be no version creation event. • Accounting entries will be generated based on maintenance • For failed contracts it will be picked up during subsequent EODs.
Auto Renewal of Open ended guarantees	Open ended guarantees with Auto Renewal enabled will be picked and extended on expiry date as part of LCEOD batch. If the Applicable rule is URDG, the new expiry date is defaulted as 3 years from current expiry date for the islamic guarantees and 3 years 30 days for islamic counter guarantees and 3 years for corresponding local guarantees. If the Applicable rule is not under URDG, the new expiry date is extended by the tenor amount from current expiry date for guarantees, counter guarantees and by local guarantee tenor for corresponding local guarantees. Auto Renewal will be processed similar to amendment of expiry date without beneficiary confirmation. AMND event will be triggered and MT767 will be generated with extension details in 72Z tag.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Figure 13-3 List of values- select functions

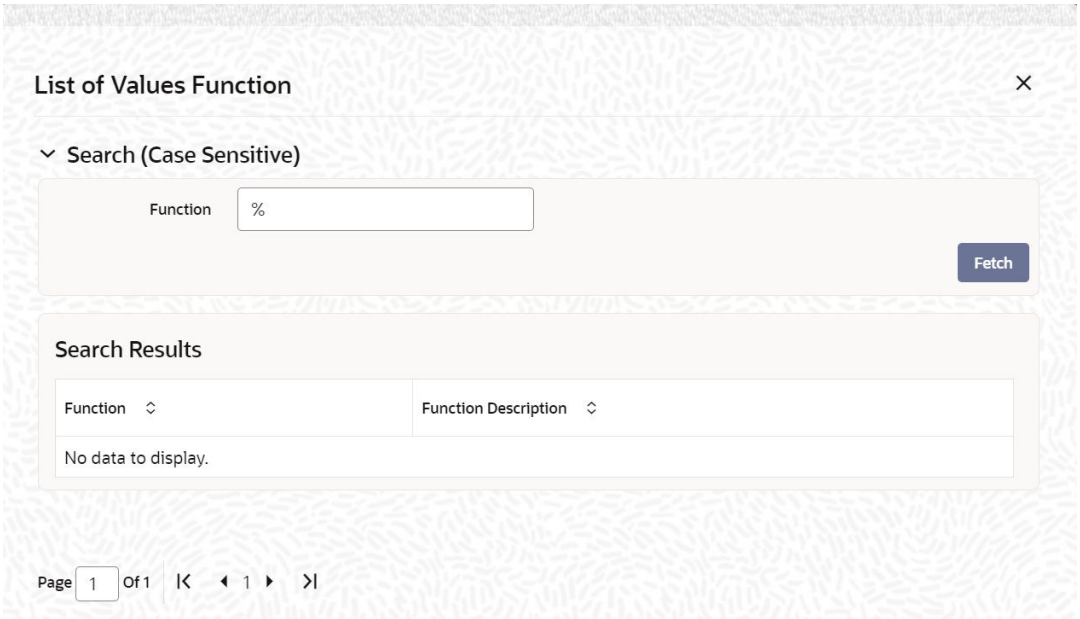


Table 13-3 Collected in Arrears

Role	Role Description	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COMM_ CUST_ACC	Customer account	Commission	Dr
CENC	Commission Earned Not Collected	Commission	Cr

Table 13-4 Collected in Advance

Role	Role Description	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COMM_ CUST_ACC	Customer account	Accrual amount	Dr
COMM_RIA	Commission Received in Advance	Accrual amount	Cr

Table 13-5 Automatic Accrual of Commission - Collected in Arrears

Role	Role Description	Role Type	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
CENC	Commission earned not collected.	Asset	Accrual amount	Dr
COMM_ INC	Commission earned.	P&L	Accrual amount	Cr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 13-6 Automatic Accrual of Commission - Collected in Advance

Role	Role Description	Role Type	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COMM_ RIA	Commission received in advance.	Asset	Accrual amount	Dr
COMM_ INC	Commission earned	P&L	Accrual amount	Cr

- Generating Tracers
- Intra Day Accruals

13.3.1 Generating Tracers

For an Islamic LC, the following types of tracers are generated:

- The acknowledgment tracer (sent to the advising bank when an import Islamic LC is issued and an acknowledgment is sought)
- The charge-commission tracer (sent to the party who has to bear the commission or charges for an Islamic LC that has been processed, pending the payment of the charge or commission)
- The confirmation tracer (sent to the confirming bank, seeking a letter of confirmation).
- Guarantee claim Tracers (Sent to the party mapped in the tracers till the Claim is in Lodged status)

These tracers are generated at a frequency, specified for the Islamic LC. On the day they have to be generated, the EOD processing: Tracer generation function will generate them. This function should be run after the End of Financial Input (EOFI) has been marked for the day.

13.3.2 Intra Day Accruals

The Intra Day Accruals is a batch process that computes accruals for different kinds of investments made by funds. This batch includes processing of fixed asset depreciation. The intra-day accruals / depreciation are performed only for those products for which accruals / depreciation cycle is due for the day. In case of inter-fund subscriptions, the system does not calculate the profit for the investing fund. This is an intra day process that is applicable only to fund branches.Intra Day Accruals work in line with the normal end of day accruals. Intra day accrual will process in the same manner as an End of Day (EOD) batch. In LC module, it is processed based on the branch level accrual parameters.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

14
Simulation

Below is the list of Simulation screens:

Table 14-1 Simulation Screens

Sr No.	Module	Function ID	Screen Name
1	Letters of Credit	LCDTRSIM	Letters of Credit Contract Simulation
2	Letters of Credit	LCDAMSIM	Letters of Credit Amendment Simulation
3	Letters of Credit	LCDTRFSM	Letters of Credit Transfer Simulation
4	Guarantees	LCDGUSIM	Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Contract Simulation
5	Guarantees	LCDGAMSM	Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Amendment Simulation
6	Guarantees	LCDGCLMS	Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Claim Lodging Simulation
7	Guarantees	LCDGCLPS	Guarantees and Standby Letters of Credit Claim Settlement Simulation

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15

Annexure A - Accounting Entries

This Annexure contains details of the suggested accounting entries that can be set up, for the Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) module of Oracle Banking Trade Finance. The annexure lists details of the suggested accounting entries, event-wise.

1. Islamic LC Events
2. Amount Tags
3. Accounting Roles
4. Event-Accounting Entries

- Islamic LC Events
- Amount Tags
- Accounting Roles
- Event-Accounting Entries

15.1 Islamic LC Events

The following is an exhaustive list of events that can take place during the lifecycle of an Islamic LC. In the subsequent paragraphs we shall examine the accounting entries for each of the events listed below.

Table 15-1 LC Events

Event Code	Event Description	Remarks
ACCR	Accrual (Of Commission)	All Types
AMND	Amendment	All Types
AOCF	Amendment from open to open and confirm	Import only
AATC	Amendment from Advice to Confirm	Export Only
APAC	Amend - Pre-advice to Adv & confirm	Export Only
APAD	Amendment from Pre-advice to advice	Export Only
AVAL	Availment	Only For Islamic LCs
BADV	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Advise	Export Islamic LC Only
BANC	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Advise And Confirm	Export Islamic LC Only
BCFM	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Confirm	Export Islamic LC Only
BISS	Booking Of An Islamic LC Or Guarantee Issue (Open or Open & Confirm)	Only For Import Islamic LC, Standby Islamic LC, Clean Islamic LC, Shipping Guarantee And Guarantee

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-1 (Cont.) LC Events

Event Code	Event Description	Remarks
BPRE	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Pre-Advise	Export Islamic LC Only
CALC	Periodic commission calculation	All types
CANC	Cancellation of an Islamic LC	All types
CLIQ	Commission Liquidation	All types
CLOS	Closure Of An Islamic LC Or Guarantee	All types
GCLM	Guarantee Claim	
RASN	Re-assign an Islamic LC contract	All types
RAVL	Reversal of Availment	All types
REIN	Reinstating An Islamic LC	Revolving Islamic LCs
ROPN	Reopening Of An Islamic LC	All Types
REVR	Reversal of an Islamic LC Contract	All types
REVE	Reversal of an Islamic LC Event	All Types
REIS	Reissue of Guarantee	Guarantee only
MLIQ	Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC commission	
WAIV	Waiver of components during manual liquidation	
GCLP	Guarantee Claim Settlement	Guarantees/ SBLCs
GCLM	Guarantee Claim Lodgement	Guarantees/ SBLCs
AASC	Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation	Export LC

Whenever a conversion of currency is involved, the conversion rate used is as follows:

- If the contracts currency is different from the takedown or maturity accounts and neither of them is in the local currency of your branch, the cross rate entered in the contract screen is picked up.
- If the contract currency is different from the contract account and one of them is in the local currency of your branch, the exchange rate is picked up from the currency table maintained in the Core services module of Oracle Banking Trade Finance. The FX spread is applied in a way that is favorable to your bank.

15.2 Amount Tags

Table 15-2 Amount Tags

Amount Tag	Description
AVAIL_SET_AMT	Availment amount paid
AVAIL_SET_AMTEQ	Availment amount received
COLL_AMNDAMT	Collateral amend amount Dr.
COLL_AMNDAMT_EQ	Collateral amend amount Cr.
COLLAMT_OS	Outstanding Collateral amount

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-2 (Cont.) Amount Tags

Amount Tag	Description
COLLAMT_OS_EQ	Outstanding Collateral amount
LC_AMND_AMT	Islamic LC Amendment Amount
LC_OS_AMT	Outstanding Islamic LC amount
LC_REIN_AMT	Outstanding Reinstatement Amount
LIAB_AMND_AMT	Liability Amendment Amount
ADV_LIAB_AMND_AMT	Liability Amendment Amount for advised Islamic LCs
CNF_LIAB_AMND_AMT	Liability Amendment Amount for confirmed Islamic LCs
LIAB_AMT	Liability Amount
LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Availment Liability Amount
ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Availment Liability Amount for advised Islamic LCs
CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Availment Liability Amount for confirmed Islamic LCs
LIAB_OS_AMT	Outstanding liability amount
ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Outstanding liability amount for advised Islamic LCs
CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Outstanding liability amount for confirmed Islamic LCs
LIAB_REIN_AMT	Reinstatement Amount
ADV_LIAB_REIN_AMT	Reinstatement Amount for advised Islamic LCs
CNF_LIAB_REIN_AMT	Reinstatement Amount for confirmed Islamic LCs
R	Receivable Charge
E	Receivable Commission
COLL_AMT_OBP	Initial Collateral amount
COLL_AMTEQ_OBP	Initial Collateral amount
COLL_AMNDAMT_OBP	Collateral amend amt Dr.
COLL_AMNDAMTEQ_OBP	Collateral amend amt Cr.
COLL_AMT_DECR_OBP	Decreased Collateral amount
COLL_AMT_DECREQ_OBP	Decreased Collateral amount equivalent
COLL_REFUND_OBP	Collateral Refund to Customer
COLLAMT_OS_OBP	Outstanding Collateral amount
COLLAMT_OSEQ_OBP	Outstanding Collateral amount
SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Silent confirmation liability outstanding amount
SCF_LIAB_AMND_AMT	Silent confirmation liability amend amount
SCF_LIAB_AVAL_AMT	Silent confirmation liability availment amount

15.3 Accounting Roles

The following is an exhaustive list that contains details of the Accounting Roles that are applicable to the Islamic LCs you can process at your bank.

Table 15-3 Accounting Roles

Accounting Role	Description	Role Type
IL_OCU	Outstanding Credit Unutilized	Contingent Liability
IL_OCU_OFFSET	Unutilized Credit Offset	Contingent Asset
IL_CNF	Confirmation of Islamic LC	Real GL

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-3 (Cont.) Accounting Roles

Accounting Role	Description	Role Type
IL_CNF_OFF	Confirmation of Islamic LC Offset	Real GL
IL_COLL_ACCT	Islamic LC Collateral account	Liability
AVL_DEBIT_ACCT	Availment Debit account	Real / Type ‘X’
AVL_CREDIT_ACCT	Availment Credit account	Real / Type ‘X’
CHG_CUST_ACC	Customer Accounts	Real/Type ‘X’
COMM_CUST_ACC	Customer Accounts	Real/Type ‘X’
COLL_CUST_ACC	Customer Accounts	Real/Type ‘X’
TAX_CUST_ACC	Customer Accounts	Real/Type ‘X’
COMM_INC	Commission Income	Income
COMM_REC	Commission earned not collected	Asset
COMM_PAY	Commission collected in advance	Liability
CHG_INC	Charge Income	Income
CHG_REC	Charge receivable	Asset
CHG_EXP	Charge expense	Expense
CHG_PAY	Charge payable	Liability
TAX_PAY	Tax payable	Liability
TAX_EXP	Tax expense	Expense
COL_OBP_ACC	Obligor Account	Real/Type “X”
LI_SCF	Silent Confirmation of LI	Real GL
LI_SCF_OFF	Silent Confirmation of LI Offset	Real GL
REVENUE_SHARING	Revenue sharing GL	Contingent GL

15.4 Event-Accounting Entries

In this topic we will discuss the suggested accounting entries that should be generated for each event in the life cycle of an Islamic LC.

- BISS: Booking of an import Islamic LC
- Accounting Roles for Transfer of Charge & Commission Components from Islamic LC to BC
- Accounting Entries for Transfer of Charge & Commission Components from Islamic LC to BC
- Collateral Bridge Accounting Role
- AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC
- CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC / Guarantee
- REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC / Guarantee
- BADV: Advising an Islamic LC
- BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC
- BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC
- BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC
- AMND: Amendment

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- AOCF: Amendment from Open to Open and Confirm
- APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice
- APAC: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice and Confirm
- REVR: Reversal of an Islamic LC Contract
- REVE: Reversal of an Islamic LC Event
- ACCR: Accrual of Commission
- CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date
- CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission
- ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC
- CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC
- TRGN: Generation of Tracers
- AATC: Amendment from Advice to Confirm
- RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC
- RAVL: Reversal of Availment
- MLIQ: Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC commission
- WAIV: Waiver of Components during Manual Liquidation
- GCLP: Guarantee Claim Settlement
- AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation
- TRAM: Transfer Amendment
- RTRA: Reinstatement of Transferred LC Amount

15.4.1 BISS: Booking of an import Islamic LC

- Liability
- Collateral
- Charges
- Commission

15.4.1.1 Liability

Table 15-4 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_AMT	Cr

15.4.1.2 Collateral

Booking (From Customer Account)

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-5 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_OS	Dr
LC_COLL_ACC	COLL_AMT_OSEQ	Cr
COL_DEPOSIT_ACC	COLL_AVLAMTEQ	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AVLAMT	Cr

Table 15-6 Booking (From Customer Account with split details)

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_S01	Dr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_S02	Dr
LC_COLL_ACC	COLL_AMTEQ	Cr

Booking (From Customer and Obligor Account)

Table 15-7 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMTEQ	Cr
COL_OBP_ACC	COLL_AMT_OBP	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMTEQ_OBP	Cr

Here, the transfer of the collateral from the customer onto the collateral deposit account/GL is assumed to be done before the booking of the Islamic LC.

15.4.1.3 Charges

Booking (From Customer Account)

Table 15-8 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
CHG_CUST_ACC	CHARGES	Dr
CHG_INC	CHARGES	Cr

Charges Booking (From Customer Account and Split is checked)

Table 15-9 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
CHG_CUST_ACC	CHG_LIQD_S01	Dr
CHG_CUST_ACC	CHG_LIQD_S02	Dr
CHG_INC	CHG_LIQD	Dr

Booking (From Receivable Account)

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-10 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
CHG_REC	CHARGES	Dr
CHG_INC	CHARGES	Cr

On Receipt (For booking Under Receivable Account)

Table 15-11 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
CHG_CUST_ACC	CHARGES	Dr
CHG_REC	CHARGES	Cr

In Advance (Non - Accrual - On Booking and Split is checked)

Table 15-12 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_CUST_ACC	COMM_LIQD_S01	Dr
COMM_CUST_ACC	COMM_LIQD_S02	Dr
COMM_INC	COMM_LIQD	Dr

15.4.1.4 Commission

In Advance (Non - Accrual - On Booking)

Table 15-13 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_CUST_ACC	COMMSN	Dr
COMM_INC	COMMSN	Cr

In Advance (Non-Accrual - On Booking)

Table 15-14 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_CUST_ACC	COMMSN	Dr
COMM_INC	COMMSN	Cr

In Advance (Accrual - On Booking)

Table 15-15 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_CUST_ACC	COMMSN	Dr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-15 (Cont.) Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_PAY	COMMSN	Cr

In Advance (Month -End Accrual)

Table 15-16 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_PAY	COMMSN	Dr
COMM_INC	COMMSN	Cr

In Arrears (Non - Accrual - On Booking)

No Entries For Booking

In Arrears (Non - Accrual - On Booking)

Table 15-17 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_RIA	COMMSN	Dr
COMM_INC	COMMSN	Cr

In Arrears (Accrual - On Booking)

No Entries for Booking

In Arrears (Month - End Accrual)

Table 15-18 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_REC	ACCR_COMMSN	Dr
COMM_INC	ACCR_COMMSN	Cr

In Arrears (On Receipt of Commission)

Table 15-19 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COMM_CUST_ACC	COMMSN	Dr
COMM_REC	COMMSN	Cr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15.4.2 Accounting Roles for Transfer of Charge & Commission Components from Islamic LC to BC

Here, Islamic LC_COMM component and Islamic LC_CHG component are defined in the Islamic LC product where the Collect Islamic LC Commission in Bills option is checked

Table 15-20 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Description
LC_CHG_RECV	Islamic LC Charges Receivable
LC_COMM_RECV	Islamic LC Commission Receivable

15.4.3 Accounting Entries for Transfer of Charge & Commission Components from Islamic LC to BC

Table 15-21 Accounting Entries

Dr/Cr	Accounting role	Amount tag propagated from Islamic LC
Dr	LC_COMM_RECV	LC_COMM_LIQD
Cr	LC_COMM_INC	LC_COMM_LIQD
Dr	LC_CHG_RECV	LC_CHG_LIQD
Cr	LC_CHG_INC	LC_CHG_LIQD

In case of Islamic LC products you have to set up accounting to liquidate commission and charges onto the income GL from receivable GL.

If the accounting role for the DR leg of the accounting entries is setup as customer role, the same is recovered from the customer and gets tracked for transfer to Bills. If realization of income is not expected to happen on CLIQ, you need not setup any accounting entries in the CLIQ event and the income entries can be setup from Bills. The system allows Islamic LC products to be saved without any accounting entries defined in the CLIQ event if the options ‘Collect Islamic LC commission in Bills’ and ‘Collect Islamic LC charges in Bills’ for all the associated Charge and commission components are checked.

15.4.4 Collateral Bridge Accounting Role

Table 15-22 Accounting Entries

Accounting role	Description	Accounting role
LC_BC_COLL_BRIDGE	Collateral bridge between Islamic LC and Bills	LC_BC_COLL_BRIDGE

This accounting role is used to transfer the collaterals from the Islamic LC onto the Bill. This role maps onto the GL/Account maintained as a part of the Islamic LC product preference.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15.4.5 AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC

Liability

Table 15-23 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Dr/ Cr
IL_OCU	AVAIL_SET_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	AVAIL_SET_AMTEQ	Dr
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF_OFF	CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr

Collateral (If Any)

Table 15-24 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMNDAMT	Cr
LC_COLL_ACCT	COLL_AMNDAMTEQ	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AVLAMT	Dr
LC_BC_COLL_BRIDGE	COLL_AVLAMTEQ	Cr

Table 15-25 Booking (Collateral with split details)

Role	Amount Tag	Debit/Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AVALAMT_S01	Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AVALAMT_S02	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACC	COLL_AVALAMTEQ	Dr

15.4.6 CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC / Guarantee

Liability

Table 15-26 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_CNF_OFFSET	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-27 Accounting Entries(with Split Details)

Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS_S01	Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS_S02	Cr
LC_COLL_ACCT	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Dr

Collateral

Booking (From Customer Account)

Table 15-28 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS	Cr
LC_COLL_ACCT	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OS	Dr
COL_DEPOSIT_ACC	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Cr

Booking (From Customer and OBP account)

Table 15-29 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OS	Dr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OS_OBP	Dr
COLL_OBP_ACC	COLLAMT_OSEQ_OBP	Cr

15.4.7 REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC / Guarantee

Table 15-30 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_REIN_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_REIN_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_REIN_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_REIN_AMT	Cr
IL_CNF	CNF_ LIAB_REIN_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF_OFF	CNF_ LIAB_REIN_AMT	Cr

15.4.8 BADV: Advising an Islamic LC

Booking Islamic LC Advice

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-31 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

Charges

As given in event BISS.

Commission

As given in event BISS.

15.4.9 BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC

Liability

Table 15-32 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_AMT	Cr

Collateral (If Any)

Table 15-33 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_OS	Cr
LC_COLL_ACCT	COLL_AMT_OSEQ	Dr

Charges

As given in event BISS.

Commission

As given in event BISS.

15.4.10 BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC

None

15.4.11 BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC

Table 15-34 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF_OFFSET	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15.4.12 AMND: Amendment

Liability

Reverse all the previous entries for booking. Re-book entries based on BISS or BADV or BPRE or BANC

Table 15-35 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF_OFFSET	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

Collateral

From Customer and OBP account

Table 15-36 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COL_DEPOSIT_ACC	COLL_AMNDAMTEQ	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMNDAMT	Cr
COL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMNDAMT	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMNDAMTEQ	Cr
COL_OBP_ACC	COLL_AMNDAMT_OBP	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMNDAMTEQ_OBP	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMT_DECR	Dr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_DECREQ	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMT_DECR_OBP	Dr
COLL_OBP_ACC	COLL_AMT_DECREQ_OBP	Cr

In case of decrease of collateral amount upon amendment, the system attributes the amount tags with negative amounts.

Table 15-37 Accounting Entries (with Split Details)

Role	Amount tag	Dr/Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMNDAMT_S01	Dr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMNDAMT_S02	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMNDAMTEQ	Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_DECR_S01	Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLL_AMT_DECR_S02	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AMT_DECREQ	Dr

15.4.13 AOCF: Amendment from Open to Open and Confirm

None

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

15.4.14 APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice

None

15.4.15 APAC: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice and Confirm

Same as For BISS

15.4.16 REVR: Reversal of an Islamic LC Contract

Reverse out all the accounting entries booked for the contract till date.

15.4.17 REVE: Reversal of an Islamic LC Event

Reverse the accounting entries of the last version creating event.

15.4.18 ACCR: Accrual of Commission

See Commissions under event BISS.

15.4.19 CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date

No entries due to commission calculation.

15.4.20 CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission

See Commissions under event BISS.

Table 15-38 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COMM_CUST_ACC	<Component>_LQRS	Dr
REVENUE_SHARING	<Component>_LQRS	Cr

15.4.21 ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC

Liability

Table 15-39 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF_OFFSET	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Collateral

Booking (From Customer Account)

Table 15-40 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS	Dr
LC_COLL_ACCT	COLLAMT_OS_EQ	Cr

Booking (From Customer and Obligor Account)

Table 15-41 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Cr
COL_OBP_ACC	COLLAMT_OS_OBP	Dr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OSEQ_OBP	Cr

15.4.22 CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC

Table 15-42 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_CNF_OFFSET	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr

Table 15-43 Accounting Entries (Collateral with Split Details)

Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS_S01	Cr
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OS_S02	Cr
LC_COLL_ACCT	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Dr

Collateral

From Customer and Obligor account

Table 15-44 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OS	Dr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-44 (Cont.) Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
COLL_CUST_ACC	COLLAMT_OSEQ	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLLAMT_OS_OBP	Dr
COLL_OBP_ACC	COLLAMT_OSEQ_OBP	Cr

15.4.23 TRGN: Generation of Tracers

None

15.4.24 AATC: Amendment from Advice to Confirm

Table 15-45 Accounting Entries

Role	Amount Tag	Debit / Credit
IL_OCU	LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
IL_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
IL_CNF_OFFSET	CNF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

15.4.25 RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC

None

15.4.26 RAVL: Reversal of Availment

Fetch entries for last availment event and reverse them.

15.4.27 MLIQ: Manual Liquidation of Islamic LC commission

Fetch entries for last availment event and reverse them.

15.4.28 WAIV: Waiver of Components during Manual Liquidation

The amount tags for the WAI event are created upon creation of the charge and commission components. Consider Islamic LC_CHG and Islamic LC_COMM as charge and commission components defined in the system. The corresponding amount tags will be as follows:

Table 15-46 Accounting Entries

Amount Tag	Description	Amount Tag
LC_CHG_WAIV	LC Charge being waived	LC_CHG_WAIV
LC_COMM_WAIV	LC Commission being waived	LC_COMM_WAIV

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Accounting Entries for the Waiver event

Table 15-47 Accounting Entries

Dr/Cr	Accounting role	Amount tag propagated from Islamic LC
Dr	LC_COMM_RECV	LC_COMM_WAIV
Cr	LC_COMM_INC	LC_COMM_WAIV
Dr	LC_CHG_RECV	LC_CHG_WAIV
Cr	LC_CHG_INC	LC_CHG_WAIV

These accounting entries are maintained if receivable accounting entries have been maintained on the CLIQ event of the Islamic LC. The amounts for waiver will be displayed as negative amounts. Partial waivers are not allowed.

15.4.29 GCLP: Guarantee Claim Settlement

The following accounting entries are maintained for GCLP event.

Table 15-48 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
CLAIM_DEBIT_ACCT	CLAIM_CUST_AMT	Dr
CLAIM_SUSPENSE	CLAIM_CUST_AMT	Cr
CLAIM_CREDIT_ACCT	CLAIM_SETTLE_AMT	Cr
CLAIM_SUSPENSE	CLAIM_SETTLE_AMT	Dr
LC_OCU	CLAIM_SETTLE_AMT	Cr
LC_OCU_OFFSET	CLAIM_SETTLE_AMT	Dr
CLAIM_SUSPENSE	COLL_AVALAMT	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_AVALAMT	Dr
COL_CUST_ACC	COLL_REFUND	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_REFUND	Dr
COL_OBP_ACC	COLL_REFUND_OBP	Cr
LCCOLL_INT_ACCT	COLL_REFUND_OBP	Dr
CLAIM_DEBIT_ACCT	CLAIM_CUST_AMT_FX	Dr
CLAIM_SUSPENCE	CLAIM_CUST_AMT_FX	Cr

15.4.30 AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation

Accounting entry of AASC event with contingent entries with new amount tags and the reversal entry of ADV

Table 15-49 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LI_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
LI_OCU	ADV_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr
LI_SCF	SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-49 (Cont.) Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LI_SCF_OFF	SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

Accounting entry of AMND event with operation code as SCF.

Table 15-50 Accounting Entries of AMND event when Silent confirmation amount is increased (Increase of contract amount by enabling Extend Confirmation)

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LC_SCF	SCF_LIAB_INCR_AMT	Dr
LC_SCF_OFF	SCF_LIAB_INCR_AMT	Cr

Table 15-51 Accounting Entries of AMND event when Silent confirmation amount is decreased (Decrease of contract amount by enabling Extend Confirmation)

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LC_SCF	SCF_LIAB_DECR_AMT	Dr
LC_SCF_OFF	SCF_LIAB_DECR_AMT	Cr

Table 15-52 Accounting Entries of AMND event when Silent Unconfirmation amount is Increased (Increase of contract amount without enabling Extend Confirmation)

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LC_SCF	USCF_LIAB_INCR_AMT	Dr
LC_SCF_OFF	USCF_LIAB_INCR_AMT	Cr

Accounting entry of AVAL event with operation code as SCF.

Table 15-53 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LI_SCF_OFF	SCF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr
LI_SCF	SCF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr

Accounting entry of CLOS/CANC event with operation code as SCF

Table 15-54 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LI_SCF_OFF	SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
LI_SCF	SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

Accounting entry of ROPN event with operation code as SCF

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 15-55 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LI_SCF	SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Dr
LI_SCF_OFF	SCF_LIAB_OS_AMT	Cr

15.4.31 TRAM: Transfer Amendment

Table 15-56 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LC_OCU	AVAIL_SET_AMT	Cr
LC_OCU_OFFSET	AVAIL_SET_AMT	Dr
LC_OCU	ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr
LC_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr
LC_CNF_OFF	CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr
LC_CNF	CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr

15.4.32 RTRA: Reinstatement of Transferred LC Amount

Table 15-57 Accounting Entries

Accounting Role	Amount Tag	Dr/Cr
LC_OCU	AVAIL_SET_AMT	Dr
LC_OCU_OFFSET	AVAIL_SET_AMT	Cr
LC_OCU	ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr
LC_OCU_OFFSET	ADV_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr
LC_CNF_OFF	CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Cr
LC_CNF	CNF_LIAB_AVAIL_AMT	Dr

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16

Annexure B – Events and Advices

This annexure contains details of the suggested messages that can be generated for the Islamic Letters of Credit (Islamic LC) module. The annexure lists details of the following suggested messages event-wise:

1. Islamic LC Events
2. Islamic LC Messages
3. Generate Multiple Copies of the Islamic LC Instrument
4. Generate Fax 700/707 LC Confirmation Mail Message Copy to Counterparty
5. Islamic LC Event - Messages

- Islamic LC Events
- Islamic LC Messages
- Generate Multiple Copies of the Islamic LC Instrument
- Generate Fax 700/707 LC Confirmation Mail Message Copy to Counterparty
- Islamic LC Event - Messages

16.1 Islamic LC Events

The following is an exhaustive list of events that can take place during the lifecycle of an Islamic LC. In the subsequent paragraphs we shall examine the messages for each of the events listed below.

Table 16-1 Events

Event Code	Event Description	Remarks
ACCR	Accrual (Of Commission)	All Types
AMND	Amendment	All Types
AOCF	Amendment from open to open and confirm	Import only
APAC	Amend - Pre-advice to Adv & confirm	Export Only
APAD	Amendment from Pre-advice to advice	Export Only
AVAL	Availment	Only For Islamic LC's
BADV	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Advise	Export Islamic LC Only
BANC	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Advise And Confirm	Export Islamic LC Only
BCFM	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Confirm	Export Islamic LC Only
BISS	Booking Of An Islamic LC Or Guarantee Issue (Open or Open & Confirm)	Only For Import Islamic LC, Standby Islamic LC, Clean Islamic LC, Shipping Guarantee And Guarantee

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 16-1 (Cont.) Events

Event Code	Event Description	Remarks
BPRE	Booking Of An Islamic LC With Operation Pre-Advise	Export Islamic LC Only
CALC	Periodic commission calculation	All types
CANC	Cancellation of an Islamic LC	All Types
CLIQ	Commission Liquidation	All Types
CLOS	Closure Of An Islamic LC Or Guarantee	All Types
RASN	Re-assign an Islamic LC contract	All types
RAVL	Reversal of Availment	All types
REIN	Reinstating An Islamic LC	Revolving Islamic LC's
ROPN	Reopening Of An Islamic LC	All Types
REVR	Reversal of an Islamic LC Contract	All types
REVE	Reversal of an Islamic LC Event	All Types
TRGN	Generation of tracers	All types
REIS	Reissue of Guarantee	Guarantee Only
AASC	Amendment from Advice to Silent Confirmation	Export Only

16.2 Islamic LC Messages

The following is an exhaustive list of events, related advices and the Data Tags that are supported for LC Module.

Table 16-2 Messages

Message	Mail	Telex	SWIFT	From	To
L/C Instrument	Y	Y	Y	ISB	ABK/BEN
Amendment Instrument	Y	Y	Y	ISB	ABK/BEN
Guarantee Instrument	Y	Y	Y	ISB	ABK
Guarantee Amendment	Y	Y	Y	ISB	ABK
Debit Advice	Y	Y	Y	ISB /ABK	APP/BEN
Credit Advice (Generated automatically on Reversal)	Y	Y	Y	ISB /ABK	APP/BEN
Charge Claim Advice	Y	Y	Y	ISB /ABK	APP/BEN
Cash Collateral Advices	Y	Y	Y	ISB /ABK	APP/ISB
Reimbursement Advice	Y	Y	Y	ISB	RIB
Cancellation Advice	Y	N	N	ISB/ABK	ABK/APP/BEN/RIB/ATB

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 16-2 (Cont.) Messages

Message	Mail	Telex	SWIFT	From	To
Pre Advice Telex: MT-705	Y	Y	Y	ISB	ABK/BEN
Reimbursement Advice Telex: MT-756	Y	Y	Y	ISB	ABK/BEN
ACK of an Import LC: MT-730	Y	Y	Y	ABK	ISB
ACK of Receipt Of Amendment To LC	Y	N	N	ABK	ISB
Authorization to Reimburse: MT-740	Y	Y	Y	ISB	REB
Amendment to Authorization to Reimburse: MT-740	Y	Y	Y	ISB	REB
When No ABK	Y	N	N	ISB	BEN
Pre-Advise To BEN	Y	N	N	ABK	BEN
Change From Pre-Advice To Advice	Y	N	N	ABK	ATB/ BEN
Change From Pre-Advice To Advice And Confirm	Y	N	N	ABK	ATB/BEN
Change From Advice To Advice And Confirm	Y	N	N	ABK	ATB/ BEN
Amending An Import Credit, No ABK	Y	N	N	ISB/ABK	BEN
Amending An Export Credit Previously Advised Or Confirmed, Via ATB	Y	N	N	ABK	ATB
Acknowledgment Tracer	Y	N	N	ISB	ABK
Confirmation Tracer	Y	N	N	ISB	ABK
Charges And Commission Tracer	Y	N	N	Issuing/ABK	APP/BEN/ABK/ATB/ISB
Insurance Advice	Y	N	N	ISB	Insurance Company
Fax 700/707/LC confirmation Mail Message to counterparty	Y	N	N	ISB	Counterparty
MT799	Y	N	Y	ABK - Advising Bank (SWIFT) ISB - Issuing Bank(SWIFT) APB - Applicant Bank (MAIL)	ISB - Issuing Bank APB - Applicant Bank APP - Applicant
Shipping Guarantee Instrument	Y	N	N	ISB	BEN

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 16-2 (Cont.) Messages

Message	Mail	Telex	SWIFT	From	To
Silent Confirmation Advice	Y	N	N	ABK	BEN

16.3 Generate Multiple Copies of the Islamic LC Instrument

You can generate multiple copies of the Islamic LC instrument with the same data and specify different headers for each of the copy that you generate. To generate multiple copies, you need to maintain specific details in the following screens:

1. **Format File Maintenance Screen**
   To generate multiple copies, you need to maintain a file format that will be used for the message and advices. For the LC_Instrument advice, you must associate the 'NUMCOPIESX' advice tag, where X denotes the number of the copy that is generated. Here you can specify different headers for each copy.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Refer to the Maintaining Advice Formats chapter of Messaging System user manual for the procedure to define file formats.

2. Customer Address Maintenance Screen
   In this screen, you need to specify the number of copies allowed for the message type LC_Instrument. The system generates the number of copies specified for the instrument at the time of authorization for the customer address maintained in the screen.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Refer to the Maintaining Addresses for a Customer chapter of Messaging System user manual for maintaining addresses for the customer.

3. Outgoing Message Browser
   When you are generating multiple copies of the original message, the system classifies the outgoing message as original or a copy in the Outgoing Message Browser.

   The 'Copy' box indicates whether the outgoing message is a copy and in the 'No of Copy' field the number of that message is also displayed. This will help you keep count of the number of copies that is generated for the same message.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Refer to the Processing Outgoing Messages chapter in Messaging System user manual for further details on the Outgoing Message Browser.

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.4 Generate Fax 700/707 LC Confirmation Mail Message Copy to Counterparty

You can generate multiple copies of the Islamic LC instrument with the same data and specify different headers for each of the copy that you generate. To generate multiple copies, you need to maintain specific details in the following screens:

To do this, you need to maintain specific details in the following screens:

1. Format File Maintenance Screen
   To generate Fax 700/707 LC confirmation Mail Message copy, you need to maintain a file format that will be used for the message and advices. For the LC_Instrument advice, you must associate the 'FAX_DUPIslamic LCATE' advice tag, which carries the address of the receiver and a copy of the original message.

   The advice format vs. message type mapping for the new message types should be as follows.

Table 16-3 Fax 700/707

Module	Message type	Media
Islamic LC	LC_INSTRUMENT_FAX	FAX
Islamic LC	LC_AMND_INSTR_FAX	FAX

> **Note**
>
> Refer to the Maintaining Advice Formats chapter of Messaging System user manual for the procedure to define file formats.

2. Customer Address Maintenance Screen
   In this screen, you need to specify the format for the message type LC_INSTR_COPY and LC_AM_INST_COPY. The system generates the fax message for Islamic LC confirmation for the customer address maintained in the screen.

   The customer address maintenance for media FAX should be as follows:

Table 16-4 FAX 700/707

Module	Message Type	Format
Islamic LC	LC_INSTR_COPY	FAX_DUPIslamic LCATE
Islamic LC	LC_AM_INST_COPY	FAX_DUPIslamic LCATE

> **Note**
>
> Refer to the Maintaining Addresses for a Customer chapter of Messaging System user manual for maintaining addresses for the customer.

Party Type Abbreviations:

The list of the parties that can be involved in an Islamic LC is as under:

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Table 16-5 Parties

Code	Party Type
APP	Applicant
ACC	Accountee
ISB	Issuing Bank
ABK	Advising Bank
BEN	Beneficiary
ATB	Advise through bank
RIB	Reimbursing Bank
REIS	Reissue of Guarantee

16.5 Islamic LC Event - Messages

This section contains the following topics:

1. BISS: Booking of an Import Islamic LC/ Islamic Shipping Guarantee
2. AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC
3. CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC/Guarantee
4. REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC/Guarantee
5. BADV: Advising an Islamic LC
6. BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC
7. BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC
8. BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC
9. REIS: Reissue of Guarantee
10. AMND: Islamic LC Amendment
11. REVR: Reversal of Contract
12. REVE: Reversal of Event
13. ACCR: Accrual of Commission
14. CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date
15. CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission
16. ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC
17. TRGN: End of Day Check for Tracers
18. CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC
19. APAC: Amendment from Pre-Advice to Advice and Confirm
20. APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice
21. GCEX: Guarantee Claim Extension
22. RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC
23. RAVL: Reversal of Availment
24. CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation
25. Advice Generated for the Insurance Company

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

26. Advice Generated for the Counterparty
27. AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation
28. AMNV: Invitation of Amendment Confirmation

- BISS: Booking of an Import Islamic LC/ Islamic Shipping Guarantee
- AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC
- CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC/Guarantee
- REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC/Guarantee
- BADV: Advising an Islamic LC
- BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC
- BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC
- BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC
- REIS: Reissue of Guarantee
- AMND: Islamic LC Amendment
- REVR: Reversal of Contract
- REVE: Reversal of Event
- ACCR: Accrual of Commission
- CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date
- CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission
- ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC
- TRGN: End of Day Check for Tracers
- CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC
- APAC: Amendment from Pre-Advice to Advice and Confirm
- APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice
- GCEX: Guarantee Claim Extension
- RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC
- RAVL: Reversal of Availment
- CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation
- Advice Generated for the Insurance Company
- Advice Generated for the Counterparty
- AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation
- AMNV: Invitation of Amendment Confirmation
- AREJ: Rejection Of Amendment Confirmation

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.1 BISS: Booking of an Import Islamic LC/ Islamic Shipping Guarantee

Table 16-6 BISS: Booking of an Import Islamic LC/Islamic Shipping Guarantee

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
BISS	LC_REIMB_ADV	ISB	RIB
BISS	ISB_BEN_CL	ISB	BEN
BISS	LC_AMND_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN
BISS	LC_CHC_MSG	ISB	ABK
BISS	LC_CASH_COL_ADV	ISB/ABK	APP/ISB
BISS	LC_DR_MSG	ISB	APP/ABK
BISS	LC_INSTRUMENT	ISB	ABK/BEN
BISS	GUARANTEE	ISB	ABK/BEN
BISS	LC_REIMB_ADV	ISB	ABK
BISS	LC_RIM_MSG	ISB	RIB
BISS	LC_INSTR_COPY	ISB	BEN
BISS	SG_INSTRUMENT	ISB	BEN

16.5.2 AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC

Table 16-7 AVAL: Availment under Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
AVAL	LC_CHC_MSG	ABK	ISB
AVAL	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN

16.5.3 CLOS: Closure of an Islamic LC/Guarantee

None

16.5.4 REIN: Reinstatement of an Islamic LC/Guarantee

Table 16-8 REIN:Reinstatement of an Islamic LC/Guarantee

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
REIN	LC_AMND_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN
REIN	LC_CHC_MSG	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN
REIN	LC_DR_MSG	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN
REIN	LC_INSTRUMENT	ISB	ABK/BEN

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.5 BADV: Advising an Islamic LC

Table 16-9 BADV:Advising an Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
BADV	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB
BADV	LC_CHC_MSG	ABK	ISB
BADV	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN
BADV	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB

16.5.6 BCFM: Confirming an Islamic LC

Table 16-10 BCFM:Confirming an Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
BCFM	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB
BCFM	LC_CHC_MSG	ABK	ISB
BCFM	LC_CASH_COL_ADV	ABK	ISB
BCFM	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN
BCFM	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB

16.5.7 BPRE: Pre-advising an Islamic LC

Table 16-11 BPRE:Pre-advising an Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
BPRE	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB
BPRE	LC_ATB_MSG	ABK	ATB
BPRE	LC_CHC_MSG	ISB/ABK	ABK/ISB
BPRE	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB
BPRE	LC_PA_MSG	ISB	ABK
BPRE	PADV_CL	ABK	ATB
BPRE	PADV_CL	ABK	BEN

16.5.8 BANC: Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC

Table 16-12 BANC:Advising and Confirming an Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
BANC	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB
BANC	LC_CHC_MSG	ABK	ISB
BANC	LC_CASH_COL_ADV	ABK	ISB
BANC	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN
BANC	LC_ACK_ADVICE	ABK	ISB

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.9 REIS: Reissue of Guarantee

Table 16-13 REIS:Reissue of Guarantee

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
REIS	LC_INSTRUMENT	ISB	ABK/BEN
REIS	GUARANTEE	ISB	ABK/BEN
REIS	LC_PRE_ADVICE	ABK	ISB

16.5.10 AMND: Islamic LC Amendment

Table 16-14 AMND:Islamic LC Amendment

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
AMND	LC_AMD_MSG	ISB	ABK
AMND	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	ATB
AMND	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	BEN
AMND	LC_ACK_AMND	ABK	ISB
AMND	LC_CASH_COL_ADV	ABK	ISB
AMND	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN
AMND	LC_AMD_AUTH_REB	ISB	RIB
AMND	AMD_IMP_CR	ISB	BEN
AMND	GUA_AMD_INSTR	ISB	ABK
AMND	LC_AMND_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN
AMND	LC_CHC_MSG	ISB/ABK	ISB/ABK
AMND	LC_DR_MSG	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN
AMND	LC_INSTRUMENT	ISB	ABK/BEN
AMND	GUA_AMD_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN
AMND	LC_REIMB_ADV	ISB	ABK
AMND	LC_REIMB_ADV	ISB	RIB
AMND	LC_AM_INST_COPY	ISB	BEN
AMND	LC_BEN_RESPONSE	ABK	ISB
AMND	GUA_BEN_RESP	ABK	ISB

16.5.11 REVR: Reversal of Contract

Table 16-15 REVR:Reversal of Contract

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
REVR	LC_CNC_MADV	ISB	APP/ABK
REVR	LC_CR_MSG	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN

16.5.12 REVE: Reversal of Event

None

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.13 ACCR: Accrual of Commission

None

16.5.14 CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation Date

None

16.5.15 CLIQ: Liquidation of Commission

Table 16-16 CLIQ:Liquidation of Commission

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
CLIQ	LC_DR_MSG	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN

16.5.16 ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC

Table 16-17 ROPN: Reopening of an Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
ROPN	LC_CHC_MSG	ISB/ABK	ISB/ABK
ROPN	LC_DR_MSG	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN
ROPN	LC_INSTRUMENT	ISB	ABK/BEN
ROPN	GUARANTEE	ISB	ABK/BEN

16.5.17 TRGN: End of Day Check for Tracers

Table 16-18 TRGN: End of Day Check for Tracers

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
CHTR	ACK_TRACER	ISB	ABK
CHTR	CHG_COM_TRACE R	ISB/ABK	APP/BEN/ABK/ATB/ISB
CHTR	CON_TRACER	ISB	ABK
	GUA_CLM_TRACE R	ISB	APP/BEN

16.5.18 CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC

Table 16-19 CANC: Cancellation of an Islamic LC

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
CANC	LC_CANCEL_ADV	ISB	ABK/APP/BEN/RIB
CANC	LC_CANCEL_ADV	ABK	BEN/ABK/ATB/RIB
CANC	LC_BEN_RESPONSE	ABK	ISB
CANC	GUA_BEN_RESP	ABK	ISB

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.19 APAC: Amendment from Pre-Advice to Advice and Confirm

Table 16-20 APAC: Amendment from Pre-Advice to Advice and Confirm

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
APAC	PADV_TO_ADVCO N	ABK	ATB
APAC	PADV_TO_ADVCO N	ABK	BEN
APAC	PADV_TO_ADVCO N	ABK	ATB
APAC	PADV_TO_ADVCO N	ABK	BEN
APAC	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	ATB
APAC	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	BEN
APAC	LC_ACK_AMND	ABK	ISB
APAC	LC_CASH_COL_A DV	ABK	ISB
APAC	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN

16.5.20 APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice

Table 16-21 APAD: Amendment from Pre-advice to Advice

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
APAD	LC_AMD_MSG	ISB	ABK
APAD	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	ATB
APAD	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	BEN
APAD	LC_ACK_AMND	ABK	ISB
APAD	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN
AATC	LC_AMD_MSG	ISB	ABK
AATC	ADV_TO_ADVCON	ABK	ATB
AATC	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	ATB
AATC	AMD_EXP_CR	ABK	BEN
AATC	LC_ACK_AMND	ABK	ISB
AATC	LC_DR_MSG	ABK	BEN

16.5.21 GCEX: Guarantee Claim Extension

Table 16-22 GCEX: Guarantee Claim Extension

EVENT	Message/Advice	From	To
GCEX	GUA_AMD_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN

16.5.22 RASN: Reassign an Islamic LC

None

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.23 RAVL: Reversal of Availment

None

16.5.24 CALC: Periodic Commission Calculation

None

16.5.25 Advice Generated for the Insurance Company

The **LC_INSURANCEADV** message is generated by the bank and sent to the Insurance Company at the time of Opening (BISS) and Amendment (AMND) of Islamic LC contract.

An insurance company advice gives details of the deal.

INSURANCE ADVICE

To,

INSURANCECO

_INSURANCECO_ADDR1_

_INSURANCECO_ADDR2_

_INSURANCECO_ADDR3_

_INSURANCECO_ADDR4_

Dear Sirs,

SUB:Open Policy/Cover No: _INSURANCECO_POIslamic LCYNO_

Our Letter Of Credit No. : _USERREFNO_ DATED : _ISSUE_DATE_

This is to advise you that we have today established the subject

Letter of Credit the details of which are as under. Kindly provide

us with Insurance Policy/Certificate/Declaration/Cover Note, which

ever is applicable, at your earliest

L/C No.:_CONTREFNO_

IRREVOCABLE

Amount:ABOUT _LC_CCY__LC_AMOUNT_CFR

Expiring On:_EXPIRY_DATE_

Opener of L/C:_APP_NAME_

_APP_ADDR1_

_APP_ADDR2_

_APP_ADDR3_

_APP_ADDR4_

Merchandise:_GOODS_DESCR_

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Shipment From:_FROM_PLACE_

To:_TO_PLACE_

By:_SHIPMENT_DET_

Not Later Than:_LATEST_SHP_DATE_

Partial Shipment:_PARTIAL_SHP_

Transshipment:_TRANS_SHP_

Yours faithfullyFor Investbank PSC

[FILE COPY]

16.5.26 Advice Generated for the Counterparty

The **LC_INSTR_COPY and LC_AM_INST_COPY** message types will be processed and an advice will be generated by the bank and sent to the counterparty at the time of Islamic LC confirmation.

The advice format maintenance will be as follows:

FAX_DUPLICATE

ADDRESS

ORIGINALMESSAGE

Islamic LC Contract processing will specify the receiver of the new message types as the applicant.

The message processing function will process confirmation / duplicate messages on the basis of the following:

- If the original message is not processed, then the original message will be processed first before generation of confirmation/duplicate message.
- If the status of original message is Repair then the duplicate message will also be in the same status.
- If the original message is generated, then the same message is copied to the duplicate message.
- The _ORIGINALMESSAGE_ advice tag will be populated with the actual message body of original message.
- The additional tags which will be updated for duplicate messages are Receiver address and sender address.
- The advice generation process will fetch the above tags and forms the message for duplicate messages.

16.5.27 AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation

Table 16-23 AASC: Amendment of Advice to Silent Confirmation

Event	Message/Advice	From	To
AASC	SCF_CONFIRM_ADV	ABK	BEN

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

16.5.28 AMNV: Invitation of Amendment Confirmation

Table 16-24 AMNV: Initiation of Amendment Confirmation

EVENT	Message/Advice	From	To
AMNV	LC_AMND_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN
AMNV	GUA_AMD_INSTR	ISB	ABK/BEN

16.5.29 AREJ: Rejection Of Amendment Confirmation

Table 16-25 AREJ: Rejection Of Amendment Confirmation

EVENT	Message/Advice	From	To
AREJ	LC_BEN_RESPONSE	ABK	ISB
AREJ	GUA_BEN_RESP	ABK	ISB

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Glossary

BCDAMTEX

Exchange Rate - Application of Exchange Rate Type based on Transaction Amount

BCDCIFIN

Customer Insurance - Maintain Customer Insurance Details

BCDCOMCD

Bills & Collections Commodity Code Maintenance Maintain Goods

BCSDOCCD

Bills & Collections Document Code Summary - Maintain Documents and Clauses

BCDFFTCD

Maintain Free Format Text (FFT) Codes

BCDINSCO

Islamic LC and Bills & Collections - Maintain Insurance Company Details

BCSDOCCD

Bills & Collections Document Code Summary - Maintain Documents and Clauses

BCSFFTCD

Bills & Collections Free Format Code Summary - 3.4 Maintain Insurance Company Details

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

EIDMANPE

Mandatory Batch Program Maintenance - Batch Process14.3 Batch Process (p. 368)

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Enter the your glossary term here.

Enter the description here

Copyright © 2007, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.